# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 17</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 18</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 19</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 20</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 21</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 22</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 23</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 24</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 25</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 26</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 27</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 28</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 29</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 30</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversation For Listening</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical Index</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumulative Vocabulary</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. **Buildup:**

(These colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

**Chàhn Táai**

kâhmyaht  
Náih kâhmyaht heul bīndouh a?  

**Léih Sâang**

hói  
gwo hói  
Ngôñ kâhmyaht gwo hói.  

**Chàhn Táai**

Gwo hói jouh mèyêh a?  

**Léih Sâang**

hâahng güngsi  
Ngôñ tûng ngôñ taaitâai heui  
hâahng güngsi.  

**Chàhn Táai**

Yâuh mûuh màaih yêh a?  

**Léih Sâang**

dâfögêi  
Yâuh--màaihjô go dâfögêi.  

**Chàhn Táai**

daihyih-[+]M (var: daih+M)  
daihyih dî yêh  
Môuh màaihdou daihyih dî yêh  
âm.  

**Léih Sâang**

jînhghaih  
Môuh, jînhghaih màaihjô go  
dâfögêi jô.  

-lâih  

1
Néihdeih nö—kähmyaht heui bǐndouh làih a?

Hôh Sinjé

Nôuh heui gâai—
dá páai
Jînhghaih hái ngûkkêi dá páai làih.

Chành Têai
tái hei
heiyân
Hôuh Wâh Heiyân

Ngôh tônhg ngôh sîneàng heui
Hôuh Wâh Heiyân táithi làih.

chōut
Nêih tásîng go chōut hei meih a?

Hôh Sinjé

Juung meih.
sîngaan
Kähmyaht mûuh sîngaan, mûuh heuidou.
gâmyaht
dâkkhânh
Gâmyaht dâkkhânh, jauh gâmyaht heui.
tîngyâht
Môhâkkhânh, jauh tîngyâht heui là.

How about you two? Where did you go yesterday?

I didn't go out—
play mahjong
I just stayed at home and played mahjong.

see a movie
movie theatre
Hoover Theatre (a movie theatre in Hong Kong)
My husband and I went to the Hoover Theatre to see a movie.
Measure for movie
Have you seen that film?

Not yet. [still not yet] time
I didn't have time yesterday, and didn't go.
today
free time, leisure
If I'm free today, then I'll go today.
tomorrow
If I'm busy, then I'll go tomorrow.

B. Recapitulation:
(Three colleagues, Mrs. Chan, Mr. Lee, and Miss Ho, discuss what they did the previous day, which was Sunday:)

2
Chành Tàai

Nóih kâhmyaht heui bîndouh a?

Léih Sâang

I went over to Kowloon yesterday.

Gwo hôi jouh méyh a?

Léih Sâang

What did you do over there?

Chành Tàai

Ngóh tûnh ngóh taaitâai heui hâahng gûngsi.

Léih Sâang

I went with my wife to window-shop.

Yâuh móuh máaih yêh a?

Chành Tàai

Did you buy anything?

Léih Sâang

Yeah, I got a cigarette lighter.

Móuh máaihdou daihyih dî yêh âh.

Léih Sâang

You didn’t buy anything else, huh.

Móuh, jînhghaih máaihjô go dâfôgêî jî.

Nóihdeih né?--kâhmyaht heui bîndouh làih a?

Bôh Siujô

No, just the lighter.

Móuh heui gâai--

Jînhghaih hái ngûkkêi dâ páai làih.

Bôh Siujô

How about you two? Where did you go yesterday?

Chành Tàai

Móuh tûnh ngóh sînsâang heui Hôuh Wâh Heiyûn tâi hei làih.

Ngóh tûnh ngóh taaitâai heui Hôuh Wâh Heiyûn tâi hei làih.

My husband and I went to the Hoover Theatre to see a movie.

Nóih tâigwo go cheut hei meih a?

Bôh Siujô

Have you seen that film?

Jubag meih.

Kâhmyaht móuh sîhgaan, móuh heuidou.

Bôh Siujô

Not yet.

I didn’t have time yesterday, and didn’t go.
II. NOTES

   a. Class 1 Verbs: those partially distinguishing past and non-past forms.

Most verbs exhibit partial distinction between past and non-past forms. The basic affirmative form for past and non-past is the same, but the negative and choice question forms differ.

**Ex:** sink = eat; ate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He ate Western food yesterday.</td>
<td>He is going to eat Western food tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Keuih kahmyaht mouh sink Sāichān.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Past</td>
<td>Keuih tingyaht mshink Sāichān.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He didn't eat Western food yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He's not going to eat Western food tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Keuih kahmyaht yah mouh sink Sāichān a?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Past</td>
<td>Keuih tingyaht sink mshink Sāichān a?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did he eat Western food yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Is he going to eat Western food tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See Drills 3, 4, 5)

From the point of view of semantic meaning, the verbs that pattern as described above can be called performance verbs, since they are verbs that denote actions performed. For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 1 Verbs.
b. Class 2 Verbs: those showing no distinction between past and non-past.

A few verbs make no distinction in form between past and non-past.

These verbs use the same forms for the affirmative, negative and choice-question for both past and non-past.

Ex: ŋauh = have; had

ŋauh sih = have something to do; had something to do

Example sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Non-Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Ngóh kahmyah ŋauh sih.</td>
<td>Ngóh tinglyah ŋauh sih.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I had some business to do yesterday.</td>
<td>I have some business to do tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Ngóh kahmyah mōuh sih.</td>
<td>Ngóh tinglyah mōuh sih.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn't have any business to do yesterday.</td>
<td>I don't have any business to do tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Ngéh kahmyah ŋauh mōuh sih a?</td>
<td>Ngéh tinglyah ŋauh mōuh sih a?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you have any business to do yesterday?</td>
<td>Do you have any business to do tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to ŋauh, other verbs which show no distinction in form between past and non-past include:

hái, 'is located'
haih, 'is'

most auxiliary verbs: ex: júngj, 'like'

Adjectives: ex: hóu, 'good'

(See Drills 1, 2)

Semantically, these verbs can be called 'non-performance verbs,' or 'steady-state verbs,' or perhaps 'existence verbs.' For convenience in referring to them, we call them also Class 2 Verbs.
2. Past reference with uninflected verb to express general activity.

For describing general activity performed in the past, Cantonese uses the plain form of the verb, without any suffixes.

Examples:
1. Ngóh kāmyaht hái ngūkkēi tái syu. Yesterday at home I read.
2. Ngóh kāmyaht sink Sāichān. Yesterday I ate Western food.
4. Ngóh kāmyaht gwo hî hâhng gungai. Yesterday I went across the harbour to windowshop.

The general activity sentence with uninflected verb is more apt to be a 'set the stage' initiating sentence which starts a conversation than it is to be a follow sentence. The follow sentences, describing particular things accomplished within the general activity, are apt to be V + suffix sentences. Remember the rainy day 'I went to see my Grandmother' game of your childhood which goes down the alphabet with things you took along? 'I went to see my grandmother and I took an apple, a box, a coconut, etc.' Cantonese would render the general activity 'I went to see my grandmother' part with an uninflected verb and the particular accomplishments, 'took A, B, C' part with a two-part (performance + accomplishment) verb + suffix.

3. Past reference with verb + suffix, to express performance + achievement, experience, success, or other information.

The role of verb suffixes in Cantonese is to give additional information about the action performed— that it has been done before, that the objective was achieved, that the performance was temporary, etc.

Examples:
1. Ngóh máaihjó go dàfógei. [I buy—accomplish a cigarette lighter.] i.e., I accomplish the purchasing of a cigarette lighter; I bought a cigarette lighter.

(Think of buying as a performance of dickering back and forth. Then you see that máaih-jó is to dicker for and achieve the objective of purchasing, to engage in a purchase transaction and carry it through.)
2. Ngóh síhkgwó jʊŋghóih,
daahnhái ngóh kahm-
yaht dúi síhk Saíchaán.

I eat-experience Chinese food, but I
yesterday in every case eat Western
food.
i.e., I have had the experience of
eating Chinese food, but yesterday
in every case I ate Western food.

4. Role of verb suffixes in English and Cantonese compared.

In English verb suffixes are time-markers, relating the moment of
speaking (i.e., now) to the moment spoken about (past, present, future).
Note, for example, how the suffixes -s and -ed in English give information
on the relation of time of speaking and time spoken about in the sentences:
'She loves me.' and 'She loved me.' In English the verb form changes
according to the time spoken about, and this change is compulsory. In
sentences relating to the past, English uses a past form of the verb, and
in sentences relating to non-past time, a non-past form.

In Cantonese, verb suffixes themselves do not indicate when the
performance took/takes/will take/place in relation to the time of speak-
ing, as verb suffixes do in English. In Cantonese, different suffixes
represent 'accomplish,' 'succeed,' 'good,' 'possible,' 'temporary,' 'in
progress,' etc. (It is very hard to talk about this in English, because
when you make a sentence in English, you have to put past or present marks
on the verbs. 'Perform-accomplish' doesn't make sense in English, you
have to say 'performance accomplished' in which case you indicate that it
has already happened, or 'Performance will have been accomplished' in
which case you indicate that it hasn't happened yet but will have by the
time you are speaking of, and so on.) For example, in Cantonese,
Verb-jó = 'perform-accomplish,' indicates that the performance is viewed
from the standpoint of its being accomplished, but when Verb-jó occurs
in a subordinate clause without a timeword as clue, the sentence must
rely on context, not grammar, to determine whether it refers to a past
event or a non-past one. (Example given on following page.)
LESSON 16  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Ex: Gwojó sàam go gàaihâu, jauh haih laak.

(1) (He) crossed three intersections, then (there it) was.

(2) (After you) cross three intersections, then (there it) is.

(gwojó = pass-accomplish) i.e.,
cross (an intersection)

i.e., When you have crossed three intersections, it'll be right there.

In a later lesson you will encounter another use of -jó in reference to non-past.

5. VP + sen, suf. làih in past reference sentences

VP + làih is used in two different types of past reference sentences, with different stress on làih in each and different meanings of the VP + làih set.

1) Movement VP + làih, to indicate having returned from having been away. The làih in this instance receives medium stress.

Ex: 1. Néih heui bindouh làih a? Where have you been?
   2. Néih kàhmyah heui bindouh làih a?
   3. Kéuih ngaamgaam heuilàih. He has just returned from having been away.

   (See BC)

2) VP + làih in a response sentence which contradicts the stimulus sentence’s assertion of action performed. The speaker emphasizes by VP + làih that that was the action done, not what the stimulus sentence asserts or implies. The làih in this instance receives light stress. In this use the verb of the VP to which làih is attached does not have to be a movement verb, though it can be.

Ex: A: Néih saigāi wah ngóh ji neihi kàhmyah heui tāi hei. Your younger sister told me you went to the movies yesterday.

B: Mhaaih gwāi! Ngóh hái ngūkkei da paai làih-- Un-un! I played mahjong at home, that's what-- (I) moup heui tāi hei. didn’t go to the movies.

   (See BC and Drill 2)
6. daihyih M (var: daih M), 'other M'
   a. daihyih, literally 'the second,' can have the meaning 'other,' 'another,' 'additional one,' bound to a following Measure. If the Measure is plural, daihyih is of course part of the plural expression.

   Ex: Kéuij máaihjó daihyih go dáfógei. He bought another cigarette lighter.
   Néih yáu h móu máaih daihyih dí yéh a? Did you buy any other things?

   (See BC)

   b. daih-M is a contraction of daihyih-M

   Ex: daih dí yéh = daihyih dí yéh, 'other things'

7. Responses to questions negatively phrased.

   There are two ways to answer a question negatively phrased (the you're not going, are you? kind of question). You have learned one way to answer such a question (See Lesson 12, pp 274-75) -- to respond by agreeing or disagreeing with the verb of the question.

   Examples:
   Q: Néih ūkkéi móu dihwá ah. Your house doesn't have a phone, huh.

   (agree:) A¹: Haíh a. Móu h dihwá. Right, there's no phone.
   Móu cho. Móu dihwá. Right, there's no phone.

   or (disagree:) A²: Mnhaih. Yáu h dihwá. Incorrect -- there's a phone.

   The other way to answer is to respond with the affirmative or negative form of the verb which was used to ask the question. The problem for American learners is that the negative verb said in response in different intonations means opposite things. This is easier to grasp through hearing examples than by reading about it, but we'll give examples and then try to describe the differences.

   Examples:
   1) Q: Móu h máaihdou daihyih dí yéh ah. You didn't buy anything else, huh.

   A: Móu—jiínghaih máaihjó go dáfógei je. No -- just bought the cigarette lighter, that's all.
The móuh of the response is an echo of the negative verb in the question, agreeing with the negative assumption of the questioner. The stress on móuh is medium, the intonation unspirited.
(See BC)

2) Q: móuh máaïhdou dáiŷih di yěh āh. You didn’t buy anything else, huh.
A: móuh! juhng máaïhjó hóudó ga. Not so! I bought a lot more.
Here the móuh of the response negates the whole sentence of the question. The stress on móuh is strong, the word itself is drawn out long, the intonation is spirited and contoured like this: 

(English too uses difference in intonation to signal difference in meaning in two sentences otherwise identical. Think how different intonations can make 'That's great!' mean 'That's wonderful!' or 'That's horrible.!

3) A: néih ngūkkéi móuh dihnwa āh. Your house doesn't have a phone, huh.
B: yáuh. Ngūkkéi yáuh it has. My house does have a phone.

The intonation and stress on yáuh may be normal, like the móuh of Example #1 above, or spirited and contoured like that of Example #2, but the central message is the same in both cases. In answering yáuh to the stimulus sentence's móuh, it contradicts the stimulus sentence's assumption.
(See Drills 8, 9, 11)

8. séung, 'wish to': its function in past reference sentences. séung permits yáuh móuh séung Verb? as well as séung hstång Verb? in the past reference question, with séung hstång? favored. The negative permits only hstång, not (-) móuh séung.

Ex: 1. néih mágma wah agoh jí néih kàhmyaht mhyţufukh-- néih yáuh séung séung saikh yěh a?
or néih séung hstång saikh yěh a?
1. Your mother told me you weren't feeling well yesterday-- did you want to eat?
2. Ngh étmyaht mhyţufukh-- hstång saikh yěh.
2. I didn't feel well yesterday-- I didn't want to eat.
séung has another meaning-- 'to think of'-- with the connotation 'it occurred to me.' In this sense séung takes mōuh and yāuh móuh? in sentences of past reference.

Ex: Ngōh kāhmyah séung heui. I thought of going yesterday.
Ngōh kāhmyah mōuh séung- dou heui. It didn't occur to me to go yesterday.
Nēih kāhmyah yāuh móuh séung heui a? Did it occur to you to go yesterday?
III. DRILLS

1. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from affirmative to negative.

   Ex: T: Ngôh sāam dīm bun dākhāahn.
       S: Ngôh sāam dīm bun ēndākhāahn.

   I'm free at three-thirty.
   [I'm not free at 3:30.]

1. Ngôh kāhmyaht dākhāahn.
   I was free yesterday.

2. Ngôh nǐpāai dākhāahn.
   /recently, these few days/
   I've been free lately.
   I'll be free these few days.

2. Ngôh nīpāai ēndākhāahn.
   I've been busy lately.
   I'll be busy these few days.

3. Ngôh tingyaht dākhāahn.

3. Ngôh tingyaht ēndākhāahn.


5. Ngôh sǐgī ėyīgā dākhāahn.

5. Ngôh sǐgī ėyīgā ēndākhāahn.


7. Ngôh kāhmyaht sei dīm dākhāahn.

7. Ngôh kāhmyaht sei dīm ēndākhāahn.

Repeat: Students changing statement into question, thus:

   T: Ngôh kāhmyaht dākhāahn.
   I was free yesterday.

   S: Něih kāhmyaht dākhāahn?
   Were you free yesterday?

Comment: Adjectives exhibit no formal distinction between past and non-past.

2. Transformation Drill

   Ex: T: Kěuîh tingyaht hâi ūkkēî.
   He will be home tomorrow.

   S: Kěuîh kāhmyaht hâi ūkkēî.
   He was home yesterday.

1. Něih tingyaht dāk ēndāk-hāahn a?

2. Ngôh tingyaht yāuh sîh.

3. Ngôh tingyaht ēndākhāahn.

5. Ngôh tingyaht ēhséung heui
taam koih.  
Tomorrow I don't want to
go see her.

5. Ngôh kâmhyat ēhséung heui
tyam koih.  
Yesterday I didn't want to
go see her.

6. Néih tingyaht yauh móuh sîh
a?  
6. Néih kâmhyat yauh móuh
sîh a?

7. Kêuih tingyaht hái mîhhái
séjihlîuh a?  
7. Kêuih kâmhyat hái mîhhái
séjihlîuh a?

8. Ngôh tingyaht môh sîhgaan
gwo hôi.  
8. Ngôh kâmhyat môh sîhgaan
gwo hôi.


10. Ngôh tingyaht sêung tâi
chêut hei.  
10. Ngôh kâmhyat sêung tâi
chêut hei.

Comment: Non-performance verbs do not differentiate
past and non-past by verb form.

3. Transformation Drill: Change the
sentences from tingyaht to kâmhyat.

Ex: 1. T: Kêuih tingyaht
dâ mähjéuk.
S: Kêuih kâmhyat
dâ mähjéuk.

T: He's going to play mahjong
tomorrow.
S: He played mahjong yesterday.

2. T: Kêuih tingyaht
môh dâ mähjéuk.
S: Kêuih kâmhyat
môh dâ mähjéuk.

T: He's not going to play mahjong
tomorrow.
S: He didn't play mahjong yesterday.

3. T: Kêuih tingyaht
dâ mîhá dâ mähjéuk a?
S: Kêuih kâmhyat
yauh móuh dâ
mähjéuk a?

T: Is he going to play mahjong
tomorrow?
S: Did he play mahjong yesterday?

1. Kêuih tingyaht dâ dihnwâ
bêî néih.

1. Kêuih kâmhyat dâ dihnwâ
bêî néih.

2. Kêuih tingyaht mûhdá dihnwâ
bêî néih.

2. Kêuih kâmhyat móuh dâ
dihnwâ bêî néih.

3. Kêuih tingyaht dâ mîhá dihnwâ
bêî néih a?

3. Kêuih kâmhyat yauh móuh dâ
dihnwâ bêî néih a?


5. Kêuih tingyaht mîh fânnlîih.

5. Kêuih kâmhyat móuh fânnlîih.
6. 咪ひ揚揚反反黽黽 黥 a?
7. 咪ひ揚揚反反 niéh．
8. 咪ひ揚揚反反 wán niéh．
9. 咪ひ揚揚反反 wán wán niéh a?
10. 咪ひ揚揚反反 yāuhséui．(wāim) He's going swimming to-
morrow．
11. 咪ひ揚揚反反 mìheui yauhséui．
12. 咪ひ揚揚反反 yāuhséui a?

+ 12. 咪ひ揚揚反反 yāuhséui a?

4. Transformation Drill: Pos → Neg

Ex: 1. T: 咪ひ揚揚反 gwo Gãulûhng．
   S: 咪ひ揚揚反 mōu gwo Gãu-
lûhng．
2. T: 咪ひ揚揚反 gwo Gãulûhng．
   S: 咪ひ揚揚反 wó gwo Gãulûhng．
1. 咪ひ揚揚反 heui táí hei．
2. 咪ひ揚揚反 heui yā dé bó．
3. 咪ひ揚揚反 yām wãnh．
4. 咪ひ揚揚反 yām wãnh．
5. 咪ひ揚揚反 yām chêh．
6. 咪ひ揚揚反 wán hûng tâm pûngyâu．
7. 咪ひ揚揚反 ngânhôhng lô chín．

6. 咪ひ揚揚反 yāu mōu fáanlâi heui?
7. 咪ひ揚揚反 wû niéh．
8. 咪ひ揚揚反 mōu wán niéh．
9. 咪ひ揚揚反 yāu mōu wán niéh a?
10. 咪ひ揚揚反 yûnh-séui． He was swimming yester-
day．
11. 咪ひ揚揚反 mōu heui yauhséui．
12. 咪ひ揚揚反 yûnh heui yauhséui a?

He went over to Kowloon yes-
terday．
He didn't go over to Kowloon yester-
day．
He's going over to Kowloon to-
morrow．
He's not going over to Kowloon to-
morrow．

He went over to Kowloon yester-
day．
He didn't go over to Kowloon yester-
day．
He's going over to Kowloon to-
morrow．
He's not going over to Kowloon to-
morrow．
Repeat as choice-type question transformation.

1. T: Kēuih kāmyaht gwo Gaulūng.
   S: Kēuih kāmyaht yâu mouh gwo Gaulūng a?
   He went over to Kowloon yesterday.
   Did he go over to Kowloon yesterday?

2. T: Kēuih tingyaht gwo Gaulūng.
   S: Kēuih tingyaht gwo m’hgwo Gaulūng a?
   He will go over to Kowloon tomorrow.
   Will he go over to Kowloon tomorrow?

5. Transformation Drill: Change haih m’haih Verb? to the suitable form of Verb m’h Verb?

   Ex: T: Nēih tingyaht haih m’hhaih heui t’ai hei a?
       S: Nēih tingyaht heui m’hheui t’ai hei a?
       T: Are you going to the movies tomorrow?
       S: Will you go to the movies tomorrow?
       T: Did you go to the movies yesterday?
       S: Did you go to the movies yesterday?

   1. Nēih sīgīi tingyaht haih m’hhaih heui Gaulūng a?
   2. Chāhn Sāang tingyaht haih m’hhaih heui yâm châh a?
   3. Nēih taitāai kāmyaht haih m’hhaih heui Jūngwâahn a?
   4. Gō go yāhn kāmyaht haih m’hhaih heui Gaulūng a?
   + 5. Nēih dī sailōgō tingyaht haih m’hhaih heui Mēihgwok a?
      (child(ren))
   1. Nēih sīgīi tingyaht heui m’hheui Gaulūng a?
   2. Chāhn Sāang tingyaht heui m’hheui yâm châh a?
   3. Nēih taitāai kāmyaht yâu mouh heui Jūngwâahn a?
   4. Gō go yāhn kāmyaht yâu mouh heui Gaulūng a?
   5. Nēih dī sailōgō tingyaht heui m’hheui Mēihgwok a?
6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh kâhmyaht dá páai. /tâi hei/
S: Ngôh kâhmyaht dá páai laih--mouh tâi hei.

T: I played mahjong yesterday.
S: I didn't see a movie.

1. Ngôh kâhmyaht heui châhlâuh yâm châh. /tâi hei/

1. Ngôh kâhmyaht heui châhlâuh yâm châh laih--mouh tâi hei.

2. Ngôh kâhmyaht hâi ükkêi tâi dihnseih. (watch television) /cheut gâai/


3. Ngôh kâhmyaht heui ngânh hôhng lô chîn. /yûhseui/


4. Kêuih kâhmyaht gau ngôh Gwôngdûngwâ. /dâ páai/


5. Ngôh kâhmyaht heui yûhseui. /tâi dihnseih/


Comment: The suffix--laih is used in the past reference sentence in the affirmative form only. The speaker emphasizes with VP-laih that that was the activity he did, not some other activity. The plainfact sentence without laih has no special emphasis.

7. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh kâhmyaht máaih seu tsâam laih. /sâm gihn/
S1: Máaihjô geîdo gihn nê?
S2: Máaihjô sâm gihn.

T: I bought some shirts yesterday. /3 unit/
S1: How many did you buy?
S2: I bought three.

1. Ngôh kâhmyaht yâm bêjâu laih. /lûhng jî/

1. S1: Yâmjô geîdo jî a?
S2: Yâmjô lûhng jî.

2. Ngôh kâhmyaht sihk pîhaggwô laih. /seî go/

2. S1: Sihkjô geîdo go a?
S2: Sihkjô seî go.

3. Ngôh kâhmyaht lô chîn laih. /yût baak mân/

3. S1: Lôjô geîdo a?
S2: Lôjô yût baak mân.
8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nêih kâmmyaht móih náah séutsâam âh.
   S: Yâuhi! Máaihjô la.

1. Kêuih kâmmyaht móuh tâi hei âh.
   You didn't see a movie yesterday, did you.
   S: Yâuhi! Tâijô la.
   Yes, I did see one.

2. Wônhg Sâang kâmmyaht móuh chêng haak âh.
   Mr. Wong didn't have a dinner party yesterday, did he.
   S: Yâuhi! Chêngjô la.

   S: Yâuhi! Fânjô la.

4. Nêih kâmmyaht móuh tâi yî-sang âh.
   S: Yâuhi! Tâijô la.

5. Nêih kâmmyaht móuh cheung chîn âh.
   S: Yâuhi! Cheungjô la.

Comment: chêng haak = have a dinner party
         chêng sîkh faahn = invite someone for dinner.

9. Response Drill: Contradict the other person's impression.

Ex: T: Kêuih kâmmyaht móuh dâ pàai âh.
   S: Yâuhi! Dâ láih.
   Yes, he did play.

1. Kêuih kâmmyaht móuh wân kêuih âh.
   S: Yâuh, wân láih.

2. Kêuih kâmmyaht móuh dâ bö âh.
   S: Yâuh, dâ láih.

   S: Yâuh, tâi láih.

4. Kêuih kâmmyaht móuh heui yâuhséui âh.
   S: Yâuh, heui láih.

Comment: The answers in Drills 8 and 9 above represent spirited denial. Ordinary denial would be:

Q: ...móuh tâi hei âh.  Q: ...didn't see a movie, huh.
10. Expansion-Transformation Drill: Expand or transform as appropriate.

Ex: 1. T: Kêuih kâhmyaht gwo Gâulûhung taam sînsâang. /haih mînhaih a?/
   S: Kêuih kâhmyaht haih mînhaih gwo Gâulûhung taam sînsâang a?
   Yesterday he crossed over to Kowloon to see his teacher.
   Did he cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher?
   /isn't that right?/

2. T: Kêuih kâhmyaht haih mînhaih gwo Gâulûhung taam sînsâang a? /mouh/
   S: Kêuih kâhmyaht møuh gwo Gâulûhung taam sînsâang.
   He didn't cross over to Kowloon yesterday to see his teacher.

1. Kêuih gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh. /kâhmyaht/
2. /mouh/
3. /yâuh mouh a?/
4. /haih mînhaih/
5. /mînhaih aak/
6. /haih aak/

1. Kêuih kâhmyaht gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh.
2. Kêuih kâhmyaht møuh gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh.
3. Kêuih kâhmyaht yâuh möuh gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh a?
4. Kêuih kâhmyaht haih mînhaih gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh a?
5. Kêuih kâhmyaht mînhaih gwo Gâulûhung maaïh yēh aak.

11. Question and Answer drill

Ex: T: /táih dihnhaih/ /watch television/
   S₁ Neih kâhmyaht yâuh möuh táih dihnhaih a?
   Did you watch television yesterday?
   S₂ Yâuh, yâuh táih.
   Yes, I did.

1. /dâ bô/ 1. S₁: Neih kâhmyaht yâuh möuh dâ bô a?
   S₂: Yâuh, yâuh dâ.

2. /táih syû/ 2. S₁: Neih kâhmyaht yâuh möuh táih syû a?
   S₂: Yâuh, yâuh táih.
3. /yám jau/

3. S₁: Neih kāmyaht yáuh móuh yám jau a?
   S₂: Yáuh, yáuh yám.

4. /heui yám chāh/

4. S₁: Neih kāmyaht yáuh móuh heui yám chāh a?
   S₂: Yáuh, yáuh heui.

5. /tái yIsāng/

5. S₁: Neih kāmyaht yáuh móuh tái yIsāng a?
   S₂: Yáuh, yáuh tái.

6. /wán kéuih/

6. S₁: Neih kāmyaht yáuh móuh wán kéuih a?
   S₂: Yáuh, yáuh wán.

Comment: The above represents the ordinary way to ask and answer with no special emphasis or assumption.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to worklist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) wán = amuse oneself, play (general verb for leisure time activity)
2) sòyih = therefore
3) dā móhng kāuh = play, tennis
   a) móhng kāuh = tennis ball
4) sòuwhān Jouh = Power Road
5) kāuh chèuhng = tennis court
6) daīh yaht = daīh (yih) yant = another day
7) beisyù = secretary
8) Mānhēihláai = Manila
9) Fēileuhtbān = Philippines
10) gūnjāi = doll
11) We! = Hey!; Sey!; exclamation used to attract someone's attention
12) yātchāih = together
13) ginmāihn = meet
LESSON 16  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

14) Haib gam wah la. = We'll do it the way you say.
15) Mouh heui bindough. = Haven't gone anywhere.
16) a ma = sen. su. of response sentence, indicating in a nice way:
   'This is pretty obvious,'
17) haib bo = here: by the way,...
18) maaih sung = buy groceries

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the classmate sitting next to you:

1. What'd you do yesterday?
2. What movie did you see?
3. I didn't go out yesterday, I stayed at home watching television.
4. Where'd you go yesterday? I went to your house to look for you, but you weren't home.
5. I'd like to learn to play mahjong-- could you teach me?
6. Could you please tell me how to get to the Hoover Theater?
7. What would you like to do today-- play ball or go swimming?
8. Did you go to Kowloon to see your girl friend yesterday?
9. I went to the Central District yesterday to buy shoes-- I bought a pair of white ones.
10. (still talking about yesterday) I bought a nice-looking lighter at a department store.
11. My son played ball yesterday. Did your son go?

B. And he responds:

1. I went to the movies with my wife.
2. I forget the name.
3. I watched television yesterday too.
4. I went swimming yesterday.
5. Sure. When are you free these days?
6. First go to the next intersection and turn left, then go straight until the second intersection, and it's on the right hand side.
7. I went swimming yesterday, let's play ball today.
8. No, I was very busy yesterday and didn't go.
9. I went shopping for shoes too, but I didn't buy any.
10. I also wanted to buy a lighter, but I didn't get one.
11. No, he didn't. He stayed home and read.
12. Miss Chan went to the movies with Mr. Lee yesterday. 12. Not so! She didn't go with Mr. Lee, she went with me!

13. Mr. Lee took Miss Chan swimming yesterday. 13. Not so! They didn't go swimming, they stayed at Miss Chan's house and played mahjong.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 16

1. bô n: ball
2. chêng haak VO: have a dinner party [invite-guests]
3. chêng sînh faahn, or VO: invite someone to dinner
   chêng yahn sînh faahn
4. chêut m: M for a movie, a film
5. dê bô VO: play ball
6. dê mähjûk VO: play mahjong
7. dê péi VO: play mahjong [hit-tiles]
8. dêrûgîi n: (cigarette) lighter
9. daihî VO: var. of 'daihyih dî,' others, other (ones)
10. daihyih (+ M) another (M) [lit: the 2d M]
11. daihyih dî VO: others, other (ones) [lit: the 2d ones]
12. dêkrâahn Adj: free, at leisure
13. dîmsih n: television
14. gâmâih TW: today
15. gêo hôi VO: cross the sea, harbor
16. hâahng gûngêi VO: windowshop
17. hêi n: movie
18. heiyûn n/PW: movie theater
19. hôi n: sea
20. Hôuh wân Heiyûn PW: Hoover Theater
21. jînhshaih V Adv: just, merely, only V
22. kâmhyah T.W: yesterday
23. -làih ss: suffixed to a heui VP, indicates that person spoken about has returned from where he went
24. -làih as: VP suffix in response sentence adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>mahanjuk</td>
<td>m: mahjong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>nhandakhahm</td>
<td>Adj: busy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>nipaii</td>
<td>Tw: lately, recently, these few days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>sailougo</td>
<td>n: child, children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>singaan</td>
<td>n: time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>tai dihsih</td>
<td>VO: watch television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>tai hei</td>
<td>VO: see a movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>tingyaht</td>
<td>TW: tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>yauhsuei</td>
<td>VO: swim; swimming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Two acquaintances, one Chinese, one American, talk together at a party:)

Jüngwokyähn

noih
hôu noih mòuh gin
Wông Sàang! Hôu noih mòuh gin
bo.
fâanheui
fâanheui Mêihgwo
láihbaai
hah go láihbaai
hah go láihbaai fâanheui
têngginwah
Têngginwah néih hah go láihbaai
fâanheui Mêihgwo--naih
âhbaih a?

Mêihgwo

Môuh cho.
-houh
yahluhk houh
dâsyun
dâsyun yahluhk houh fâanheui
láihbaaisei
jikhaih

Ngôh dâsyun yahluhk houh
fâanheui--jikhaih láihbaaisei.

Jüngwo

Ngôh dôu dâsyun heui Mêihgwo.

Mêihgwo

Haih mē? Nêih géiisih heui mē?

long (time)
'long time no see'
Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you
in a long time.
go back, return
go back to America
week
next week
go back next week
hear tell, I hear ...
I hear you're going back to
the States next week--is that
right?

That's right.
day of the month
the 26th (of the month)
plan on, plan to
plan to go back on the 26th
Thursday
that is, in other words,
that is to say
I plan to go back on the 26th--
-Thursday, that is.

I plan to go to America, too.

Is that so?! When are you
going?
Jünggwokýnh
wah áhdìhng
can't say for sure; uncertain
Wah áhdìhng ga.
I'm not sure.
chěutsín
next year
yihyuht
February
Waahkje chěutsín yihyuht lā.
Maybe February next year.

Méihgwokýnh
Nēih yāuh móuh heuígwo
Have you ever been to the
Méihgwokýnh
-nính
States before?
yāt-gāu-luhk-chāt nǐhn
year
Yāuh--yāt-gāu-luhk-chāt nǐhn
in 1967
heuílah.

Méihgwokýnh
dehfóng
place
bīn dī deihfóng
which places?
Heuígwo bīn dī deihfóng a?
What places did you go?

Jünggwokýnh
Sāamfāahnshīh
San Francisico
Wāhshihngdeuhn
Washington
Heuígwo Sāamfāahnshīh túhag
I went to San Francisico and
Wāhshihngdeuhn jē.
Washington, that's all.
daat
Measure for deihfóng
gō lōuhnng daat deihfóng
those two places
chānchīk
relatives
Gō lōuhnng daat deihfóng, ngō
In those two places I have
dōu yāuh chānchīk hái douh.
relatives.

Méihgwokýnh
hacchi
next time
Nēih hacchi nāih ámhaih dōuhaih
Will you go to Washington
heui Wāhshihngdeuhn a?
next time, too?

Jünggwokýnh
Haih a.
That's right.
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE  
LESSON 17

Méihgwoyáhn  
deihjí  
Dàng ngóh sé ngóh go deihjí  
béi méih lá.  
jigányiu  

Lài choh lá.  
Doujó Wáhsíhngjahn jigányiu  
lài ngóhdoúh choh á.  

Jünngwokyáhn  
A: Ngóh dōu áhjí néih ngükkéi  
hái Wáhsíhngjahn tám.  

Méihgwoyáhn  
chōutsai  
Haih a. Ngóh hái gōdouh chōutsai  
ge.  

B. Recapitulation:

Jünngwokyáhn  
Wöng Sâang! Hóu noih móuh  
gin bo.  
Tèngginwah néih hah go láihbasai  
fâanheui Méihgwok--hái  
âhhaíh a?  

Méihgwoyáhn  
Móuh cho.  
Ngóh dásyun yahluhk houh fâanheui--  
-jíkhaih láihbasaisí.  

Jünngwokyáhn  
Ngóh dōu dásyun heui Méihgwok.  

Méihgwoyáhn  
Haíh mō? Néih géisíh heui mō?  

Jünngwokyáhn  
Wah ândihng ga--  

address  
Let me write my address and 
give it to you.  
be sure to, by all means  
do [most important]  
'Come visit me.' [come sit]  
When you get to Washington, be  
sure to come see me.  

Oh--I didn't know your home  
was in Washington.  
Yes, I was born there.  

Mr. Wong! I haven't seen you  
in a long time.  
I hear you're going back to  
the States next week--is  
that right?  
That's right.  
I plan to go back on the 26th--  
Thursday, that is.  

I'm planning to go to America,  
too.  
Is that so?! When are you going?  
I'm not sure--
Méihgwok

Néih yáuh mòuh heuigwo Méihgwok af

Jünggwok

Yáuh--yá-t-gáu-luHK-cháih mihn
heuiláiH.

Méihgwok

Heuigwo bín dí deihfông a?

Jünggwok

Heuigwo SáamfââHneih tûnh
WâaHsiHngDeuHn jëH.
Gô léuHng daat deihfông ngôH
dû yâuh chânhkái hái douh.

Méihgwok

Néih hêHâH biH nhêHâH
dûHhaiH besi WâaHsiHngDeuHn
a?

Jünggwok

HaH nôH.

Méihgwok

Dâng ngôH sê ngôH go deihjï
bôi néiH lâH.
Doujô WâaHsiHngDeuHn jîgênyiu
leH ngôndouH chôH lâ.

Jünggwok

Al neiH dou Hjï néiH ngûkkêi
hái WâaHsiHngDeuHn tsîH.

Méihgwok

HaH a. NgôH hái goôouH
chûtâiH ge.

Méihgwok

HaH nêH, bái jëHâH
Maykeb February next year.
Have you ever been to the
States before?
Yes, I made a trip in 1967.
What places did you go?
I went to San Fransisco and
Washington, that's all.
In those two places I have
relatives.
Will you go to Washington
next time too?
That's right.
Let me write my address for
you.
When you get to Washington
be sure to come visit me.
Oh--I didn't know your home
was in Washington.
Yes, I was born there.
II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

1. **Lunar and solar calendar.** In Hong Kong dates are reckoned by the solar calendar. Many people, however, reckon the dates of births, deaths, and weddings by the traditional lunar calendar. (On traditional Chinese wedding invitations both the lunar date and the solar date are given.)

2. **Where you’re born and where you’re from.** Traditionally a Chinese counts himself as being from the place where his ancestral village is, which may or may not be where he was born and brought up. A similar way of looking at things might be held by a person born to American parents living outside the U.S.

B. Structure Notes:

1. **Fixed order in dates and addresses.** Larger units precede smaller in descending order:

   Ex: 順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順順顺順順順順顺利
Láiðbaai is commonly used for 'Sunday'; but láihbaai also means 'week.' Láiihbaaiyhaht, 'Sunday,' may be used in sentences which would be ambiguous with the use of láihbaai; generally, however, context makes the meaning clear.

Ex: 1. Tingyhaht láihbaai. Tomorrow is Sunday.
2. Ngéh han go láihbaai } I'm busy next week. or
   mhdákhaahn. } I'm busy next Sunday.
   (See Drill 2)

Another word for 'week' is sínge̤i. Sínge̤i is substitutable for láihbaai everywhere, with one exception: Sínge̤i is not used to mean 'Sunday.'

b. Months of the year. Starting with January as the first month,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>chátyuht</th>
<th>July</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>yihiyuht</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>sáamyuht</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>seiyuht</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>sghyuht</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>luhyuht</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>1911</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yát-gáu-yát (níhn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yát-gáu-sei-gáu-(níhn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Note that -níhn is a rising tone in:

| gauhńín | last year |
| ñánín | this year |
| ñeóuńín | next year |

-níhn is, however, used by some people in these phrases:

gauhńín
ëmígnín
ñeóuñín
d. Question-word formulas for dates:
  bīn nīhn?  which (or what) year?
  bīn nīhn bīn yuht bīn yaht? what date?
  gēi yuht?  which (or what) month?
  gēi(dō) houh? which (or what) day?
  láihbaaigel? which (or what) day of the week?
  bīn yaht?  which (or what) day?
  (answer stated as day of week or ting'yaht, gams'yaht, etc.)

(See Drill 2)

3. Timewords.
   a. A word or phrase which can fill the position before or after jī
      'until,' 'to' is a Timeword (Tw).
      Ex: Lāihbaaigel jī láihbaaigelhk Thursday to Saturday
      Kēuih láihbaaigel jī láihbaaigelhk He has to go to work
          yiu faangīng. from Thursday until
          Saturday.

   b. Timewords fill the Time When position before a verb. (See
      example above.)

   c. Names of months are Timewords, but one month, two months, etc., are
      number-measure compounds that cannot fill the Timeword position.
      Instead they fill the length of time (time span) position after
      the verb.
      Ex:
      | Time       | When      | Verb     | Time-span  |
      |------------|-----------|----------|------------|
      | 1. Kēuih   | Sàmyuht   | heui     | He's going in March. |
      |            | heui      | saam go  | He plans to |
      |            | sām go    | yaht.    | go for three |
      |            | sām go    | yaht.    | months.     |

4. Sentence suffix là, for uncertainty.
   Suffixed to sentences predicting time of an action the raised
   intonation là suggests a degree of uncertainty, suggests that the
   time is approximate rather than exact.
   Ex: 1. A. Neih gēi dim yiu jāu a? When do you have to go?
        B. Lēuhng dim là. About two o'clock.
   2. A. Neih géishī heui a? When are you going?
        B. Wαshkjē chūtnīn yihyuht Oh, probably February
           là. next year.

(See BC)
III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill:

   + 1. a. yuht
     b. hahgo yuht
     c. hahgo yuht heui
     d. hahgo yuht fæanheui
     e. dásyun hahgo yuht fæanheui
     f. Ngóh dásyun hahgo yuht fæan-heui Yínggwok.

   1. a. montà
     b. next month
     c. go next month
     d. go back next month
     e. plan to go back next month
     f. I plan to go back to England next month.

2. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

   + 1. Ngóh láihbaaiyát heui tái heïi.
     I'm going to a movie Monday.
   + 2. /láihbaaiyih/
        (Tuesday)
   + 3. /láihbaaisàam/
        (Wednesday)
   + 4. /láihbaaijìgh/
        (Friday)
   + 5. /láihbaaijuhk/
        (Saturday)
   + 6. /láihbaaiyaht/
        (Sunday)
   + 7. /láihbaai/
        (Sunday)

   1. Ngóh láihbaaiyát heui tái heïi.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

   1. Kéuih kàhsyáht láih ge.
     He came yesterday.
   + 2. /gauh nín/
        (last year)
   + 3. /gàm nín/
        (this year)

   1. Kéuih kàhsyáht láih ge.
   2. Kéuih gauhnín láih ge.
     He came this year.
4. Conversation Drill: Students should recite the days of the week after the teacher before beginning this drill.

Ex: T: Gâmyaht láihbaaisei. T: Today is Thursday.
S1: Tingyaht láihbaaigéi a?
S1: What day of the week is tomorrow?
S2: Tingyaht láihbaaigh.
LESSON 17 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE


4. Gāmyah láihbaai.

5. Conversation Drill

Ex: T: Láihbaaiyāt sāam houh.

S1: Láihbaaiyāh gēido houh a?

S2: Láihbaaiyāh sei houh.

T: Monday is the third.

S1: What day of the month is it Tuesday?

S2: Tuesday is the 4th.

1. Láihbaaiyāth baat houh.

2. Láihbaaisēi yīh houh.

3. Láihbaaisāam sahpuchh houh.

4. Láihbaaisīng sahpchāt houh.

5. Láihbaaisiluhk yahyāt houh.

1. A. Láihbaaiyāt gēido houh a?

2. A. Láihbaaisēi gēido houh a?

3. A. Láihbaaisēi gēido houh a?

4. A. Láihbaaisiluhk gēido houh a?

5. A. Láihbaaiyāth gēido houh a?

B. Láihbaaiyāth gāu houh.

B. Láihbaaisēi gāu houh.

B. Láihbaaisēi sāam houh.

B. Láihbaaisēi sahpchāt houh.

B. Láihbaaisiluhk sahpchāt houh.

B. Láihbaaiyāth yahyih houh.

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngōh yīh houh láih ge.

S: Ngōh chāt yuht yīh houh láih ge.

T: I came on the 2nd. /July/

S: I came on July 2nd.

1. Ngōh luhk yuht láih ge.

2. Ngōh sei yuht láih ge.

1. Ngōh luhk yuht yahsēi houh láih ge.


32
3. Ngóh gauh nin làih ge. /sàam yuht/
3. Ngóh gauh nin sàam yuht làih ge.
I came in March last year.

4. Ngóh chàh houh làih ge. /gâu yuht/
4. Ngóh gâu yuht chàh houh làih ge.

5. Ngóh yêt gâu luhk sei nihn làih ge. /baat yuht/
5. Ngóh yêt gâu luhk sei nihn baat yuht làih ge.

7. Translation-Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: /last year/
   Sl: Kêuih gêisih làih ge?
   S2: Kêuih gauhnín làih ge.

2. T: /next year/
   Sl: Kêuih gêisih làih a?
   S2: Kêuih chêutnín làih.

1. /last month/
   1. A. Kêuih gêisih làih ge?
      B. Kêuih seuhnggo yuht làih.

2. /last week/
   2. A. Kêuih gêisih làih ge?
      B. Kêuih seuhnggo làihbaai làih ge.

3. /13th of last month/
   3. A. Kêuih gêisih làih ge?
      B. Kêuih seuhnggo yuht sahp-sàam houh làih ge.

4. /next month/
   4. A. Kêuih gêisih làih a?
      B. Kêuih hahgo yuht làih.

5. /September next year/
   5. A. Kêuih gêisih làih a?
      B. Kêuih chêutnín gâyuht làih.

6. /next Wednesday/
   6. A. Kêuih gêisih làih a?
      B. Kêuih hahgo làihbaai sàam làih.

7. /January last year/
   7. A. Kêuih gêisih làih ge?
      B. Kêuih gauhnín yêt yuht làih ge.
LESSON 17  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

8. /29th of next month/
8. A. Kœuih gœisih lœih a?
   B. Kœuih hahgo yuht yahgâu houh lœih.

8. Question & Answer Drill

Ex: T: 'Jâugâ' haikh sihk Jong-T: 'Jâugâ' is a place where you
tooi ge deihfông.
S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'jâugâ' a?
S2: 'Jâugâ' jïkhaih sihk Jœungchoi
gœ deihfông.
S1: What thing is called a 'jâugâ'?
S2: 'Jâugâ' is a place where you
eat Chinese food, that's what.

1. 'Chaansat haikh sihk Šœichœan
gœ deihfông.
1. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'chaansat' a?
   S2: 'Chaansat' jïkhaih sihk Šœichœan gœ deihfông.

2. 'Šœijhlahu' haikh jouh sihk ge
deihfông.
2. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'šœijh-
   lahu' a?
   S2: 'Šœijhlahu' jïkhaih jouh sihk ge deihfông.

3. 'Gûngœl' haikh mœaih yœh ge
deihfông.
3. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'gûngœl' a?
   S2: 'Gûngœl' jïkhaih mœaih yœh ge deihfông.

4. 'Ngûk' haikh jyu h ge deihfông.
4. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'ngûk' a?
   S2: 'Ngûk' jïkhaih jyu h ge deihfông.

5. 'Châhlâu' haikh yâm châm ge
deihfông.
5. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'châhlâu' a?
   S2: 'Châhlâu' jïkhaih yâm châm ge deihfông.

6. 'Heiyœn' haikh tài hei ge
deihfông.
6. S1: Mœyœh giu jouh 'heiyœn' a?
   S2: 'Heiyœn' jïkhaih tài hei ge deihfông.

34
9. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kóuih dásyun gésíh heui a? /hahgo yuht/
S: Dásyun hahgo yuht S: (She) plans to go next month.
heui.

T: When does she plan to go? /next month/

2. T: Kóuih gésíh heui S: Seuhnggo
ga? /seuhnggo yuht/
S: She went last month.

1. Wéhng Sàang dásyun gésíh jáu a? /nìgo yuht/

2. Néih dásyun gésíh máaih a? /hahgo láihbaai/

3. Néih gésíh jough ga? /seuhnggo yuht/


5. Hóh Tàai dásyun gésíh fàanheui a? /tingyaht/

S: (She) plans to go next month.

Comment: If the action expressed by the verb has already occurred, the gésíh question adds ge (ga) to the verb phrase. To a gésíh VP-ge question, the answer is stated in VP-ge form.

1. Dásyun nìgo yuht jáu.

2. Dásyun hahgo láihbaai máaih.

3. Seuhnggo yuht jough ge.


5. Dásyun tingyaht fàanheui.

But if the statement sentence is a lead sentence, not a response to a gésíh question, the preferred form is without ge.

Ex: Kóuih gauhnín heui He went to England

Yinggwok. last year.

This sentence is a plain fact statement of general activity and as such uses SVO word order and an uninflected verb. The gésíh question throws the focus of the sentence to the Timeword. The sentence pattern for highlighting the Timeword in a past reference sentence is: S Timeword V ge.
Lesson 17

Cantonese Basic Course

10. Transformation Drill: Change the sentence to a time expression question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Kéuih yát-gáu-luhk-baat(nihn) láih ge. S: Kéuih bín nihn láih Hëunggông ge?
T: What year did he come to Hong Kong?
S: He came in 1968.

1. Kéuih yát gáu sei gáu nihn chëutsai ge.

2. Kéuih gáu yuht fàan Méihgwok.


5. Kéuih yahluhk houh heui taam kéuih láih.


1. Kóuih bín nihn chëutsai ga?

2. Kóuih géi yuht fàan Méihgwok a? What month is he returning to America?

3. Kóuih bín yah dâknàahn a? What day is he free?

4. Kóuih bín nihn, bín yuht, bín yahch chëut sai ga?

5. Kóuih géi houh heui taam kóuih láih a?

6. Kóuih sëung géi dîm jëng chëut gâai a?

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yáuh pëhngyáuh hâi douh. /gô lëuhng gâan jáudim/
S: Gô lëuhng gâan jáudim, ngóh dôu yáuh pëhngyáuh hâi douh.

T: I have friends there.
S: I have friends in both of those two hotels.

1. Ngóh yáuh jâinéui hâi douh. /gô lëuhng gâan hokkhaaugh/

2. Ngóh yáuh taaitásai hâi douh. /gô lëuhng dàat deihfông/

3. Ngóh yáuh chîn hâi douh. /gô lëuhng gâan ngânhnhöhng/

4. Ngóh yáuh ngûk hâi douh. /Hëunggông, Gâulûhng/

36
5. Kéuih yáuh náahmpánhgyáuh hái douh. /chihn, hauh, jô, yauh, kéuih /ahead, behind, right and left/

12. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngoh chánhích jyuh hái Wáhsiinghamdeuhnh.
S: Ngoh yáuh chánhích jyuh hái Wáhsiinghamdeuhnh.

T: My relatives live in Washington DC.
S: I have relatives who live in Washington DC.

1. Kéuih fu ngâhngéng hóu leng.
2. Kéuih gâan ngûk hóu daaih.
4. Néih bûn syû hái douh.
5. Ngoh go jái hái Yînggwok gaau syû.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngôgi néih giu kéuih dá dînhwâ bêi ngôh là.
S: Ngôgi néih jîngânyiu

T: Please tell him to telephone me.
S: Please be sure to tell him to telephone me.

1. Geidâk bol
2. Ânhôu ânggeidâk a!
3. Néih mînhôu wah kéuih jî a!
4. Tingyaht láih ngôhdouh sihk faahn là.

1. Jîngânyiu geidâk a!
2. Jîngânyiu ânhôu ânggeidâk a!
3. Néih jîngânyiu ânhôu wah kéuih jî a!
4. Tingyaht jîngânyiu láih ngôhdouh sihk faahn a.

37
14. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the cue words.

Ex: T: Nghô ngo heui team Chânh Tái.
     /hâihbaai/
S: Nghô hâihbaai yiu heui team Chânh Tái.

T: I'm going to go visit Mrs. Chan. /Sunday/
S: I'm going to go visit Mr. Chan on Sunday.

1. Nghô seung náiah dî yêh bêi Nghô néuihphângyâuh.
   /nî go hâihbaai/
2. Nî deui hàaih juhng hòu sên bo.
   /néih/
3. Néih jyu hâi bîndouh a?
   /këuih dîm jî/
   (how did he know)
4. Yihyuht dâk yihshâhpbaat yaht jê.
   /gâmmin/
5. Këuih âmîk jâ fasîjî. /ngôh ânhî/  
   He does not know how to use chopsticks.
   [clasp-chopsticks]
   /seuinh go yuht sei houh/  
   He has come back from America.
7. Këuih ükkêi yuáh dihnseih.
   /juhng séih/  
   Their house has (or had) television.
8. Nghôi néih ning làih nîdouh lâ.
   /bûi châm/  
9. Nghôi néih bêi jek gâng ngôh là. /dô/

Comment: hâi, as 'from,' is interchangeable with yuáh, 'from,' choice of hâi or yuáh rests with personal preference, personal habit. See #6 above, and Comment in Vol. One, Lesson 15, p. 341.
15. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh yih houh heui. T: I'm going on the 2nd. Ngôh hahgo yuht heui. I'm going next month.
S: Ngôh hahgo yuht yih houh heui. S: I'm going on the 2nd of next month.


16. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Mîpái yâuh móuh tâi hei a? /kâhaysht/
S: Yâuh, kâhm-yâht tâi láih.
2. T: Mîpái yâuh móuh dà bò a? /hđâkhâahn/
S: Môuh, mîpái doû hđâkhâahn dâ.

1. Mîpái yâuh móuh heui yâuh-sâui a? /lâihbaai-luuhk/
2. Mîpái yâuh móuh dâ mähjéuk a? /hđâkhâahn/
3. Mîpái yâuh móuh heui máih yôh a? /seuhng go láihbaai/ (last week or last Sunday)

T: Have you seen any movies lately?
S: Yes, I saw one yesterday.
T: Have you played ball recently?
S: No, I haven't had (leisure) time to play lately.

1. Yâuh, láihbaai-luuhk heui láih.
2. Môuh, mîpái doû hđâkhâahn dâ.
3. Yâuh, seuhng go láihbaai heui láih.
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) Mōuh = Nothing special
2) ji = (not until) then
3) go deihjī = here: your address
4) Lōuh Wóng = 'Old Wong'—Lōuh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
5) Singgabō = Singapore
6) ngāamngāam = just
7) ji = (only) then, (not until) then
8) tūhngmāaih = tūhng
9) Tōihwāan = Taïwan
10) yīhchihn = previously
11) sāangyi = (commercial) business

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. What day of the week is it today?
2. What day of the month is Thursday?

B: And he replies:

1. It's ________
2. Thursday's the ________ th/rd/st/nd.

40
3. What's your birth date? 3. I was born on __________.
4. When did you come to Hong Kong? 4. I came last year.
5. I hear you arrived last month—is that right? 5. No, I came this month.
6. I hear he went to America last week—is that right? 6. No, he went this week.
7. What day are you free?—I'd like to ask you to dinner. 7. How about tomorrow?
9. I hear you're leaving for Japan on October 10th. 9. No, it's November 10th that I'm going.
10. What is it that's called a jàugā? 10. A jàugā is a place where you eat Chinese food.
11. Be sure to come see me when you get to San Francisco. 11. Finel Please give me your address.
12. Do you have relatives in the States? 12. No, I don't have any relatives there, but I have a few friends in San Francisco.

13. Mr. Lee went to Shanghai last year and still hasn't returned.
14. Where'd we read to last week? 14. I'm not sure. We read lesson 17 last Friday, but I don't remember what page we got to.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 17

1. baatsyuht  
   TW August
2. bīn nǐhn?  
   TW which year?
3. bīn nǐhn, bīn yuht, bīn yah?  
   TW what date?
4. bīn yah?  
   TW what day?
5. bīn yuht?  
   TW what month? (in a year-month-day phrase)
6. chānchīk  
   n relative(s)
7. chātyuht  
   TW July
8. chāutsnin  
   TW next year
9. chēutsai  
   VO to be born

41
10. dáyun  
11. daat  
12. deihfông or deihfong  
13. deihfi  
14. ēanhheui  
15. gánmin  
16. guanhmin  
17. gáuyuht  
18. géi(dō) houh?  
19. géiyuht  
20. gin  
21. hahchí  
22. hángo láiibaai  
23. hángo yuht  
24. hái  
25. -houh  
26. hóu noih móuh gin.  
27. já faaiji  
28. jígan(yiu) V  
29. jíkhaín  
30. láih (FW) chōh la!  
31. láihbaai  
32. láihbaai  
33. láihbaai géi?  
34. láihbaaiiluhk  
35. láihbaaiíngh  
36. láihbaaiisaam  
37. láihbaaiisei  
38. láihbaaiiyaht  
39. láihbaaiiyáht  
40. láihbaaiiyih  
41. luhryuht  
42. ní go láihbaai  
43. ní go yuht  

AuxV plan on, plan to 
m M. for a place  
n place  
n address  
V go back, return  
Tw this year  
Tw last year  
Tw September  
Tw what day of the month?  
Tw what month?  
V meet, see  
Tw next time  
Tw next week  
Tw next month  
prep from  
bf day of the month  
Ph 'Long time no see.'  
VO use chopsticks [clamp-chopsticks]  
Ph be sure to--by all means do _V_  
Ph that is, in other words, that is to say  
Ph Come visit (place)!

n week  
Tw Sunday  
Tw what day of the week?  
Tw Saturday  
Tw Friday  
Tw Wednesday  
Tw Thursday  
Tw Sunday  
Tw Monday  
Tw Tuesday  
Tw June  
Tw this week  
Tw this month
44. nihn  m year
45. nghyuht  TW May
46. noih  Adj long (time)
47. Sāmfaahnsīh  PW San Francisco
48. sāmyuht  TW March
49. sahpyātyuht  TW November
50. sahpyihyuht  TW December
51. sahpyuht  TW October
52. seiyuht  TW April
53. seuhung go lāihbaaī  TW last week
54. seuhung go yuht  TW last month
55. tēngginwah  Ph hear tell, (I) hear... [hear-see-talk]
56. Wāhsihngdeuhn  PW Washington
57. wah ēndihiŋg.  Ph Can't say for sure, uncertain
58. yātyuht  TW January
59. yaht  M day
60. yihyuht  TW February
61. yuht  n month
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(University student Bâau Bok-lèuhng, waiting for his
girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

gäjê

Gäjê

Néih hain bîndouh yâhn a?
(Where is your family
from?)
elder sister

Gwóngjâu.

Bok-lèuhng

Geì nôi? or gêi noih?
how long?

jyuhjô gêi nôi?
have lived how long?; lived

Néih hái Hèunggông jyuhjô gêi
Hong Kong?

nôi a?

-dôu

Lêuhng nînh dôu.
approximately

Gäjê

About two years.

Bok-lèuhng

Néih dásyun juhng jyuh gêi
How much longer do you plan
to stay?
nôi a?

Bok-lèuhng

jísîu

At least

Jísîu yât nîhn.
university

daâihhohk

study at the university

duhk daâihhohk

study two years at the

duhk léuhng nînh daâihhohk

university

Ngôh duhkjô léuhng nînh daâihhohk
I've studied two years at the
gê la.
university.

bâtyihp

graduate

Juhng yâuh yât nîhn jauh
I still have another year then
bâtyihp.

I'll graduate.
Gājō

jīnchīhn
duhk syū
Nhḕh jīnchīhn hai bīndouh duhk syū a?

previous study
Where did you study before?

Bok-lāuhng

jīchīhn
meih..VP..jīchīhn,...
ngōh meih lāih Hēunggōng jīchīhn,...

before
before Yīngh. Phrases.
before I came to Hongkong,...

Tōihwāan, or Tōihwāan
Ngōh meih lāih Hēunggōng jīchīhn,
ngōh hai Tōihwāan duhk syū.
Hāi gōdouh jyuhjō gēi nīhn.

Taiwan
Before I came to Hongkong, I
studied in Taiwan.
I lived there for several years.

gōjān or gōjahn
Nhḕh hai Tōihwāan gōjān, hai
bīndouh jyuh a?

when, at the time
When you were in Taiwan, where
did you live?

Bok-lāuhng

Tōihbāk
Hāi Tōihbāk.

Taipei
In Taipei.

Gājō

jīhauh
bātjō yihp jīhauh
Nhḕh bātjō yihp jīhauh, dāsyun
heui bīndouh a?

after
after you graduate
After you graduate, where do
you plan to go? (i.e., what
do you plan to do?)

Bok-lāuhng

kyutdīhng
meih kyutdīhng
juhng meih kyutdīhng
hēimohng
hēimohng hōyīh heui Yīnggwok
lāuhhohk

decide
not decided yet
still not decided yet
hope
I hope I can go to England
to study abroad

Yīnhā jūng meih kyutdīhng,
daⁿnhaih ngōh hēimohng hōyīh
heui Yīnggwok lāuhhohk.

It's still not decided yet,
but I hope to be able to go
to England to study.
LESSON 18 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

yúhgwó
yúhgwó ēheui láuhhohk
wán yēh jouh
Tūhgwó ēheui láuhhohk, jauh hai
douh wán yēh jouh.

if
if I don't go abroad to study
look for a job [look for something to do]
If I don't go abroad to study, I'll look for a job here.

B. Recapitulation:

(University student Bâau Bok-léuhng, waiting for his girl to get ready to go out, talks to her elder sister:)

Gājô
Nêih haih bǐndouh yāhn a?

What place are you from?

Bok-léuhng
Gwóm, õu,

Canton.

Gājô
Nêih hái Hèunggông jyuhyô gēi nóí a?

How long have you lived in Hong Kong?

Bok-léuhng
Láuhng nihn dōu.

About two years.

Gājô
Nêih dáisyun juhng jyuh gēi nóí a?

How much longer do you plan to stay?

Bok-léuhng
Jisîu yāt nihn.
Ngôh duhkjô láuhng nihn
daaiighthok gē la.
Juhng yâuh yāt nihn jauh bātyihp.

At least a year.
I've studied two years at the university.
I still have another year then I'll graduate.

Gājô
Nêih yînhchîn nãi bǐndouh duhk syû a?

Where did you study before?

Bok-léuhng
Ngôh meh láih Hèunggông jîchîn,
ngôh hái Tôîhwaan duhk syû.

Before I came to Hong Kong, I studied in Taiwan.
II. NOTES

1. ...jichihn,... = 'Before....'
   ...jlauh,... = 'After....'
   ...gojahn (gojahn),... = 'When....'

2. jichihn, jlauh, and gojahn are conjunctions which stand at the end of
   the first (subordinate) clause and join it to the following (main)
   clause. The order of subordinate clause first and main second is
   irreversible.

   Ex (from BC):
   1. Ngoh meih laih thung Gong
      jichihn, ngob hai
      Tsihwaan dukh ayu.
      (See also Drill 12)
      Before I came to Hongkong,
      I studied in Taiwan.

   2. Neih bêtjô yihp jlauh,
      dáuyun heui bindouh a?
      After you graduate, where
      do you plan to go?
      (See also Drill 12)

   3. Neih hai Tsihwaan gojahn,
      hai bindouh jyuh a?
      When you were in Taiwan,
      where did you live? PC
      (See also Drill 11)
b. (meih). YP... jichihn...

meih is often used before the verb of the jichihn phrase. The meaning of the phrase is the same with or without meih.

Ex: Ngōin (meih) ēi hēngpôngg jichihn, ēi Toihwān dunk syū. Before I came to Hongkong, I studied in Taiwan.

c. jichihn and jihauh form Timewords with a preceding Number + Measure when the Measure is a time measure.

Ex: ū + M jōbihn/jihauh

sāam nīhm jichihn = 3 years before; 3 years ago
sāam nīhm jihauh = 3 years later; 3 years afterwards; after 3 years

Example sentences:

1. Kēuī sāam nīhm jichihn

   heui

   1. He went to America to study abroad three
   Māingwok
   lāuhhokk. years ago. (or three years before)

2. Kēuī sāam nīhm jihauh

   2. He went to America to study abroad three
   years later. (or: After 3 years, he went to
   Māingwok
   lāuhhokk. America to study abroad.)

(See Lesson 22, Drill 17)

d. gōjahn does not link with a length-of-time Number + Measure compound as jichihn and jihauh do, but can itself act as a Timeword.

Ex: gōjahn = 'at that time'

Kēuī gōjahn heui Māingwok
lāuhhokk. At that time he went to America to study abroad.

2. yiicihn, 'previously,' and yiihauh, 'afterwards'

yiicihn, 'formerly,' 'previously,' 'before,' and yiihauh, 'afterwards,' 'later,' can operate in single clause sentences.

Ex: 1. Kēuī yiicihn hái nīdouh He lived here previously.

   jyuh.

2. Kēuī yiihauh hái nīdouh He lived here afterwards.

   jyuh.

yiicihn and yiihauh must come before the verb and can come before the subject of the sentence as well. To words in this category we give the name Moveable Adverb (MA).

Ex: Yiicihn kēuī hái nīdouh jyuh. Previously he
Kēuī yiicihn hái nīdouh jyuh. lived

here.

(See Drills 2, 14)
3. Time spent expressions in sentences of future reference.

In sentences of future reference the central verb is often preceded by such auxiliary verbs as séung, 'plans to,' dáyun, 'plans to,' or yiu, 'wants, intends to,' when a time-spent expression follows.

Ex: Kâu nhîn Yîngmânh {séung \(\{\) dáyun yiu \(\})\} duhk lêuhng nînh Yîngmânh. He plans to take two years of English.

(See BC & Drills 7, 12, 15)

4. Time spent expressions in sentences of past reference.

In sentences of past reference the verb adds the suffix -jô 'accomplish' or -gwo 'experience,' when a time-spent expression follows.

Ex: S V \{\{\} TS -jô -gwo\}

Kâu dûnh jô lêuhng nînh Yîngmânh. He took two years of English.

(See BC and Drills 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 15)

5. \(V\)-jô + time spent and \(V\)-gwo + time spent compared

a. \(V\)-jô + time spent phrase

This pattern is used to express both:

a. action or condition which began in the past and continues to the moment of speaking:

Ex: 1. Kâu nhîn fî dôuh \(jyuhjô\) sâm nînh la. He has lived here 3 years.

2. Kâu heuijô sâm \(jyuhjô\) lâi-hbaal la. He has been gone for 3 weeks.

b. action or condition which began in the past and ended in the past:

Ex: 1. Kâu nhîn \(jyuhjô\) sâm nhîn. He lived in Washington for 3 years.

2. Kâu heuijô sâm \(jyuhjô\) lâi-hbaal or He went for three weeks. He was away for 3 weeks.

Sentences of the type described in a above generally end in la, prompting the analysis that time spent sentences of the pattern \(V\)-jô + time spent + la are restricted to those describing actions which began in the past and continue into the present. However la is also used at the end of sentences of type b above, describing actions which began in the past and ended in the past.
In such cases _la_ is used to stress that the time spent is considered a long time. (For an example of the latter see CL 18.1)

**b. Verb-gwo + time spent phrase**

This pattern is used to express action which began in the past and ended in the past. This structure marks the action of the verb as terminating sometime before the moment of speaking.

Ex: Ngor hohgwọ _sasaam ni mh_ Yingmánn. I studied English for 3 years. (am not studying now)

6. Relative position of Timespent phrase and other post-verbal expressions.

a. With most _VO_ phrases, the time-spent phrase precedes the direct object as modifier to it.

Ex: Ngor dájó yótgo júngtāuh bō. I played ball for an hour.

I played an hour of ball.

(See BC and Drill 13)

b. With other _VO_ phrases, the time-spent phrase follows the object of the verb:

Ex: Ngor dāngjó kēuih lēuhng go jih. I waited for her for ten minutes.

(See Drill 5)

c. With still other _VO_ phrases the preference is to treat the direct object and the time-spent phrase as two verbal expressions in series:

_VO_ + _V-o_ timespent:

Ex: Kēuihdeih wān ūk, wānjó géi go yuht. They looked (or have been looking) for a house for several months.

(Lesson 19, D 15)

d. Another favorite treatment puts the logical object in topic position, with the comment an _SVO_ clause, the _O_ of _SVO_ being the time-spent phrase:

Ex: Mi gān ngūck nhōdhdeih jyuhjó _sasaam go yuht la_. This house we've lived in three months.
e. When the VO is a movement verb + PW object, the time spent phrase follows the PW object.

Ex: 1. Kāuih làihjō hāunggōng mōuhgōinōih. 1. He's been in Hong Kong for just a short time.
2. Kāuih dāyun heui Tōiwān (jyu) sāam nīhn. 2. He plans to go to Taiwan (to live) for three years.

(See Drill 15)

7. Time-since phrases

Time elapsed since a particular action or since the establishment of a state of affairs, is also expressed by V-jo + timespent. If the sentence is an SVO direct object sentence, the time spent phrase follows the direct object.

Ex: 1. Kāuih gitjō fān yāt nīhn. 1. He's been married for one year.
   or It's been a year since he got married.
2. Kāuih bünjō ūk léuühng nīhn. 2. He's been moved for 2 years.
   bün ngūk = [move-house], i.e., move
   or It's been 2 years since he moved.
   i.e: He moved 2 years ago.
3. Ngōh gu chē màaihjō sāam nīhn. 3. My car has been bought for three years.
   i.e. I've had this car 3 years.

A sentence which is phrased Verb-jo + Timespent is potentially ambiguous, inasmuch as both the time-spent pattern and the time-since pattern both use this formula of expression. Thus:

Mǐ gīhn sāam jouhjō léuühng yahht. This dress took two days to make.
   or This dress has been made (finished)
   for 2 days.

In an SVO construction there is no ambiguity—the time-since follows the SVO, and the time-spent adopts the pattern of verbal expressions in series:

Ex: 1. Kāuih jouhjō nǐ gīhn sāam léuühng yahht. 1. She's had the dress made for 2 days. (since 2 days ago)
2. Kāuih jouh nǐ gīhn sāam, jouhjō 2 jahht. 2. She took 2 days to make the dress.
III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kēuīh màhmā jyuh hái Sâam-fâahnsīh.
1. Kēuīh màhmā jyuh hái Sâam-fâahnsīh.

2. /kēuīh/Gwōngjāu/
Canton
2. Kēuīh jyuh hái Gwōngjāu.
He lives in Canton.

+ 3. /ngōh ge sailōugō/Daaïhluhk/
(Mainland China)
3. Ngōh ge sailōugō jyuh hái Daaïhluhk.
My children live on the Mainland.

+ 4. /ngōh màhmā/Oumūn/
(Macau)

5. /kēuīh dī jāinēui/Tōihwāan/
5. Kēuīh dī jāinēui jyuh hái Tōihwāan.

Comment: Chinese use the word for 'continent,' daaihluhk, to refer to Mainland China. We spell it with a capital letter to differentiate 'continent' from 'the Mainland.'

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Lâihjó gēi nihn. T: Has been here (or came here) for several years.
S: Lâihjó gēi(dō) nihn a? S: How many years, has (he) been (or was he) here?

2. T: Lâihjó géigo jih. T: Has been (or was) here for several 5 minute periods.
S: Lâihjó gēi(dō) go jih a? S: How many 5 minute periods has (he) been (or was he) here?

1. Lâihjó gēi nihn.
2. Lâihjó gēi yaht.
3. Lâihjó gēi go jih.
4. Lâihjó gēi go lâihbaai.
5. Lâihjó gēi go jūngtāuh.
Has been here several hours.
7. Lâihjó gēi fānjūng.

+ 5. Lâihjó gēi(dō) go jūngtāuh a?
6. Lâihjó gēi(dō) go yuht a?
7. Lâihjó gēi(dō) fānjūng a?
3. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Làihjó sàam go yuht. T: Has been here (or came here)
    /duhk/ for three months. /study/
    S: Duhkjó sàam go yuht. S: Has studied (or studied) for
    three months.

+ 1. Dàngjó mòuhgéinoih jë. /heui/ (not very long)
   1. Heuijó mòuhgéinoih jë.
   Has been gone for not very long. or
   Has been gone for just a little while.

4. Mâaijhó géigo làihbaai. /heui/ Has been bought for several
   weeks. [i.e. bought it several weeks ago; have had it
   for several weeks]
5. Làihjó mòuhgéinoih jë. /dou/ 5. Doujó mòuhgéinoih jë.

4. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Duhkjó sàam go yuht. 1. Duhkjó sàam go yuht.
   Studied 3 months.
2. /mòuhgéinoih/ 2. Duhkjó mòuhgéinoih.
5. Transformation Drill: Transform from statement to question following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngôh dângjô kéuih léuhng go jih jê.  
S: Kêih dângjô kéuih géi(dô) go jih a?

T: I've waited for him for ten minutes, that's all.  
S: How many 5 minute periods have you waited for him?

1. Ngôh sênsâang heuijô Daaihluhk sâm go yuht la.  
1. Nêih sênsâang heuijô Daaihluhk géi(dô) go yuht a?

2. Ngôh tsaîtâi fânjôlâih bun go jungtâu jê.  
2. Nêih tsaîtâi fânjôlâih géi(dô) go jungtâu a?

My wife has been back home for half an hour, that's all.  
Of My wife came home just half an hour ago.

3. Wôhng Sââng dûhkjô sahp géi nihn Yîngmâhn la.  
3. Wôhng Sââng dûhkjô géi(dô) nihn Yîngmâhn a?

4. Kêuih jyuâjô Tôihwâen léuñg nihn jê.  
4. Kêuih jyuâjô Tôihwâen géi(dô) nihn a?

5. Gô go Tôihwâen yânh lâihjô nîdouh sei go lâihbaai la. 
5. Gô go Tôihwâen yânh lâihjô nîdouh géi(dô) go lâihbaai a?

6. Hôh Sâuâjô go sâm dâfgôêi màaihjô géi(dô) yah a?

7. Kêuih sênsâang gân ük màaihjô géi(dô) nihn a?

Her husband's house was bought 2 years ago. [(has been) bought 2 years]

8. Chàhn Tàai fânjô ükkêi yât go jungtâu jê.  
8. Chàhn Tàai fânjô ükkêi géi(dô) go jungtâu a?

Mrs. Chan went home an hour ago.
6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngön hái nídouh jyuht jyuht jyuht sahm nihn.
S: Ngön dásyun hái nídouh jyuht jyuht jyuht sahm nihn.

T: I have lived here 10 years.
S: I plan to live here 10 years.

1. Ngön hái Hèunggóng duhkjó saam go yuht.
2. Kauih hái gódouh jouhjó gée go yuht.
My wife has lived (or lived) in America for a long time.
5. Ngóndeih hái nídouh dängjó yátgogwát.

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néihdeih dásyun jyuht gée noih a?
S: Néihdeih dásyun jyuht gée noih a?

T: How long do you intend to stay?
S: How much longer do you intend to stay?

1. Néih kyutdihng däng gée noih tim a?
2. Néih hémochng duhk gée noih tim a?
3. Ngón jìdò chèng chát baat go yáhn je.
I'm going to invite only 7 or 8 people at most.
4. Néih jíshú yiu gée chín a?
5. Ngón jìdò dãng néih gée fàngjüng je.

4. Néih jíshú jìng jìng yiu gée chín a?
5. Ngón jìdò juhng dãng néih gée fàngjüng je.
8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nghô chêng sihkh faahn.
S: Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh chêng sihkh faahn.

T: I'm going to have a dinner party.
S: If I have (or had) the money,
I'm going to have (or would have) a dinner party.

1. Nghô duhk daaihnohk.
2. Nghô heui Méihzwok jyuuh.

1. Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh duhk daaihnohk.
2. Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh heui Méihzwok jyuuh.
3. Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh máaih chê.

+ 4. Nghô gitfân. [to get married]
I'm going to get married.

4. Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh gitfân.

5. Nghô daai dî sailôugô heui Töihwaan.
7. Nghô taaiâai âhsâi jowh yêh.

5. Yûngwô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh daai dî sailôugô heui Töihwaan.
6. Yûngô nghô yauh chîn, nghô jauh âhsâi tûhng kêuih jyuuh.
7. Yûngô nghô yauh chîn, nghô taaiâai jauh âhsâi jowh yêh.

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih yînhîhn hai Hêunggông jyuuh.
S: Kêuih yînhîhn hai Hêunggông jyuuh, yîngâ hai binâou jyuuh a?

T: He lived in Hong Kong before.
S: He lived in Hong Kong before, where does he live now?

1. Kêuih yînhîhn hai Töihbâk duhkseû.
2. Kêuih yînhîhn hai Wihug Ön Gungseî jowh sind.

1. Kêuih yînhîhn hai Töihbâk duhkseû, yîngâ hai binâou duhk a?
2. Kêuih yînhîhn hai Wihug Ön Gungseî jowh sind, yîngâ hai binâou jowh a?
3. Kêuih yînhîhn hai Mâhuwâh Jûudîm jyuuh, yîngâ hai binâou jyuuh a?

5. Kœih yîhcpîhn tûnhg kéuih pâhngyâuh jyuuh.

4. Jëung Tåai yîhcpîhn háí Daaihluhk gaau Gwokyuh, yîhga háí bîndoûh g-aw a?

5. Kœih yîhcpîhn tûnhg kéuih pâhngyâuh jyuuh, yîhga tûnhg bîngo jyuuh a?

10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ângôi néih dâ dîhnwâ bêí ngôh.
S: Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih dâ dîhnwâ bêí ngôh.

T: Please phone me.
S: Before you leave, please phone me.

1. Ângôi néih wâmngôh jî.

2. Ângôi néih giu Hôh Siujé yahplaih.

+ 3. Ângôi néih bêîfâân bûn syû ngôh.
(give back, return something)

4. Ângôi néih dâ dîhnwâ bêí kéuih.

5. Ângôi néih sêuhng heui wah bêí ngôh máhmâ jî.

1. Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih wâmngôh jî.

2. Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih giu Hôh Siujé yahplaih.

3. Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih bêîfâân bûn syû ngôh.

4. Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih dâ dîhnwâ bêí kéuih.

5. Néih jâu jîchîhn, Ângôi néih sêuhng heui wah bêí ngôh máhmâ jî.

11. Response Drill: Transform each sentence to choice type question, following the pattern of the example.

Ex: T: Ngôh duhk daaihohk T: When I was at the university, gôjahn, háî chânhîk I lived at my relative house. Ukkekî jyuuh.

S: Néih duhk daaihohk S: When you were at the university, gôjahn, háî mîhhái chânhîk Ukkekî jyuuh a?

1. Ngôh gîtîfân gôjahn, ngôh máhmâ háî Tûihwaan.

2. When I got married, my mother was in Taiwan. or

1. Néih gîtîfân gôjahn, néih máhmâ háî mîhhái Tûihwaan a?

2. When you got married, was your mother in Taiwan?
When I get married, my mother will be in Taiwan.

When I move, I don't need to buy anything.

(bun áuk = move-house, move)


2. Néih bun áuk gójahn, sâi máaih máaih yêh a?

3. Néih hâi Toihná kójahn, hâi máaih hâi Toihnáan Daaihohk duhk suy a?

4. Néih heui máaih yêh gójahn, hâi máaih gong Guokyüh a?

5. Néih gitfân gójahn, hâi máaih hâi Mânhwáh Jâudim chêng yâm a?

6. Néih gitfân gójahn, sêung máaih hâi Mânhwáh Jâudim chêng yâm a?

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih dáxyun máaih ga chê.

S: Kéuih láihjô Hêunggông ji-hauh, dáxyun máaih ga chê.

T: Kéuih máaihjô ga chê.

S: Kéuih láihjô Hêunggông ji-hauh, máaihjô ga chê.

T: He's planning to buy a car.

After he gets to Hong Kong, he plans to buy a car.

He bought a car.

After he got to Hong Kong, he bought a car.


He plans to move to Kowloon to live.


After he gets to Hong Kong, he plans to move to Kowloon to live.

2. Kéuih jouhjô hóudô sâm.

2. Kéuih láihjô sêunggông ji-hauh, jouhjô hóudô sâm.
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

LESSON 18

3. Kaujuk sii jauh geido go
   Jünggwok pahngyauh jë.

4. Kaujuk dasyun wën ngük máaih.

5. Kaujuk dasyun wën sih jouh.

3. Kaujuk lái jëgo Hânggong ji-
   hauh, alkjó mouh géido
   go Jünggwok pahngyauh jë.

4. Kaujuk lái jëgo Hânggong ji-
   hauh, dasyun wën ngük máaih.

5. Kaujuk lái jëgo Hânggong ji-
   hauh, dasyun wën sih jouh.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngoh go nêu së
    Jüngmâhn. /yat
    go Jüngtâuh/

S: Ngoh go nêu sëjó
    yât go Jüngtâuh
    Jüngmâhn.

T: My daughter writes Chinese.
    /one hour/

S: My daughter wrote (or has
    written) Chinese for an hour.

1. Ngoh tsai jëgo páai.
    /gëi go Jüngtâuh/

2. Ngoh dâ deiwâ. /sei fân jëng/

3. Kaujuk dënh syû. /sahp nînh/

4. Kaujuk tâi deiwsih. /léu hng
    go Jüngtâuh/

5. Ngoh gaa au Yîngmâhn. /yât go
    yuht/

14. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Nêih yuha gaa si jë
    chîn. Nêih mohdëk
    yuha.

S: Yûgwo nêih yîngá
    yuha gaa si jë chîn,
    yînhauh nêih jauh
    mohdëk yuha laakh.
    (afterwards)

T: You used up all the money.
    There isn't any to spend.

S: If you use up all the money
    now, afterwards you won't
    have any to spend.

1. Nêih ânhohk. Ngoh ehaa suh
    laakh.

2. Nêih ândung syû. Nêih mohdëk
    duhk laakh.

1. Yûgwo nêih yîngá ânhohk,
    yînhauh ngoh jauh ehaa
    nêih laakh.

2. Yûgwo nêih yîngá ândung syû,
LESSON 1A  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

   3. Yūgwó néih yihgā mài în gąn ūk, yihhauh néih mhsái béi chīn jauh yáuh deihfông jyuh laak.

   Néih māaih yěh höyih pěhng-dī laak.
   4. Yūgwó néih yihgā hokh dōdī Gwongdungwā, yihhauh néih māaih yěh jauh höyih pěhngdī laak.

5. Néih hokh sē Jūmgāhn.
   Néih höyih tài Jūmgāhn syū laak.
   5. Yūgwó néih yihgā hokh sē Jūmgāhn, yihhauh néih jauh höyih tài Jūmgāhn syū laak.

   Néih mhgau chīn yuhng laak.
   6. Yūgwó néih yihgā jegum dō chīn béi kéuih, jihhauh néih jauh mhgau chīn yuhng laak.

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih láihjó yāt
   nihn. /Héunggūng/
   S: Kéuih láihjó
   Héunggūng yāt
   nihn.
   T: He has been here a year.
   /Hong Kong/

   2. T: Kéuih dáisyun heui
gódouh. /géido/
yah a?
   S: Kéuih dáisyun heui
gódouh géido
   yah a?
   T: He plans to go there.
   /how many days?/

   1. Kéuih dáisyun fānheui géi
go yuht. /Méihgwok/

   2. Kéuih chāncíh kyeüdíhng láih
   Héunggūng. /géi noih a?/

   3. Kéuih dáisyun heui jyuh géido
   nihn a? /Tōihwān/

   /géi go láihbaai/

   5. Kéuih láihjó chāt beat nihn
   laak. /nǐdouh/
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) Jouh mātyēh = How come?
2) Mōuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.
3) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = eat lunch
   a) ngaanjau = 'noon'
4) tūnghohk = schoolmate
5) jūnghohk = high school, middle school
6) yātchāih = together
7) gō jahnsih = at that time
8) sahpēi = more than ten [ten-several]
9) ji = (not until) then, (only) then
10) wāan = play, amuse oneself, enjoy leisure time

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person next to you:

1. How long have you lived here?
2. How much longer do you plan to stay?
3. Where did you live before you came here?
4. I attended university in England—I lived there for three years.
5. At most, how long do you plan to stay?
6. After Mr. Ho comes back, he and Miss Chan are getting married.
7. That car of yours is very nice—when'd you get it?
8. That's a nice lighter—where did you get (buy) it?

B. And he replies:

1. About two years.
2. Can't say for sure—maybe one year, maybe ten.
3. Before I came here, I lived in Taiwan.
4. After I graduate, I plan to go to England for further study.
5. At most five years, at least three.
6. Really! Before he left, he planned to marry Miss Cheung!
7. I bought it after I got to Hong Kong.
8. I don't remember—I bought it before I came to Hong Kong.
9. (said in Hong Kong: He told me he moved to Hong Kong last year. Do you know where he lived before?

9. His wife told me they previously lived in Macau.

10. He's been gone for three weeks--do you know when he's coming back?

10. He planned to be away about three weeks--maybe he'll be back tomorrow.

11. I've been married 3 years--How long have you been married?

11. Not very long--only eleven months.

12. How long did you play ball yesterday?

12. We played ball for three hours, and afterwards then came home and studied Cantonese for two hours.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 18

1. bātyihp VO graduate
2. bèifèn v give back
3. bûn v move
4. bûn (ng)ûk VO move (house)
5. daaihhohk n/PW university
6. daaihluhk PW/n continent; term used to refer to Mainland China
7. -dôu suf. suf. to nu.m. expression = approximately nu.m.
8. duhk daaihhohk VO study at a university, attend a university
9. çuhk ayû VO to study, to go to school
10. gâjê TA/n elder sister
11. gâi nôi Ph how long (time)?
12. gitân VO get married, be married
13. _VP_ gôjân, Cj when, at the time of..., combines with preceding verb phrase to express 'at the time of (thus and so), 'when'
14. gôjahn Cj same as gôjân (QV)
15. Gwôngjâu PW Canton, city of Canton
16. hîmohng v hope
17. jîdô Ph at most
18. jîslû Ph at least
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19. ___ jichên</td>
<td>Cj before ___ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. ___ jlhauh</td>
<td>Cj after ___ (combines with preceding VP or nu.m. length of time expression)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. -jó</td>
<td>vs verb suf. in time spent phrase of past reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. jüngtâuuh</td>
<td>n hour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. kyutdihng</td>
<td>v decide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. l̀uuhhohk</td>
<td>v study abroad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. meih ___ jichên, ....</td>
<td>Cj before ___, ....</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. móuhgéinoih</td>
<td>Ph not very long (time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Cùmin</td>
<td>FW Macau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Tòihbak</td>
<td>FW Taipei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Tòihwaan or -waan</td>
<td>FW Taiwan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. wán yéh jouh</td>
<td>VP look for a job, search for work to do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. yíchêhnh</td>
<td>MA previously, formerly, before</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. yíhhauh</td>
<td>MA afterwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. yùhgwô</td>
<td>Cj if, on condition that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 19  Cantonese Basic Course

I. Basic Conversation

A. Buildup:

("Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident."

sán láih ge yáhn
newcomer, new arrival

Sán láih ge yáhn

A. Léih Sång, jóusåhn. Good morning, Mr. Lee.
jóucháan breakfast [early-meal]
Siékjó jóucháan meih a? Have you had breakfast yet?

Bündeihyáhn
Meih a. Not yet.
jíng fix; make
Rhgau shigaan hái ngúkköi jíng. There wasn't enough time to fix it at home.

Sán láih ge yáhn fitting, suitable
yáchtáih together
Ngåam laak--yáchtáih lái Great! (we can eat) together!

Bündeihyáhn
Hóu aak. Fine.
(The two enter a cafe and take a table)
wân ngúk look for a house
wânjó hóu noih searched for a long time
Téngginwah néih wân ngúk, wânjó I hear you've been looking for a house for quite a while--
hóu noih--
wándóu find [search-succeed]
Wándóu meih a? Have you found one?

Sán láih ge yáhn

Wándóu laak. Yeah, we did.
sinji (var.: ji) finally, (not until) then,
(only) then
Seuhug go láihbaai sinji last week we finally found one.
wándóu jé.
Bündeihyǎhn
Gâm, néih dāsayun gēisih bün nê? When do you plan to move?

Sán láih ge yāhn
chēng invite, request
chēngdōu hire, employ [invite-attein]
chēngdōu gùngyǎhn employ servants
jì (not until) then (same as sīnji)

Dâng ngōhdeih chēngdōu gùngyǎhn We won't move until after we
jihauh, ji bün. hire servants.

Bündeihyǎhn
Néih yâuh mōuh mâsih yęb a? Have you bought things (for the
house)?

Sán láih ge yâhá
Yâuh--
dip Yes--
chēunglim plates
chēunglim bou curtains
tou gâsi curtain material
bou a suffix to members of series
a in parallel construction

Seuhng go làihbsai ngōh tsaitsāi Last week my wife bought some
mâsihjô dī bûi a, dip a,
gām glasses, and plates, and some
chēunglim bou a-- curtain material--
Seuhng go làihbsai ngōh that kind of thing, such things
tsaitsāi māsihjô dī bûi a,
dip a, chēunglim bou a, gām Last week my wife bought some
jō. kind of stuff, that's all.
gâsi furniture
tou gâsi set of furniture
jōu to rent
jōu tou gâsi rent a set of furniture
Kâuih juhng jōu tou gâsi tim She also rented a set of
bo. furniture, too.
Bündeihyân

-hou  
verb suffix: bring to satisfactory conclusion

Dİ yēh jinghōu saai meih a?  
Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn lāih ge yânh

yīhing  
already

Yīhing jinghōu saai laak.  
(Yes, it's) already all fixed up.

Dēkhaahn chēng heui chōh lā.  
When you have time, please go visit.

Bündeihyân

Hōu ask.

yātdihng  
definitely, certainly

yātdihng yiu màaih chē  
certainly want to buy a car

Gān, néih hái Hēunggōng yātdihng  
Say, in Hong Kong you'll

yiu màaih chē ga.  
definitely have to buy a car.

Màaihjŏ meih a?  
Have you bought one yet?

Sàn lāih ge yânh

Ngōh meih màaihdou bo.  
I haven't gotten around to buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bāndou hái màaih ga?  
Where was yours bought?

Ngōh waahkjē heui gōdouh tāinah.  
Maybe I'll go there and have a look.

B. Recapitulation:

(Walking from the bus stop on his way to work in the morning, a foreigner who is a new resident in Hong Kong meets a friend, a native resident:)

Sàn lāih ge yânh

A, Lāih bāang, jōusāhn.  
Good morning, Mr. Lee.

Sīhkjŏ jōuchān meih a?  
Have you had breakfast yet?

Bündeihyân

Meih a.  
Not yet.

Ahgau sihgaan hái ūkkēi jīng.  
There wasn't enough time to fix it at home.
Sàn láih ge yáhn
Ngām laak—yīchāih lái!
Great! (We can eat) together!

Būndeihzáhn
Hōu aak.
Fine.

Tèngginweh néih wān ngūk, wānjo
hōu roih--
I hear you've been looking for
wāndòu méih a?
a house for quite a while--

Sàn láih ge yáhn
Wāndòu laak.
Have you found one?

Seuhng go láihbaai sīnji
Yeah, we did.
wāndòu jō.
Last week we finally found one.

Būndeihzáhn
Gām, néih dāsyun gēisih būn nō?
When do you plan to move?

Sàn láih ge yáhn
Dāng ngōhdeih chēngdū gūngyáhn
We won't move until after we
jīhauh, ji būn.
hire servants.

Būndeihzáhn
Néih yāuh mōuh màaih yēh a?
Have you bought things (for

Sàn láih ge yáhn
Yāuh--
the house)?

Seuhng go láihbaai ngōh tsaai--
Last week my wife bought some
-tāai sāaijō dī būi a, dīp a,
glasses, and plates, and
chēngliām bou a, gām jō.
some curtain material—that

Kāuīh jūhng jōu tou gāsi tīm bo.
kind of stuff, that's all.

Būndeihzáhn
Dī yēh jīnghōusāai méih a?
Is everything fixed up by now?

Sàn láih ge yáhn
Yīnggīng jīnghōusāai laak.
Yes, (it's) already all fixed

Dākhāhn chēng hēui chōh lá.
up.
When you have time, please go
visit.
Bundlehyáhn

Hǒu sak.
Gám, néih hái Hōunggōng yātdihng
   yiu máaih ché ga.
Máaihjó meih a?

Fine!
Say, in Hong Kong you’ll
definitely want to buy a car.
Have you bought one yet?

Sàn láih ge yáhn

Ngǒn meih máaihdu bɔc.

I haven’t gotten around to
buying one yet.

Néih ga hái bǐндouh máaih ga?
Ngǒn waahkjé heui gǒduoh tǎihah.

Where was yours bought?
Maybe I’ll go there and have
a look.
II. NOTES

1. Verb forms for talking about what happened in the past: affirmative, negative, and question forms.
   a. Affirmative forms for talking about the past: V, V-jô, V-gwo, V-hôu, V-ge, and others.
      The way the verb is inflected (whether it is plain or how it is suffixed) depends in part on what aspect of the activity the speaker wishes to focus on.
      1) Focus on general activity: V(O)
         Ex: 1. Ngôh kahmyhâh gwo hoi haahng gungsi. I went across the harbour yesterday to window-shop.
             2. Tôngginwah néih wîn nguk. I hear you’ve been house-hunting.
      2) Focus on a particular experience: V-gwo
         Ex: Ngôh tâigwo yîsâng, daahnhaih keuih wah mouh meyeh. I went to the doctor, but he said it wasn’t anything.
      3) Focus on the success of a particular performance: V-hôu
         Ex: Dî chêunglim jîngôussai laak. The curtains are all fixed.

4) Focus on accomplishment of a particular performance: V-jô
       2. Keuih kahmyhâh heuijô Méihngwok. He took off for America yesterday.
       3. Keuih pîpíai chèngjô gungyahn laak. He recently hired a servant.

5) Focus on attainment of a particular objective (though it was hard, you did it): V-dôu
   Ex: Ngôh kahmyhâh sinji chêngdôu gungyahn laak. I finally hired a servant yesterday.

6) Focus on the time or place the action happened: Tw-V-ge; Pw-V-ge
   Ex: 1. Keuih kahmyhâh heui ge. He went yesterday.
       2. Mîlî yêh hîi bindouh mâmîn ga? Where was this bought?
Basically the verb forms are set by the grammar of the language, and the speaker has only limited flexibility within grammatical confines. For example, time spent doing something in the past is expressed as \( v \text{jó} + \text{time-span phrase} \), or \( v \text{-gwo} + \text{time-span phrase} \). The \( \text{jó} \) or \( \text{gwo} \) is required in such cases by the grammar. If the speaker uses the \( v \text{-time-span} \) pattern, he must use either \( \text{jó} \) or \( \text{gwo} \), whichever is appropriate.

Ex: Ngôh (duhkjó) leuhng nûhn (duhkgtwo) daaithhokk. I studied at college for two years.

Money transactions accomplished are also expressed in \( v \text{g} \) form, with a \( \text{jó} \) or \( \text{gwo} \) suffix to the \( v \), and a \( n\text{u} \) money expression as \( \text{o} \).

Ex: Nî ga chê yiu maain maahn áfh sành, sâmî maaihjó maahn yîh mën. This car (we) wanted to sell for $15,000, but finally closed the deal (sell-accomplish) for $12,000.

(See Drill 12)

b. Negative forms for talking about the past: móuh \( v \) and mën \( v \).

1) móuh \( v \)

Móuh Verb (ex. móuh máaih, móuh sîhkh, móuh heui) concerns a certain time in the past and asserts that the action expressed by the verb phrase did not take place at that time.

Ex: Ngôh gëmyaht móuh sîhkh jouchâan. I didn't eat breakfast today. (said in the afternoon)

2) mën \( v \)

Mënh Verb (ex. mënh máaih, mënh sîhkh, mënh heui) concerns an action which the speaker expects/expected to happen, but which hasn't/hadn't happened at the moment of speaking/moment spoken about, but which is/was still planned.

Ex: 1. Ngôh mën sîhkh jouchâan. I haven't eaten breakfast. (implies that you're planning to)

2. Ngôh góján mën bâtyîhk. At that time I hadn't graduated. (implies that you later did graduate)

c. Choice–question forms for talking about the past: yâuh móuh \( v \)?, and

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\textit{V-jó}} \\
\text{\textit{V-gwo}} \\
\text{\textit{V-hê}} \\
\text{Etc.}
\end{align*}
\]

mënh?
1) yáuh móuh V?

This form concerns time prior to the time of speaking, and inquires whether an action expressed by the verb phrase took place. The speaker has no preconception of whether the action did or did not occur.

Ex: 1. Néih yáuh móuh máaih san ché a? Have you bought a new car? (I don't know that you plan to.)

2. Kéuih yáuh móuh dáaih- hok bátíihp ga? Did he graduate from college? (Is he a college graduate? -- I don't have any knowledge of his educational attainments).

3. Néih yáuh móuh táí yísiang a? Have you seen a doctor?

2) V-jó/gwo/hóu, etc. meih?

In using the meih form the speaker indicates that he knows the action of the verb has happened or will happen at some time. The question is not whether the action occurred, but whether it has/had occurred at the time he is talking/talking about.

Ex: 1. Néih máaihjó ga sán ché meih? Have you bought (or did you buy) a/the new car yet? (I know you plan to.)

2. Kéuih gójahnsíh bátjó yíihp meih a? Had he graduated at that time?

3. Néih táigwo yísiang meih a? Have you seen a doctor (yet)?

2. meih 'not (yet)’ in sentences of future reference.

-meih occasionally occurs in negative and question sentences referring to future events. The sentence patterns in such cases are:

Neg: future-TW meih V = will not have V-ed by future TW time

Q: future-TW V meih? = will have V-ed or not by future TW time?

Example sentences:

Neg: Tingyáht meih fànnláih. He won't have come back by tomorrow. [Tomorrow not yet return]

Q: Tingyáht fànnláih meih a? Will he have come back by tomorrow? (You expected him back yesterday and have just been told that he is still not back.)
These are not garden variety futures—(the garden variety futures being $m$V and $V$mV?). The negative expresses that something which you would normally expect to happen by a certain time will not have happened by then. The question indicates that you expected something to have happened by the time indicated by the timeword, but you now have reason to doubt that it will have happened by then.

(See Drill 5)

3. $\text{sinji}$ (variant: ji) 'finally;' 'only then;' '(not until) then'
   ($\text{sin}$ji implies 'later than one would expect or desire.' It functions as an adverb in a single clause sentence, and as a conjunction in a double clause sentence.
   
   Ex: 1. $\text{Këuìh tìngyant (sin)ji}$ jau.
   
   Tomorrow he finally leaves.
   
   Not until tomorrow does he leave.
   
   2. $\text{Bàng ngôháiin chèngdîu gûngyahn jìnhau, (sin)ji bun.}$
   
   We'll wait till after we get servants hired, only then will we move.
   
   (See BC and Drills 4, 5, 6)

4. a = suffix to members of series in parallel construction

Example:

1. $\text{Ngôh mâaìnhó dî bûi a, dîp a, chêung lím a.}$
   I bought some cups, and plates, and curtains.

2. $\text{Ngôh kânmyahn sînhô hêh a, tâihô shû a, fânhô gâau a.}$
   Yesterday I ate, and read, and slept.

(See BC)

5. S $\{\text{bài bìndouh} \} V \text{ge/ga} = S \text{is/was} \{\text{where} \} V$-ed.

   $\{\text{tuñg bìngo} \} \{\text{with whom} \}$
   
   $\{\text{gésì} \} \{\text{when} \}$

   a. The central point of a sentence is sometimes not the 'who does what' of it, but the 'where, when, from or with whom' of it. For example, compare the following two English sentences:

   1. I bought plates at Wing On, not at Sincere.
   2. I bought plates at Wing On, not glasses.
When the point of the sentence is where, when, from whom, with whom something is done, the Cantonese preference is to split the basic VO phrase and reconstruct the sentence, putting the O of the VO into subject position, making the when/where part central and the verb last, followed by the sentence suffix ga/ga 'that's the way it is.'

Example:

1. węih ga ʂe (hah) intégrró ʃeui maah ga?  (Where was your car bought?)
2. węih ga ʂe (hah) gési ʃeui maah ga?  (When was your car bought?)
3. węih ga ʂe (hah) tʊngh bing maah ga?  (From whom was your car bought?)
4. węih ga ʂe tʊngh bing ʃeui maah ga?  (For (on behalf of) whom was your car bought?)

(See BC and Drill 16)

b. For convenience in referring to this pattern we will call it the hai bındouh V ge pattern, though as you see hai bındouh is not the only phrase that fills the position.

c. It usually turns out that this pattern translates into English in a past tense form, because ordinarily what is talked about using this pattern are things that have already happened. The form is, however, not a past reference form, and can be used for non-past situations.

Ex: Nɪ jʊŋ bɛjɔu hai wɛi hoŋ maah ga.  This kind of beer is sold at Wellcome Company.

(Compare with:)

Nɪ dɪ bɛjɔu hai wɛi hoŋ maah ga.  This beer was bought at Wellcome Company.  (See Drill 14)

d. When one wishes to highlight the 'what' part, rather than the 'where/when/from whom' part, the sentence is phrased in standard SVO form instead of the hai bındouh V ge form.

Ex: Ngõh hai wïhâng ɔn ʂʊŋgɛi maaŋjɔ dɪ hui.  I bought some glasses at Wing On Company.

(Compare with:)

Nɪ dɪ bʊi hai wïhâng ɔn ʂʊŋgɛi maaŋ ge.  These glasses were bought at Wing On Company.
Lesson 19  Cantonese Basic Course

6. -hou = V.suf. indicating that the action expressed by the performance verb preceding is brought to a satisfactory conclusion.

Ex: jing = to work on, to make, to fix
jinghou = to fix up, to fix so that it's OK
 Gong = speak
 Gonghou = to talk it over and come to an agreement
 Gwa = to hang
 Gwahou = to hang up
III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. ngûkjûu, ngûkjûu
   b. gëi(dō) chin ngûkjûu a?
   c. bëi gëi(dō) chin ngûkjûu a?
   d. yiu bëi gëi(dō) chin ûkjûu a?
   e. yât go yuht yiu bëi gëi(dō) chin ûkjûu a?
   f. Nëih yât go yuht yiu bëi gëi(dō) chin ûkjûu a?

   1. a. house rent
   b. how much rent?
   c. how much rent (do you) pay? [give]
   d. have to pay how much rent?
   e. have to pay how much rent per month?
   f. How much rent do you pay a month?

+ 2. a. yângûng, yângûng
   b. gëidô chin yângûng a?
   c. bëi gëidô chin yângûng a?
   d. yiu bëi gëidô chin yângûng a?
   e. yât go yuht yiu bëi gëidô chin yângûng a?
   f. Nëih yât go yuht yiu bëi gëidô chin yângûng a?
   g. Nëih yât go yuht yiu bëi gëidô chin yângûng nêih gûngyâhn a?

+ 2. a. wages (of servants, day laborers)
   b. how much wages?
   c. how much wages (do you) pay?
   d. How much wages do you have to pay?
   e. How much wages (do you) have to pay per month?
   f. How much wages do you have to pay per month?
   g. How much wages do you have to pay your serv- vant per month? or What do you pay your servant per month?

+ 3. a. sâmôti

+ b. mahn lêhng mân sâmôti
   (mahn = ten thousand)
   c. yâm hôh mahn lêhng mân sâmôti

   + 3. a. salary (of white collar workers)
   b. approximately ten thou-
   sand and some dollars salary
   c. gets approximately $10,000 and some salary

   d. yât nihn yâm hôh mahn lêhng mân sâmôti
   e. Këuih yât nihn yâm hôh mahn lêhng mân sâmôti

   d. gets approximately $10,000 and some salary a year
   e. He gets a salary of approximately $10,000 and some per year.
4. a. jōu ge, jōu ge
   b. haih jōu ge
   c. gāan ngük haih jōu ge
   d. Gō gāan ngük haih jōu ge
   e. Gō gāan ngük haih īh haih jōu ge?
   f. Nēih jyuh gō gāan ngük haih īh haih jōu ge?
   g. Nēih chânhīk jyuh gō gāan ngük haih īh haih jōu ge?

+ 5. a. jyū
   b. jyū faahn
   c. sīk jyū faahn
   d. sīk īh sīk jyū faahn a?
   e. go gūngyāhn sīk īh sīk jyū faahn a?
   f. Gō go gūngyāhn sīk īh sīk jyū faahn a?
   g. Nēih gō go gūngyāhn sīk īh sīk jyū faahn a?

6. a. jíng
   b. jíng chāahn
   c. īh sīk jíng chāahn
   d. īh sīk jíng jôuchāahn

4. a. rented one, rented
   b. is a rented one
   c. The house is rented, is a rented one
   d. That house is a rented one
   e. Is that house a rented one?
   f. Is the house you are living in a rented one?
   g. Is the house your relative lives in a rented one?

5. a. cook
   b. cook rice, i.e., cook (Chinese style) food
   c. knows how to cook (Chinese) food
   d. know how to cook Chinese food?
   e. Does the servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
   f. Does that servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?
   g. Does your servant know how to cook (Chinese) food?

6. a. fix
   b. make, cook (Western) meals
   c. can't cook Western style food
   d. doesn't know how to cook breakfast
2. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: K`uih bátjó yihp meih a? /gauhnín/  
S: Bátjó laak. Gauhnín bát ge.  
T: Has she graduated yet?  
S: Last year.

2. T: K`uih bátjó yihp meih a? /chœut-nín/  
S: Meih. Chœutnín sinji båtyihp.  
S: Not yet. She graduates until next year.

1. K`uih fàanjó láih meih a? /seuhnggo láihbaai/  
2. Néih sínsàang fàanjó heui Meihgwok meih a? /hahgo yuht/  
3. Néih go nòui bátjó yihp meih a? /chœut nín sàam yuht/  
4. Néih go jái bátjó yihp meih a? /gauhnín luhk yuht/  
5. Chànn Siujó dájó dihnwá bêi néih meih a? /kàhmmyaht/  
6. Néih tájó houij meih a? /dàngjan/  
7. Yihgá chàt dim laak. Wöhng Sàang sìhkjó màahmnàahnh meih a? /baat dim/ (evening meal)  
8. Yihgá båat dim laak. Héh Taai hêijó sán meih a? /chát dim/ (néi sán = get up (from sleeping)  
3. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih seuhnggo
láihaai mouh
heui. /hahgo
láihaai/

S: Kéuih seuhnggo
láihaai mouh
heui, hahgo láih-
baai sinji heui.

T: He didn't go last week.
/next week/

S: He didn't go last week, (he)
will go [not until] next
week.

2. T: Kéuih nígo yuht
meih heui.
/hahgo yuht/

S: Kéuih nígo yuht
meih heui, hahgo
yuht sinji heui.

T: He hasn't gone this month.
/next month/

S: He hasn't gone this month,
(he) will go [not until]
next month.

3. T: Kéuih seuhnggo
yuht móuh sih-
gaan heui.
/hahgo yuht/

S: Kéuih seuhnggo
yuht móuh sih-
gaan heui, hahgo
yuht sinji heui.

T: He didn't have time to go
last month. /next month/

S: He didn't have time to go
last month, (he'll) go [not
until] next month.

1. Ngóh taaitáai yāt houh meih
heui. /sāam houh/

2. Ngóh go jāi gānmín meih bāi-
yihr. /chéutnín/

3. Ngóh sīnsàng kāhmyaht móuh
fāangung. /gāmyaht/

4. Ngóh di sailōugō seuhng go
láihaai móuh heui yāuhseui.
/hígo láihbaai/

5. Wōhng Sāang nígo yuht móuh
sihgaan būn úk /hahgo yuht/

6. Hōh Tāai nígo láihbaaiyait móuh
sihgaan jouh sām. /hahgo
láihaaiyait/
4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih hêijô sân meih a? /shake; gâu dimjûng/ 
S: Meih. Kéuih dâ-sîn gâu dimjûng ji hêîmân. 
T: Has he gotten up yet? /shake; 9 o'clock/ 
S: Not yet. He plans to get up at 9 o'clock. [only then] 

2. T: Kéuih fânjôgûng meih a? nod; baat dimjûng/ 
T: Has he gone to work yet? /nod; 8 o'clock/ 
S: Yes, he has. He went back at 8. [that soon]

1. Kéuih sihkô ngaanjau meih a? /nod/ yât dimjûng/ 
2. Nêih sînsûng fânjôlâîh meih a? /shake/ luhk dim gêî/ 
3. Nêih go jâi heuijô dâ bô meih a? /nod/ gâu dimjûng/ 
4. Nêih taâitâmi heuijô yâm châh meih a? /shake/ gâu dim bun/ 
5. Wông Sâang hêijô sân meih a? /nod/ baat dim/ 

Comment: The action expressed in a clause introduced by (sin) is felt to be later than one might expect.

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih tingyaht fânan ânhfânânih a? 
S: Kéuih tingyaht fânan-lâîh meih a? 
T: Will he be back tomorrow?
S: Will he be back by tomorrow?

1. Kéuih tingyaht jâu ânhjâu a? 
2. Kéuih sînsûung tingyaht fânân ânhfâangûng a? 
3. Nêih tingyaht heui ânhheui lô chîn a? 
1. Kéuih tingyaht jâu meih a? 
2. Kéuih sînsûung tingyaht fânânûng meih a? 
3. Nêih tingyaht heui lô chîn meih a?
6. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih tingyaht fàanlàiíh meih a? /nod/
   S: Fàan laak.

2. T: Kéuih tingyaht fàanlàiíh meih a? /shake/ hahgo láihbaai/
   S: Mey a, hahgo láihbaai sinji fàan.

   T: Will he be back by tomorrow?
   /nod/
   S: Yes, he will have returned by then.

   T: Will he be back by tomorrow?
   /shake/ next week/
   S: It'll be next week before he gets back. or
   No, he's not coming back until next week.

1. Kéuih tingyaht heui meih a? /nod/
2. Kéuih taaitáai tingyaht jáu meih a? /nod/
3. Kéuih sínksáang tingyaht láih meih a? /shake/ hahgo láih-
   baai/
4. Néih tingyaht fàangúng meih a? /shake/ hahgo láihbaaiyáit/
5. Néih go jái tingyaht heui tái yísang meih a? /nod/
7. Hòn Táai tingyaht máaih dip meih a? /nod/

   1. Heui laak.
   2. Jáu laak.
   3. Meih a, hahgo láihbaai sinji láih.
   4. Meih a, hahgo láihbaaiyáit sinji fàan.
   5. Heui laak.
   7. Máiaih laak.
7. Alteration Drill: Transform the sentences from géisih Verb to Verb-jó meih.

Ex: Këuih géisih làih a?
S: Këuih làihjó meih a?

1. Këuih géisih chëutgái a?

2. Nëih sënsång géisih heui Méihgwok a?

3. Wöng Téai géisih bún ūk a?

4. Nëih géidämjúng sihk ngaanjau a?

5. Nëih géidämjúng sihk faan a?

6. Nëih taatáai géisih faan-làih a?

7. Këuih géisí máaih sân chë a?

8. Këuih géisí jáu a?

9. Këuih géisí heui Yahtbùn,a?

10. Këuih géisí heui dá bō a?

11. Këuih géisí fàangung a?

12. Këuih géisí hëisàn a?

13. Këuih géisí gitfan a?

T: When is he coming?
S: Has he come yet?

1. Këuih chëutjó gëai meih a?

2. Nëih sënsåang heuijó Méihgwok meih a?

3. Wöng Téai bùnjó ūk meih a?

4. Nëih sihkjó ngaanjau meih a?

5. Nëih sihkjó faan meih a?

6. Nëih taatáai faanjolàih meih a?

7. Këuih máaihjó sân chë meih a?

8. Këuih jáuojó meih a?

9. Këuih heuijó Yahtbùn meih a?

10. Këuih heuijó dá bō meih a?

11. Këuih faanjó gùng meih a?

12. Këuih héijó sân meih a?

13. Këuih gitjó fan meih a?
LESSON 19  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih búnjó ūk meih a? /tîngyaht/
S: Meih. Waahkjé tîng-yaht lā.

T: Has he moved house yet?
S: Not yet -- maybe tomorrow.

1. Kéuih sîhkjó faahn meih a? /yat dimjûng/
2. Kéuih hêijó sân meih a? /gâu dim bun/
3. Néih sînsâang faanjó Méihgwok meih a? / habgo yuht/
4. Néih taaítâai wandóu gûngyânh meih a? / habgo lâihbaai/
5. Wéng Tâai lâihjó Hâunngóng meih a? / habgo yuht yat houn/
6. Néih go jâí máihihjó chê meih a? /ulgo lâihbaai/

1. Meih. Waahkjé yât dimjûng lā.


Ex: T: Têngginwah kêuih sêung máihih gâ sân chê.
S: Têngginwah kêuih máihihjó gâ sân chê laak.

T: I hear he plans to buy a new car.
S: I hear he bought a new car.

1. Têngginwah kêuih sêung bûn nguk.
2. Têngginwah néih sînsâang sêung fàan Mèihgwok.
3. Têngginwah néih taaítâai sêung máihih tou sân gâsi.
4. Têngginwah Lèih Sâang sêung heui Mèihgwok.
5. Têngginwah Jêung Tâai sêung máihih gân úk.
6. Têngginwah néih go jâí sêung máihih ga chê.

1. Têngginwah kêuih búnjó nguk laak.
2. Têngginwah néih sînsâang faanjó Mèihgwok laak.
3. Têngginwah néih taaítâai máihihjó tou sân gâsi laak.
5. Têngginwah Jêung Tâai máihihjó gân úk laak.
6. Têngginwah néih go jâí máihihjó ga chê laak.
7. Têngginwah Châhn Siuże sêung wan ngûk.
   7. Têngginwah Châhn Siuże wândû ngûk laak.
      I hear Miss Chan found a house.

8. Têngginwah Hôh Tâai sêung chêng
gûngyân. /chêngdû/
   8. Têngginwah Hôh Tâai chêng-
dûngûngyân laak.
      I hear Mrs. Ho engaged a
      servant.

10. Expansion Drill: Expand the sentences with the given time expressions.

   Ex: T: Hôh Sâang yîhêng
dâjô dîhnwû bêî/ngôh laak.
      /kâmmyaht/
   S: Hôh Sâang kâmmyaht
      yîhêng dâjô dîhn-
wû bêî/ngôh laak.

   T: Mr. Ho already called me.
      /yesterday/
   S: Mr. Ho already called me
      yesterday.

1. Kêuîh yîhêng hêijô sân laak.
   /chêt dîm bun/
   Hê's already gotten up.
   /7:30/

2. Ngôh sînsâang yîhêng mâïhjô
ga sân chê laak. /seuhnggo
   yuht/

3. Châhn Tâai yîhêng chêngdû
   gûngyân laak. /seuhnggo
   lâihbaaisam/

4. Wôhng Siuże yîhêng bûnjô ūk
   laak. /seuhnggo yuht sei
   houh/

5. Ngôh taaitai yîhêng heuijô
   yâm châh laak. /gâu dîm bun/

6. Ngôh go jài yîhêng heuijô
   dâ bô laak. /baat dimjûng/

   1. Kêuîh chêt dîm bun yîhêng
      hêijô sân laak.
      Hê's already gotten up
      by half past seven.

   2. Ngôh sînsâang seuhnggo
      yuht yîhêng mâïhjô ga
      sân chê laak.

   3. Châhn Tâai seuhnggo lâih-
      baaisam yîhêng chêngdû
      gûngyân laak.

   4. Wôhng Siuège seuhnggo yuht
      sei houh yîhêng bûnjô
      ūk laak.

   5. Ngôh taaitai gâu dîm bun
      yîhêng heuijô yâm châh
      laak.

   6. Ngôh go jài baat dimjûng
      yîhêng heuijô dâ bô
      laak.
11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kéuih heuijó meih a? /seuhnggo yuht/
S: Heuijó laak. Kéuih seuhnggo yuht heui ge.

1. Kéuih làihjó meih a? /seuhnggo làihbaai/
2. Néih sînsâng fâanjó Méihgwok meih a? /nîgo yuht/
3. Wông Sàang màaihjó chê meih a? /seuhnggo làihbaaisâam/
4. Néih taitâai chêngjó gûngyahn meih a? /kâhmyaht/
5. Châhn Sîujé sinkjó ngaanjau meih a? /dim bun jüng/

S: Yes - He went last month.

1. Làihjó laak. Kéuih seuhnggo làihbaai làih ge.
2. Fâanjó laak. Kéuih nîgo yuht fàan ge.
5. Sinkjó laak. Kéuih dim bun jüng sink ge.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /chê/maahn yih mân/
S: Nî ga chê màaihjó maahn yih mân.

T: /car/12 thousand dollars/
S: This car was bought for $12,000.

1. /ûk/$56,000/
2. /faijî/$8/
3. /gâng/$650/
4. /dáfôgî/$4650/
5. /chê/$35,000/
6. /jüng tói/$16,000/ (table)
7. /gâsi/$10,000/

S: This car (1) bought (it) for $12,000.

1. Nî gâan ûk màaihjó ñgh maahn luhk mân.
2. Nî deui faijî màaihjó baat mân.
3. Nî jek gâng màaihjó luhk go bun.
5. Nî ga chê màaihjó sâam maahn ñgh mân.
7. Nî tou gâsi màaihjó yût maahn mân.
13. Alteration Drill

+ Ex: 1. T: Yat man Meihgam hoyih wuhn luhk man gongji gamseuhngha.
   (American money)
   (Hong Kong money)
   S: Yat man Meihgam jikhaih luhk man gongji gamseuhngha.
   S: One dollar U.S. can be exchanged for about six dollars Hong Kong.

   2. T: Loung man Meihgam hoyih wuhn gei chin gongji a?
   T: How much in Hong Kong money can you get for two dollars U. S.?
   S: Loung man Meihgam.
   S: Two dollars U. S. is how much jikhaih gei chin gongji a?

+ 1. Yat Yingbohng hoyih wuhn sahp
   (English pound (sterling))
   1. Yat Yingbohng jikhaih sahp
   man Gongji.

   2. Sahpyih man gongji hoyih wuhn
   gei chin Meihgam a?
   2. Sahpyih man Gongji jikhaih
   gei chin Meihgam a?

   3. Ngh Yingbohng hoyih wuhn
   gei chin Gongji a?
   3. Ngh Yingbohng jikhaih gei
   chin Gongji a?

   4. Yat Yingbohng hoyih wuhn
   gei chin Meihgam a?
   4. Yat Yingbohng jikhaih gei
   chin Meihgam a?

   5. Yat Yingbohng hoyih wuhn leu
   ng go gei ngahnchihn Meihgam
   gamseuhngha.
   5. Yat Yingbohng jikhaih leu
   ng go gei ngahnchihn Meihgam
   gamseuhngha.

   6. Ngh man Meihgam hoyih wuhn saam
   sahp man gongji gamseuhngha.
   6. Ngh man Meihgam jikhaih saam
   sahp man gongji gamseuhngha.

   7. Yat maahn man gongji hoyih
   wuhn gei chin Yingbohng a?
   7. Yat maahn man gongji jik
   haih gei chin Yingbohng a?

   8. Sahp maahn man Meihgam hoyih
   wuhn luhsaahp maahn gongji.
   8. Sahp maahn man Meihgam
   jikhaih luhsaahp maahn gongji.

   9. Yat maahn Yingbohng hoyih wuhn
   sahplohu克 maahn gongji.
   9. Yat maahn Yingbohng jik
   haih sahplohu克 maahn gong
   ji.

   10. Yat baak maahn gongji hoyih
   wuhn gei chin Yingbohng a?
   10. Yat baak maahn gongji jik
   haih gei chiz Yingbohng a?
Comment: Note that ¥英格朗 'English pound (sterling)' (also pronounced ¥英朗) has the grammatical status of a Measure, whereas 美鈔 'American money', and 廣濟, 'Hong Kong money' have the status of Nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Measure</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>坡</td>
<td>¥英格朗</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>坡</td>
<td>美鈔</td>
<td>US$300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>坡</td>
<td>广济</td>
<td>HK$300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: 你去咁咁嘅好 bindou maaih ga? /Yahtbun/

S: 你去咁咁嘅好 Yahtbun maaih ga.

T: Where did you buy this lighter? /Japan/

S: I bought this lighter in Japan.

1. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /saamgo laihsaaiyat/ 1. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga.

2. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

S: 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga.

3. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

4. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

5. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

6. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

7. 你去咁咁嘟 gei saa maaih ga? /Laihsaaiyat/

Comment: The sentences above are not necessarily past in reference. For example #5 might be: This kind of shoe is made in what country? and #3: This shirt is one you're giving to whom?
15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kēuih wán ūk. /hou noih/
S: Kēuih wán ūk, wānjo hōu noih.
S: He's been looking (or looked) for a house for a long time.

T: He is looking for (or looked for) a house. /very long (time)/

1. Kēuih wán gūngyāhn. /hou noih/
2. Kēuih sihk aan. /móuhgéinoih/
3. Kēuih būn ūk. /gēi go júngtāuh/
4. Kēuih fān Gwōngjāu. /sei go yuht/
5. Kēuih duhk Yīngmāhn. /baat nhīnh/
6. Kēuih heui Tōihwān. /sāam go yuht/
7. Kēuih jōu sāam. /yāt go láihbaai/
8. Kēuih jīng chē. /liuhng yaht/
9. Kēuih jyū faahn. /bun go júngtāuh/
+ 10. Kēuih sē jīh. /yihsahp tān-jūng/
   (write [write-words])

1. Kēuih wán gūngyāhn, wānjo hōu noih.
2. Kēuih sihk aan, sihkjō móuhgéinoih.
   He didn't take long to eat lunch.
   He took several hours to move.
5. Kēuih duhk Yīngmāhn, duhkjō baat nhīnh.
7. Kēuih jōu sāam, jouhjō yāt go láihbaai.

16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Nēih ga chē tūng bīngō jōu ga?
   - Your car is/ was rented from whom?
   - i.e. Who'd you rent your car from?
2. /tou gāsī/

1. Nēih ga chē tūng bīngō jōu ga?
2. Nēih tou gāsī tūng bīngō jōu ga?
Lesson 19  Cantonese Basic Course

3. /níái bǐndouh/  3. Néih tou gási hái bǐndouh jòu ga?
4. /máaih/  4. Néih tou gási hái bǐndouh māaih ga?
+ 5. /tou būi-diip/  5. Néih tou būidip hái bǐndouh māaih ga?
(tea set; i.e., a set of cups and saucers)  Where did you buy your tea set?
+ 6. /tou wūn-diip/  6. Néih tou wūn-diip hái bǐndouh māaih ga?
(a set of dishes—bowls and plates)  Where did you buy your set of china?
7. /jèung tōi/  7. Néih jèung tōi hái bǐndouh māaih ga?
8. /jīng/  8. Néih jèung tōi hái bǐndouh jīng ga?
+ 9. /jèung yī/  9. Néih jèung yī hái bǐndouh jīng ga?  Where was your chair made?

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. A sēi, ngōn ḍu ngāhngéng wān māndōu gé.  1. A sēi, ngōn ḍu ngāhngéng wān māndōu gé.
   A Sēi! I can’t find my glasses!
2. /jēk dip/  2. A sēi, ngōn jēk dip wān māndōu gé!
3. /tiūn dāi-fu/  3. A sēi, ngōn tiūn dāi-fu wān māndōu gé!
4. /go ngāhngéng-dōi/  4. A sēi, ngōn go ngāhngéng-dōi wān māndōu gé!
5. /tiūn kwāhn/  5. A sēi, ngōn tiūn kwāhn wān māndōu gé!
6. /go sāu-dōi/  6. A sēi, ngōn go sāu-dōi wān māndōu gé!
7. /jēk gāng/  7. A sēi, ngōn jēk gāng wān māndōu gé!

Comment: The rising intonation of final gé connotes impatience.
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) āhhēui-dāk = can't go
   a) -dāk = 'can', 'able to', verb suffix
2) yāt go ngānhchīn = one dollar ($1.00) (See L-21, Ex. 8)
3) sihk ngaanjau = eat lunch
4) sēuhng bāan = start work
5) daaihkoi = probably
6) beisyū = secretary
7) hōu chīn = it seems
8) Hōu wah = Equivalent to 'You're welcome', 'Not at all',
   Response to being thanked for a service.
9) ā ma? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is)
10) gungfo = lessons, homework
11) gōndākchīt = can make it in time; there will be time to
     do it
12) fēi = ticket
13) -yūhn = finish
    a) ehkyūhn = finish eating
    b) duhkyūhn = finish studying
14) gōnāhchīt = can't make it in time
15) ngāamngāam = just
16) lauhdāi = leave behind
17) hōnāhng = probably
18) fōng = room
19) ā ma = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also 16-CL-1)
20) Lōuh Wōng = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of
    address to a man by good friends. (See 17-CL-3)
21) Nōi faahn = 'Dinner is ready'
22) Hain gām sīn la = 'That's all for now'
23) mēyēh dōu môuh = doesn't have anything
24) chābārdō = chāhndō
25) Maahn hāahng = 'Walk slowly' -- a polite goodbye form, said
    to person leaving by person remaining.

89
V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Has your younger sister graduated yet?
2. (on the phone:) Has Mr. Wong gone to work yet?
3. Have you moved yet?
4. How much rent do you pay a month?
5. How much is a US dollar in Hong Kong money?
6. How much is an English pound?
7. Has Mr. Ma come yet?
8. Have you hired a servant yet?
9. (on the phone:) Is Mr. Chan at home?
10. Where did you buy that table?
11. Your furniture is very nice--did you buy it in Hong Kong?
12. Mrs. Lau didn't eat breakfast until 10:15.
13. Can your servant cook Chinese food?
14. Did someone come to fix the phone?
15. Have you cooked dinner yet?
16. I hear you've recently moved--did you buy any new furniture?

B. And he replies:

1. Not yet--she doesn't graduate until next year.
2. Not yet, he doesn't go until 8:30.
3. Yes, we moved last week.
4. We pay HK$2,000.
5. A US dollar is about HK$6.00.
6. I'm not sure (not clear)--maybe it's around HK$14.40.
7. Not yet--when he arrives, I'll tell him to go see (look for) you.
8. Yes, we hired one last week.
9. No, he already went out--at 8:00 o'clock--to have tea.
10. It was bought in Japan.
11. Yes, it was bought here, at a department store on the Kowloon side.
12. What time did she get up?
13. She can cook both Chinese food and Western food.
14. Yes, it's already been fixed.
15. I haven't started to make it yet.
16. Yes, we bought a table and several chairs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 19</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ŋam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. bouĵi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. bŭi-dip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. chéng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. chénggōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. chénggungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. chomgi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. dip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ...gám</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. gāsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. gôngji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. háisăn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. -hóu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. ji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. jing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. jing chān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. jing hē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. jinghōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. v-jo melh a?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. jōu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. jōuchān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. jyu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. jyu faahn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. maahn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. maahmfaahn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. méihgām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. ngām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Ngām laak!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. ngūkjo, ngūkjo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. sān lāih ge yāhn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. sānsēui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. sē jih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family:)

Mâh Sînsââng

gâyâhn
Jâng Sâang ge gâyâhn
Yâuh yâhn gông ngôh têng
Yâuh yâhn gông ngôh têng Jâng
Sâang ge gâyâhn kâhmyaht
fâmheui Méihgwok.

Lêih Siuô

Hâih a.

Mâh Sînsââng

tûâng person yàtchâih verb

verb together with person
tûâng Jâng Sâang yàtchâih
heui

dîmgâaï?
Kûuhiêih dîmgâaï ântûâng Jâng
Sâang yàtchâih heui nê?

Lêih Siuô

-dâk

âmheuidâk
Jâng Sâang nî géi yaht dôu
âmheuidâk a.

Mâh Sînsââng

Dîmgâaï âmheuidâk a?

Lêih Siuô

Kûuhi nîpâai dôu hôu ândâkââhn.
syûhn
daap

daap syûhn

family
Mr. Cheung's family
somebody told me.
Somebody told me Mr. Cheung's family went back to America yesterday.

That's right.

verb together with person

heui

why?

Why didn't they go with Mr. Cheung?

able to, can. Verb suffix indicating physical ability
can't go

Mr. Cheung was unable to go these few days.

Why couldn't he go?

He's been awfully busy recently.

ship
catch, take (a train, plane, etc.)
take a ship
gónânhchit

gónânhchit daap syûnh

Yûhgwô dâng kéuih dâkhânhn gójân,
jauh gónânhchit daap syûnh ge laak.

fêigêi
daap fêigêi
pa
hôu pa daap fêigêi
yânwaih ...,
sôyîh ...
yânwaih ..., sôyîh ...
yânwaih Jëung Tàai hou pa daap fêigêi gé, sôyîh ...

yînhchê
Yînhchê yânwaih Jëung Tàai yauh hou
pa daap fêigêi gé, sôyîh kéuih
tûhng dî sailâugô daap syûnh heui
sin.
Jëung Sàang hahgo láihbasisâam
ji daap fêigêi heui.

Mâh Sînsâang

yûhnloîh
O, yûhnloîh haîh gâm gé.
yiu (+ time expression)
Daap fêigêi yiu géi noi a?

Léih Siujê

Yât yah dôdî jê.
sahpgêi

Daap syûnh jauh yiu sahpgêi yah
ge la.
Máh Sĩnsâang
múih
evory, each
múih go láihbaai
every week, each week
bān
trip (voyage Measure)
Múih go láihbaai yáuh géidō bān
How many flights each week are
feigēi heiui Méihgwok a?
there going to America?
Léih Siujé
sàamsei
three or four
Yāt yaht yáuh sàamsei bān lá.
There are three or four
hōi
flights a day.
Máh Sĩnsâang
gó bāan géisī hōi a?
start, leave, take off,
(on voyage)
what time does the flight
Jèung Sàang daap gó bāan géisī
leave?
hōi a?
The flight Mr. Cheung is
taking—when does it leave?
Léih Siujé
Ngōh âhjī ga—yiū mahnhâh kéuih
I don't know—you'll have to
ji ji laak.
ask him to find out. [ask him
and only then you'll know.]

B. Recapitulation:
(Mr. Ma asks Miss Lee about her
boss, Mr. Cheung, and his family;)
Máh Sĩnsâang
Yáuh yâhn gōng ngōh têng Jèung
Somebody told me Mr. Cheung's
Sàang ge gâyâhn kâhmyaht fàan—
family went back to America
heuui Méihgwok.
yesterday.
Léih Siujé
Haïh a.
That's right.
Máh Sĩnsâang
Kèuiheih dîngāai èhtûhng Jèung
Why didn't they go with Mr.
Sàang yâtchâih heuui nē?
Cheung?
Léih Siujé
Jèung Sàang nǐ gêi yaht dōu
Mr. Cheung couldn't leave
àmheuidâk a.
these few days.
95
Māh Sĩnsāang
Dīnggāai ēhheuidāk a?

Lēih Sīujē
Kēuih nīpāai dōu hōu ēhdkhāahń.
Yūngwǒ dīng kēuih dākhāahń gōjān,
jauh gōmēhchit daap suūhn ge
laak.
Yīhchē, yānwāih Jēung Tāai yauh
hōu pa daap fēigēi gē, sōyīh
kēuih tūhng sailgūgō daap
suūhn heui san.
Jēung Sāang hahgo láihbaaisāam
ji daap fēigēi heui.

Māh Sĩnsāang
O, yūnhloīh haih gām ge.
Daap fēigēi yiu géi nūi a?

Lēih Sīujē
Yāt yah dōdī jē.
Daap suūhn yauh yiu sahpgei
yah ge la.

Māh Sĩnsāang
Mūih go láihbaai yauh gēidō
bāan fēigēi heui Mōihgwok a?

Lēih Sīujē
Yāt yah yāuh sāamei būan lá.

Māh Sĩnsāang
Jēung Sāang daap gō būan géi
hōi a?

Lēih Sīujē
Ngōh āhji ga--Yiu mānkhān kēuih
ji ji laak.

Why couldn't he leave?
He's been awfully busy recently.
If they waited until he was
free, then there wouldn't be
time to take a ship.
Furthermore, since Mrs. Cheung
also is afraid of taking
planes, she left first with
the children by ship.
Mr. Cheung will go by plane
next Wednesday.

Oh, so that's the reason.
How long does it take by plane?

Only a little over one day.
If you take a ship, then it
takes more than ten days.

How many flights each week are
there going to America?

There are three or four flights
a day.

The flight Mr. Cheung is taking--
when does it leave?

I don't know--you'll have to ask
him to find out.
II. NOTES

1. -dāk as verb suffix, meaning 'able to,' 'can.'

Verb-dāk forms a unit meaning 'physically able to V,' 'can V.'

Examples, showing question, negative, and affirmative forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>VmːV-dāk?</td>
<td>Ga čē gam gauh--hāahngh mhhaahngdāk āʔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>ːmːV-dāk</td>
<td>Ga čē.gam gauh--mhhaahngdāk tīm!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>V- dāk</td>
<td>Ga čē hāahnghdāk ga-neih meih hoī seoīh jā!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By extension (Vmː) V-dāk can be used when the (in)ability is not strictly physical, as in a sentence from the BC of this lesson:

Ex: Jëng Saṅg nī ĝē yahg dōu mhheu sidewalk ā. these few days.

(See BC)

2. ɭə waived... sōyiː... 'because..., so...'; 'since..., therefore...'

ɭə waived, sōyiː form a set of paired conjunctions linking the two clauses of a 'because' sentence. Use of both ɭə waived and sōyiː in one sentence is, however, not required.

A common pattern is to use either one or the other but not both.

The order of the two clauses is irreversible.

Ex: 1. ɭə waived ngōh hāi Gau-lūngh jōuh sīh, ngōh mǐnūngyī hāi Heunggōng jynh.

Because I work in Kowloon, I wouldn't like to live in Hong Kong.

2. Ngōh hāi Gau-lūngh jōuh sīh, sōyiː ngōh mǐnūngyī hāi Heunggōng jynh.

I work in Kowloon, so I wouldn't like to live in Hong Kong. (Or: so I don't like to live in Hong Kong.)

(See BC and Drill 7)

3. Number-Measure expressions: with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers.

a. In Nu-M expressions concerning units greater than 1:

For numbers greater than 1, fractions and other partials fit into a number expression following the grammatical Measure word, preceding the Noun (if any).
Ex: Nu. | M. | Fraction or Partial | N.
--- | --- | --- | ---
1. saam go | jünghau | 3 hours
saam go gēi | jünghau | 3 hours and some
saam go bun | jünghau | 3 1/2 hours
saam go dō | jünghau | more than 3 hours
2. léuhng gân | ngăuhyuuhk | 2 catties of beef
léuhng gân bun | ngăuhyuuhk | 2 1/2 catties of beef
3. sahp nîhn | 10 years
sahp nîhn dō | more than 10 years

Note that the fraction part comes after the Measure, and that though most Chinese standard measures (for time, length, weight, etc.) are grammatically Measures, some standard measures are grammatically Nouns.

Thus: Nu. | M. | 1/2 | N.
--- | --- | --- | ---
saam nîhn bun | 3 1/2 years
saam go bun jünghau | 3 1/2 hours

You will probably need considerable practice to be able to produce the two types smoothly.

(See BC and Drill 11)

b. In number expressions for units less than 1:

bun, 'half' precedes the Measure word in number expressions concerning units less than 1.

Ex: 1/2 M (K)

bun go jünghauh | half an hour
bun go yuht | half a month
bun gân | half a catty
bun măh | half a yard (of cloth, etc.)
bun yaht | half a day
bun nîhn | half a year

c. Approximate numbers:
saam nîhn yaht | 3 or 4 days
sînhg go yahn | 4 or 5 people

Cantonese uses serial numbers as approximate numbers, as indicated above. Ordinarily the numbers used are adjacent numbers in a series with the smaller first. Occasionally the larger number can be first;
for example: saamléuhng goei, 'two or three sentences'. [3-2-sentences]—
gausahp is not used as an approximate number for 'nine or ten,' but is
used only as the specific number 'ninety.'

(See BC and Drill 1h)
d. sahpgéi, [ten-several] 'ten some'
sahpgéi is an approximate number representing 'ten and a few more'--
more than ten but less than twenty. All the round numbers—sahp, baak,
chín—use this form in this way:

Ex: 1. sahpgéi ten some, a few more than ten
   2. yihsahpgéi twenty some
   3. baakgéi a hundred some
   4. yihsaakgéi two hundred some
   5. chingéi a thousand some

(See BC)

4. mílh, 'every,' 'each,' in Time Expressions.

mílh 'every,' 'each,' occupies the position of specifying words
(ní, go) before the number in a numbered Time Expression.

Ex: 1. Kéuíh mílh léuhng go 1. He goes to the New Territories
   laihbaai heui Sángaai once very two weeks.
yat chi.

   2. Kéuíh ní léuhng go 2. He has taken off for the New
   laihbaai heuijo Territories twice these last
   Sángaai léuhng chi. two weeks.

   (See BC and Drills 8, 1h)

When the number in the Time Expression is yât 'one,' either the mílh
or the yât can be omitted, or both can be said.

Ex: 1. Kéuíh mílh nihn heui Sángaai
   yât chi.

   2. Kéuíh yât nihn heui Sángaai
   yât chi.

   3. Kéuíh mílh yât nihn dôu heui
   Sángaai yât chi.

5. Duplication of Measure word to express 'each and every'

'Each and every,' 'every and all' may be expressed by saying the
Measure word twice: yahtyaht, 'each and every day,' [day-day];
gogo laihbaai, 'each and every week,' [Measure-Measure week]. When the
duplicated Measure is used, the phrase occurs in a set with a following
doù, the dôu appearing directly before the verb.
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Ex: 1. Kēuih yahyəh dōu hohk
gwongdungwa.
2. Kēuih gogo lāihbaai dōu sikh
yatseuhng chī jūngchoi.
(See Drills 2, 15)

The duplicated Measure is only used for 'every _____ without
exception;' for 'every two _____,' etc., you must use múih.

Ex: 1. Kēuih nihnlnh dōu heui
meihgwok yāt chī maah yēh.
2. Kēuih múih dōu heui meih-

5. Voyage Measures

In English we may say:

1. There are two planes taking off in an hour.
2. There are two ships on June 15.

'Flight' and 'sailing' refer not to the vessel but to the voyage.

Cantonese makes the same distinction between vessel and voyage, but
differs from English in that the distinction is compulsory. Referring to
the vessel, Cantonese uses the individual measure for the vessel; when
referring to a voyage, the voyage measure is used.

Ex: 1. Gō gā feigēi chōhāk geidō yānh a?
     How many people does that plane seat? [that individual-M
plane] 2. Gō bān feigēi geidōjūng hoi a?
     When does that flight leave? [that voyage-M plane]

Chart of Carriers with individual and voyage Measures:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>individual measure</th>
<th>voyage measure</th>
<th>carrier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ga</td>
<td>bān</td>
<td>feigēi airplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ga</td>
<td>lēuhn</td>
<td>chē, bāsī, laahmchē, jōchē, dīhnohē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jek</td>
<td>douh</td>
<td>syūhn ship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This division is not always strictly adhered to. hahyāt gā chē,
'the next [individual-M] car' is said interchangeably with hahyāt bān wān.
6. **dimjung**, 'hour' as Time Spent word.

*dimjung* in 'time when' position, i.e., before the verb, translates into English as 'o'clock.' *A* point in time. *dimjung* in 'time spent' position, i.e., following the verb, indicates 'hour(s),' a length of time. It occupies the same sentence position that *jungtah*, 'hour,' does.

Ex: 1. Keuih saam dimjung heui. He's going there at 3 o'clock. godouh.

2. Heui godouh yiu saam dimjung.

3. Heui godouh yiu saam go jungtah.

(See Drill 6)

7. **m Verb** as 'refuses to Verb,' 'refused to Verb,' 'unwilling to Verb' and **V m Verb** as 'willing to V?'

Compare:

1.a. Ngoh mjį bo—
    keuih mouh wan ngoh jį.
    I'm sorry, I don't know—she didn't tell me.

b. Ngoh mjį bo—keuih mįgah ngoh jį.
    I'm sorry, I don't know—she wouldn't tell me.

2.a. Keuih kǎmyaht dimgāi mouh tūhung néih heui a?
    Why didn't he go with you yesterday? (plainfact question)

b. Keuih kǎmyaht dimgāi mhtubg néih heui a?
    Why didn't he go with you yesterday? (implication that he refused to go—that he could have, but he wouldn't)

3.a. Keuih gogo láihbaai
dou mhtubg ngoh heui gāi gé.
    She won't ever go out with me on Sunday.

b. Gām, kǎmyaht láihbaai—
    keuih tūhung mhtubg
    néih heui a?
    Well, yesterday was Sunday—did she (was she willing to) go out with you?

4.a. Ngoh néuihpaŋgyaŋg yu
ggo láihbaai dou tūhung
ngoh heui gāi.
    My girlfriend always goes out with me on Sunday.

b. Gām, kǎmyaht láihbaai—
    keuih yauh mouh tūhung
    néih heui a?
    Well, yesterday was Sunday—did she go out with you?

**m Verb** may be used to express 'not willing to Verb,' in which case
the negative remains regardless of whether the sentence is one of past reference, non-past reference, or habitual action.

(See BC and Drill 19)

8. *yiu* as 'cause or make (someone do something),' 'be caused or made (to do something)'

   Ex: 1. Neih ding'gai yiu
        haahtng louh heui ne?  [you why made walk-road go eh?]
        What makes you be walking?
        or
        What made you walk?
        (Speaker indicates he expected addressee not to be walking and assumes something special made him walk.)
        (Cf. English: 'What did you want to do that for?' when someone hits you unprovoked.)

2. Yiu neih d'ang goh
    gaz noih m'hhou yeei.  Making you wait for me so long--
    I'm very sorry.

*Yiu* which basically means 'require,' 'be required' has an extended meaning 'cause' or 'be caused.'

(See Drill 14)


   Ex: Keuih duhk Yingmáhn yáuh
        sei níhn.  His English study amounts to
        four years.
        He studied English four years.

   In this type sentence the Subject is composed of an SVO phrase.
   There is a pause, then the Predicate, composed of *yáuh TS Expression*,
   follows.

   We regard this type sentence as being derived from a V(iô) time-spent structure:

   Ex: 1. Keuih s'ung duhk
        sei níhn Yingmáhn.  He plans to study English
        for four years.

2. Keuih duhkjô sei níhn
    Yingmáhn.  He studied English for four
    years.

   In the *SVO* yáuh TS Expression, the time-spent expression has been separated from its verb. Its verb (duhk in the example above) becomes part of the Subject, and the TS expression (sei níhn above) becomes Object in the Predicate. *Yáuh* in this type sentence is an equating verb,

102
CANTONENSE BASIC COURSE

affirming that Subject 'amounts to' Object. (You will learn in later lessons that there are other sentence types in which yauh is used as an equating verb.)

In this type sentence the verb of the SVO subject does not require (but can have) the verb suffix -io, even when the action concerns one which began in the past. Talking of action which began in the past one may say:

1. Kauih duhk Yingmahn yauh sei nhian.
   His English study----it amounted to four years.

2. Kauih duhkjio Yingmahn yauh sei nhian ge la.
   He's studied English----it's been four years now.
   or
   He studied English----it was four years.

(See Drill 15)


A verbal modifier in Cantonese directly precedes a Sp+M+N phrase:

V  Sp-M-N

Ex: Kauih daap go buan feigiei sei dim hoi.
   The plane he is taking leaves at 4 o'clock. (or took/left)

Kauih maaih go di syu dou hou gwai ga.
   The books he bought were all very expensive.

(See BC and Drill 16)

(The above contrasts with the situation of verbal modification in Mandarin, in which a verbal modifier is followed by the subordinating particle de ( ).

before a Sp M N phrase.

V de Sp+M N

Ex: 1. Ta dzou de nei ban feijiei a dyahn jung chilieh.
   The plane he is taking leaves at 4 o'clock.

2. Ta mai de nei sye shu dou huan gwei.
   The books he bought were all very expensive.)


When a verbal modifier precedes a numbered phrase, there are two possibilities: 1) the V modifier is followed by the subordinating particle ge; or 2) it is followed by Sp*the general plural M di.

Ex: Kauih maain (ge) samm bun syu dou hou gwai.
   The three books he bought were all very expensive.
III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. laahnchē.
   b. yāt bāan laahnchē.
   + c. Hahyāt bāan laahnchē.
      (the next)
   d. Hahyāt bāan laahnchē daahp géi hōi a?
   e. Hahyāt bāan laahnchē daahp sāam hōi.

Comment: Tape has lēuhn where text has bāan. bāan can always be substituted for lēuhn as a journey measure.

+ 2. a. bāsi.
   b. yāuh bāsi.
   c. yāuh bāan bāsi.
   d. yāuh géidō bāan bāsi a?
   e. Yāt go jūngtāuh yāuh géidō bāan bāsi a?
   f. Yāt go jūngtāuh yauh sei bāan bāsi.

+ 3. a. chē
   b. bāan chē
   c. yāuh bāan chē
   d. múih léuhnggo jīh yāuh bāan chē.
   e. múih sāamgo jīh yāuh bāan chē.
   f. múih seigo jīh yāuh bāan chē.

+ 4. a. hàahnch louh.
   b. hàahnch louh hēui.
   c. yiu hàahnch louh hēui.
   d. dīmghāi yiu hàahnch louh?
   d. dīmghāi yiu hàahnch louh hēui nē?

+ 2. a. bus
   b. there are buses
   c. there's a [trip] bus
   d. how many buses are there?
   e. How many buses there are in one hour?
   f. There are 4 buses an hour.

3. a. bus [car]
   b. a [trip] bus
   c. there's a [trip] bus
   d. There's a bus every 10 minutes.
   e. There's a bus every 15 minutes.
   f. There's a bus every 20 minutes.

4. a. walk [walk-road]
   b. go on foot
   c. have to go on foot
   d. why do you have to walk? or What causes you to be walking?
   e. How come you are walking?
Comment: The d and e sentences could be: 'Why do you (or did you) want to walk?' or 'why is it you are (or were) walking? In the latter case yiu has a new meaning:
+ yiu =
'cause, make (someone do something)': "What causes you to be walking?" The implication being that the speaker expects the addressee not to be walking.

5. a. fōchē
   + b. chôh fōchē.
     c. chôh fōchē heui.
     + d. chôh fōchē heui Sângaaü.
       e. Chôh fōchē heui Sângaaü yiu géi noih a?

6. a. géi houh bāsî
   b. daahp géi houh bāsî
   c. yiu daahp géi houh bāsî
   + d. Heui fēigêichêuhng yiu daahp géi houh bāsî a?
   + e. Heui Sândâng yiu daahp géi houh bāsî a?
     f. Heui Sângaaü yiu daahp géi houh bāsî a?

7. a. léuîhhâng
   b. heui léuîhhâng
   c. heui Tôîhwâán léuîhhâng
   d. gauh nîn heui Tôîhwâán léuîhhâng
   e. Gauh nîn heui Tôîhwâán léuîhhâng, heuijô léuîng go láihbâai.

5. a. train
   b. take the train, go by train
     c. go by train
     d. go by train to the New Territories
     e. How long does it take to get to the New Territories by train?

6. a. what number bus
   b. catch what number bus
     c. have to get what number bus
     d. What number bus do you catch to get to the airport?
     e. What number bus do you catch to get to the Peak?
     f. What number bus do you catch to get to the New Territories?

7. a. trip, excursion
   b. go on a trip, excursion
     c. go to Taiwan on a trip
     d. took a trip to Taiwan last year
     e. took a trip last year to Taiwan for two weeks.
LESSON 20  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

2. Transformation Drill: Transform from 每日 time expression to equivalent expression using duplicated Measure.

1. 每日 yah tryaht dou heui yat chi. (every day)  
   1. Kœuih vahtyaht dou heui yat chi. (every day)

2. 每日 ga lai baa heui yat chi.  
   2. Kœuih go go lai baa heui yat chi. (every week)

3. 每日 go yuht heui yat chi.  
   3. Kœuih go go yuht dou keui yat chi. (every month)

4. 每年 ni huih dou heui yat chi.  
   4. Kœuih ni huih dou heui yat chi. (every year)

Comment: Note that in the above sentences the duplicated Measure expressions (ni huih, etc) are followed by dou before the Verb: ni huih dou lai heui, etc. In the 每日 sentences dou can be included, to indicate that the frequency stated is thought to be high.

3. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nœih haih mœh haih chœn fei gœi lai h ge? /bœsi/  
   S: Mœh hai, Ngœh chœn bœsi lai h ge.  
2. T: Nœih haih mœh haih chœn fei gœi lai h ge? /bœsi/  
   S: Haih. Ngœh chœn bœsi lai h ge.

1. Nœih haih mœh haih daap syuñh lai h ge? /fei gœi/  
2. Nœih haih mœh haih chœn fei gœi lai h ge? /fei gœi/  
3. Nœih haih mœh haih chœn fei gœi lai h ge? /bœsi/  
4. Nœih haih mœh haih chœn bœsi lai h ge? /di kœi/ (taxi)  
5. Nœih haih mœh haih chœn di kœi lai h ge? /hœhng louh/  
6. Nœih haih mœh haih hœhng louh lai h ge? /chœn fei gœi/  
7. Nœih haih mœh haih daap fei gœi lai h ge? /fei gœi/
8. 喂海 méi hah laap júh de laih ga? /dài/
   喂海 méi hah laap bāsí laih ge.

9. 喂海 méi hah laap bāsí laih ga? /loumchē/
   喂海 méi hah laap lahmmchē laih ge.

10. 喂海 méi hah laap lahmmchē laih ga? /loumchē/
    喂海 méi hah laap lahmchē laih ge.

4. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: 喂海 dím heui ga? /dài/
   喂海 dím heui ga?
   S: Ngôh daap bāsí heui ge.

2. T: 喂海 dím heui a? /hàanh meng loun/
   喂海 dím heui a?
   S: Ngôh hàanhng loun heui.

1. 喂海 dím heui a? /loumchē/
   喂海 dím heui a?
   S: Ngôh daap lahmmchē heui.

2. 喂海 dím laih ga? /júh de/
   喂海 dím laih ga?
   S: Ngôh daap júh de laih ge.

3. 係海 dím heui ga? /jíh de/
   係海 dím heui ga?
   S: Ngôh daap jíh de heui ge.

4. 喂海 dím heui a? /syüh/
   喂海 dím heui a?
   S: Ngôh daap syüh heui.

5. 喂海 dím laih ga? /hàanh meng loun/
   喂海 dím laih ga?
   S: Ngôh hàanhng loun laih ge.

6. 喂海 dím laih ga? /dài/
   喂海 dím laih ga?
   S: Ngôh daap bāsí laih ge.

7. 喂海 dím heui a? /diksi/
   喂海 dím heui a?
   S: Ngôh daap diksi heui.

8. 喂海 dím lohk heui ga? /loumchē/
   喂海 dím lohk heui ga?
   S: Ngôh daap lahmmchē lohk heui ge.

9. 喂海 dím heui a? /jā chē/
   喂海 dím heui a?
   S: Ngôh jā chē heui.

5. Substitution Drill

1. Hahyât bān chē daahp géi hōi a?
   喂海 bān chē daahp géi hōi a?

2. /bān jíh de/
   喂海 bān jíh de géi hēi a?

3. /bān lahmmchē daahp géi/
   喂海 bān lahmmchē daahp géi hēi a?
LESSON 20  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

4. /tēan fōchē/geisih/
5. /tāan syūhn/saahpgī/

4. Hāhyat bāan fōchē gēisih hōi a?
5. Hāhyat bāan syūhn daahp gēi hōi a?

6. Transformation Drill: Change the sentences from yiu to ēhsāi.

**Ex:** T: Hāahng louh heui Jūngwāahn Gāaisīh yiu sāam go jih.
S: Hāahng louh heui Jūngwāahn Gāaisīh ēhsī sāam go jih.

1. Daap bāsi heui yīt di-m-jūng. (one hour)
2. Chōn syūhn heui yiu seīngg yaht.
3. Chōn feigāi heui yahtbūn yiu chāhta di-mjūng.
4. Daap laamchē séuung heui yiu ēghluhk go jīn.
5. Chōn dīksā heui tōuhsyūgwūn yiu ēhngsām go jīn.
6. Hāahng louh heui yiu lēuhng di-m gēi jūng.

1. Daap bāsi heui ēhsāi yīt di-mjūng.
2. Chōn syūhn heui ēhsāi seīngg yaht.
3. Chōn feigāi heui yahtbūn ēhsī chāhta di-mjūng.
4. Daap laamchē séuung heui ēhsī ēghluhk go jīn.
5. Chōn dīksā heui tōuhsyūgwūn ēhsī ēhngsām go jīn.
6. Hāahng louh heui ēhsāi lēuhng di-m gēi jūng.

7. Combining Drill

**Ex:** T: Gō dī ngāuhyuṅk ēnhōusīhk. Ngōn ēhhilihk.
S: Yānwai gō dī ngāuhyuṅk ēnhōusīhk, sōyīng ngōn ēhhilihk.

1. Gō dī jyūyuṅk ēnhōusīhk.
   Ngōn mōu sīhk.
   Ngōn ēhjeuk.

1. Yānwai gō dī jyūyuṅk ēhhōusīhk, sōyīng ngōn mōu sīhk.
2. Yānwai kāhmīah tāihsāi, sōyīng ēhnsī fāangūng.
3. Yānwai gō deui hāsī ēhhōutāi, sōyīng ngōn ēhjeuk.

108

5. Gāmyaht ēhsái fāaŋgūng, Ngōh heui chāhlāuh yām cháh.

8. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Mūih yaht yāuh gēi (dō) baan fēīgēi a? /3/
S: Mūih yaht yāuh sāam bāan.

T: How many flights are there each day?
S: There are three flights every day.

1. Mūih yaht duk gēi(dō) go jüngtāuh syū a? /4/

2. Mūih yaht yāuh gēi(dō) lēuhn fōchē a? /9/

3. Mūih go lāihbāi hohk gēi diāmjūng Gwōngdīngwā a? /2/

4. Mūih yaht hohk gēi(dō) go jüngtāuh Tingmāin a? /1/

5. Mūih go jüngtāuh yāuh gēi(dō) baan sūn a? /9/

6. Mūih yaht yāuh gēi(dō) baan fēīgēi a? /3/

9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chōh bàai yiu gēi noih a? /Jùngwāahn/
S: Chōh bàai heui Jùngwāahn yiu gēi noih a?

T: How long does it take to go by bus? /Central District/
S: How long will it take to go to Central District by bus?

1. Hāahng louh yiu gēi noih a? /Hēunggōng Daaihhohk tōuhysyūgwūn/

2. Daap fēīgēi yiu gēi noih a? /Yahtbūn/

3. Chōh dīkēi yiu gēi noih a? /Daaih Douh Jùng/

109
10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Yáuh Júngwáahn Gáaisih hāahng-louh heui Tínzing Máhtàuh yiu gée noih a?
   /Júngwáhn Gáaisih hāahng-louh heui Tínzing Máhtàuh yiu gée noih a?

2. /Júngwáhn Gáaisih/Máhnwáh Jándim/
   /Júngwáhn Gáaisih/Máhnwáh Jándim/

3. /Máhnwáh Jándim/Méihgwok Jándim/
   /Máhnwáh Jándim/Méihgwok Jándim/

4. /Méihgwok Jándim/‘íihg On Gúngsí/
   /Méihgwok Jándim/‘íihg On Gúngsí/

5. /dáap díksí/
   /dáap díksí/

6. /‘íihg On Gúngsí/(Héung)góng Daaih(hohk)/
   /‘íihg On Gúngsí/(Héung)góng Daaih(hohk)/

7. /Héunggóng Daaih(hohk)/séuhng Sáandéng/
   /Héunggóng Daaih(hohk)/séuhng Sáandéng/

8. /Sáandéng/lohk Júngwáahn/
   /Sáandéng/lohk Júngwáahn/

Comment: Góng Daaih is an abbreviation for Hong Kong University.
11. Expansion Drill: Add  quê  in the appropriate place.

Ex: 1. T: Daap  quê  yiu sàam go jỳngtāuh.  
    S: Daap  quê  yiu sàam go  quê  jỳngtāuh.

2. T: Chòh syùhn yiu  ngīh yaht.  
    S: Chòh syùhn yiu  ngīh  quê  yaht.

1. Jouh nǐ gihn sīh yiu yāt nihn.  
   This job will take a year to do.

2. Chòh syùhn yiu yāt go yuht.  
3. Daap  fǒchē yiu sēy go jih.  
4. Heuī  laahmchē jaahm yiu yāt go jỳngtāuh.
5. Fāan ēkkēi yiu sahp  fānjīng.
7. Daap syùhn heuī Tōihwāan yiu sàam yaht.
8. Heuī  fǒigēi chèuhng yiu lēuhng dim jỳng.

Repeat, thus:

T: Daap  quê  yiu sàam go jỳngtāuh.
S: Daap  quê  yiu sàam go jỳngtāuh dōu īā.

12. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih heuidaou gōjān, kēuihdīeh sīhkjō faahn meih ā? /nod/
    S: Ngōh heuidaou gōjān, kēuihdīeh yihging sīhkjō faahn laak.

T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
S: When I got there, they had already eaten their meal.
LESSON 20  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

2. T: 香港去гон значит, 香港 還未 來到你 a? /shake/
   S: 你 還未 來到 香港 a? /shake/
   T: When you got there, had they eaten yet?
   S: When I got there, they still hadn't eaten yet.

1. Kæuih kæiūdou gò-jæn, néih sëhhk compartment mei a? /shake/
   1. Kæuih kæiūdou gò-jæn, ngóh juhng mei sëhhk jouchaan.

2. Kæuih kæiūdou gò-jæn, néih tāi-jør yisàng mei a? /nod/
   2. Kæuih kæiūdou gò-jæn, ngóh yihgeng tāi-jør yisàng laak.

3. Nëih lāihdou gò-jæn, kæuih fæanjócheui mei a? /shake/


5. Kæuih lāihdou gò-jæn, néih yämjó chāh mei a? /shake/


7. Nëih kæiūdou gò-jæn, jek ayûnh hōi jør mei a? /shake/

8. Nëih kæiūdou gò-jæn, kæuih bûnjó uk mei a? /shake/


10. Kæuih kæiūdou gò-jæn, néih duhkjó yù mei a? /shake/

13. Alteration Drill

   S: Kæuih yahtsûih dou lohk.Jüngwàawn.
   T: He goes to the Central District everyday.
   S: He goes to the Central District everyday.

2. T: Kæuih sûih go lâihbaai dou hái ükkéi dá páai.
   T: She plays mahjong at home every week.

112
S: Kêuih gogo láih-
  baaî dòu hai
  ûkkêî dâ pâai.

1. Kêuih mûih go láihbaai dòu heui
dâ bô.
2. Kêuih mûih go juht dòu fànan-
   heui Oumûn.
3. Kêuih mûih nînh dòu fànanheui
   Méihgwok.
4. Kêuih mûih yah dòu sihk
   Sâichåan.
5. Kêuih mûih go láihbaaiyaht
   dòu chêng sihk faahn.
6. Kêuih mûih go juht yât houh
dòu heui lô chîn.
7. Kêuih mûih nînh sei yuht dòu
   fàan Gwôngjâu.

1. Kêuih gogo láihbaai dòu
   heui dâ bô.
2. Kêuih gogo juht dòu fànan-
   heui Oumûn.
3. Kêuih nînhnînh dòu fànan-
   heui Méihgwok.
4. Kêuih yahyâht dòu sihk
   Sâichåan.
5. Kêuih gogo láihbaaiyaht
   dòu chêng sihk faahn.
6. Kêuih gogo juht yât houh
   dòu heui lô chîn.
7. Kêuih nînhnînh sei yuht
   dòu fàan Gwôngjâu.

14. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih mûih nînh heui T: He goes to Taipei twice each
  Tôihbâk lâuhng chi. year /week /
     /lâihbaai/

S: Kêuih mûih go láih-
  baai heui Tôihbâk
  lâuhng chi.

S: He goes to Taipei twice a
  week.

1. Kêuih mûih yah gwo hôi sei
   chi. /lâihbaai/

2. Kêuih mûih go láihbaai làih
   ngôh ûkkêî yât chi. /yuht/

3. Kêuih mûih go juht fàan Gwông-
   jâu lâuhng chi. /nînh/

4. Kêuih mûih nînh fànanheui hohk-
   haaâuh sei chi. /yuht/

5. Kêuih mûih yah lohk Jûngwâahn
   sâmsei chi. /lâihbaai/

6. Kêuih mûih go láihbaai heui
   Sângaaî gêî chi. /yuht/

1. Kêuih mûih go láihbaai gwo
   hôi sei chi.

2. Kêuih mûih go juht làih
   ngôh ûkkêî yât chi.

3. Kêuih mûih nînh fàan Gwông-
   jâu lâuhng chi.

4. Kêuih mûih yah fànanheui
   hohkhaauh sei chi.

5. Kêuih mûih go láihbaai lohk
   Jûngwâahn sâmsei chi.

6. Kêuih mûih go juht heui
   Sângaaî gêî chi.
15. Alteration Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nêih lâihjô Hëunggông yâuh géi noih a? T: How long have you been in Hong Kong?
   S: Nêih lâihjô Hëunggông géi noih a?

2. T: Kêuih gaajô Gwokyûh yâuh sâm nînh laak.
   S: Kêuih gaajô sâm nînh Gwokyûh laak.
   T: He has taught Mandarin for three years.
   S: He has taught Mandarin for three years.

1. Kêuih heuijô Meihgwok yâuh géi noih a?
2. Ngôh bûnjô ûk yâuh bun nînh laak. I moved half a year ago.
5. Kêuih bûtjô yihp yâuh lêuhng nînh laak.
6. Nêih gitjô fân yâuh géi noih a?
7. Kêuih sîhkgô faahn yâuh yihsahp fânjûng laak. He finished his meal twenty minute ago.
8. Ga fôchê hôi jô yâuh géi noih a?

16. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Jêung Sâang daap feigêi. Gô bûan feigêi géi dimjûng hôi a?
   S: Jêung Sâang daap gô bûan feigêi géi dimjûng hôi a?
   T: Mr. Cheung is going to catch that flight. When does that flight take off?
   S: When does the flight Mr. Cheung is taking take off? or When does the flight take off that Mr. Cheung is taking?
1. Laih Taa kon png mea.
   Go baaan png mea mei kii douh a?
2. Ngoh jieh kon phone.
   Go baaan phone laa bai sei dou.
3. Wohng Saaang daap png syu.
   Go baaan syu daap gie hoi a?
4. Kauh jieh daap laa mch.
   Go baaan laa mch yat go jih hauh hoi.
5. Kauh maaih seutsaam.
   Go gih seutsaam miing saamjuk.
6. Hoj Siuj deuk go bii syu.
   Go bii syu maaih sahp saam.

Comment: Tape has loun in sentences 1, 2, and 3, where text has baaan. In sentence 4, tape has douh where text has baaan. baaan can always be substituted for douh as a journey measure.

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kauh yat go jung taw (ji) - hauh faan lai.
   [He, after an hour, return.]
   He'll be back in an hour.
2. /go gie jung taw/
3. /leu hung go jung taw/
4. /leu hung go gie jung taw/
5. /saam sei go jung taw/
6. /go gie laai baai/
7. /yat nihn/
8. /nihn gie/
9. /leu hung nihn gie/
10. /yat nihn dou/ 11. /yat go yuht dou/
10. Këuih yat nihn dou (ji)hauh fãanlaih.
11. Këuih yat go yuht dou (ji)-
hauh fãanlaih.

18. Double Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then sub-
stitute as directed.

1. Këuih heuijó Meihgwok--
waahkjé saam go yuht (ji)-
hauh fãanlaih.
He's gone to America--and
will probably be back in
three months.
2. /yâm châh/bun go jüngtûuh/
2. Këuih heuijó yâm châh,
waahkjé bun go jüngtûuh
(ji)hauh fãanlaih.
3. /Yínggwok/léuhnggo gëi yuht/
3. Këuih heuijó Yínggwok,
waahkjé léuhnggo gëi yuht
(ji)hauh fãanlaih.
4. /dâ bô/yât go gëi jüngtûuh/
4. Këuih heuijó dâ bô, waahkjé
yât go gëi jüngtûuh (ji)-
hauh fãanlaih.
5. /Gwôngjâu/gëi yaht/
5. Këuih heuijó Gwôngjâu,
waahkjé gëi yaht (ji)hauh
fãanlaih.
6. /yûhseüi/sàamseü go jüngtûuh/
6. Këuih heuijó yûhseüi,
waahkjé sàamseü go jüng-
tûuh (ji)hauh fãanlaih.
7. /Jûngwàah/gëi go jîh/
7. Këuih heuijó Jûngwàah,
waahkjé gëi go jîh (ji)-
hauh fãanlaih.

Comment: The structure Time Expression (ji) hauh 'after X time'
as in saam yaht hauh fãanlaih 'return after 3 days'
represents a Time When expression which precedes
the Verb it is connected to,
19. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from negatives to dímgaai questions.

   S: Kêuih kàhmyaht dímgaai mòuh tühng taaitañai heui yauhsêu a?
   T: He didn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.
   S: Why didn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

2. T: Kêuih kàhmyaht âhtühng taaitañai heui yauhsêu.
   S: Kêuih kàhmyaht dímgaai âhtühng taaitañai heui yauhsêu a?
   T: He wouldn't go swimming with his wife yesterday.
   S: Why wouldn't he go swimming with his wife yesterday?

1. Kêuih âhtái dihnshih.
2. Kêuih âhje chin bêi kôuih sailou.
5. Kêuih âhgaau kêuih sê Jûnmâhn.
8. Kêuih mòuh màaih gâai.

Comment: The âh sentences depend on context to clarify whether the meaning is 'is not going to Y' or 'wouldn't (i.e., refused to) Y.'
20. Expansion Drill

Ex: A: Kêuih yînhchin mûih nînh dû heui louhng chi ga.
B: Kêuih yînhchin mûih nînh dû heui louhng chi ga, bêtgwô gâmnin kêuih yât chi dôu meih heuigwo.

A: Formerly he went twice every year.
B: Formerly he went twice every year, but this year he hasn’t gone even once.


1. Kêuih yînhchin mûih yaht dôu làih sâm chi ga, bêtgwô gâmnyah kêuih yât chi dôu meih làihgwo.

2. Nggôh yînhchin mûih go yuht dôu heui sei chi ga.

2. Nggôh yînhchin mûih go yuht dôu heui sei chi ga, bêtgwô nî go yuht nggôh yât chi dôu meih heuigwo.


**IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING**

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) louh = road
2) gwo = pass by
3) sung gôî = see (someone) off on a plane
4) Hôu wah = 'You’re welcome'
5) Sâtîhn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong
6) fànsouheui = arrive back
7) hôu wàán ge deihrôug = fun places, amusing places
8) Nâh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen', ...

118
9) fàngging = scenery
10) louh = road
   a) sīk louh = know the road; know your way around
11) Mōt māhsīk a? = What do you mean, not know?
12) piu = ticket

V. SAY IT IN CANTONENSE:
A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
   1. How many hours a day do you study Cantonese?
   2. How many planes to the U.S. are there a day?
   3. How long does it take to walk to the Star Ferry?
   4. It takes about 15 minutes to cross the harbor by ferry (ship).
   5. It takes more than two hours by car.
   6. How long have you studied English?
   7. How long has Mr. Chang been in Japan?
   8. When will Mr. Lau be back?
   9. How long does it take by ship from Hong Kong to Japan?
  10. How come you didn't go with your wife and children on vacation in Taiwan? (go to Taiwan on excursion)
  11. It's so slow to go by ship--why are you going by ship? (speaker expected them to take a plane)
  12. It's very nice to go by ship, why do you want to fly?

B. And he replies:
   1. Every day I study five or six hours.
   2. There are four or five a day.
   3. It takes about 20 minutes to walk. If you take a cab it's just five minutes.
   4. Not so! It doesn't require 15 minutes to get across--it takes only 10 minutes.
   5. It's faster by train--it takes just an hour and a half.
   6. More than two years.
   7. Over a week.
   8. He'll be back in an hour. Please call back later.
   9. It takes a little over five days by ship.
  10. I've been very busy recently and so I couldn't go.
  11. We're going by ship because I'm afraid of taking planes.
  12. We have to reach Washington on the 15th, so we don't have time to go by ship.
15. Would you prefer to take the bus to the Peak, or the cable car? 15. Either one--But I think maybe the cable car.
16. What time does Miss Chang's plane leave? 16. I don't know, you'll have to ask her.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 20

1. bān m: flight, trip; voyage Measure
2. bēi n: bus
3. chōh vehicle CoV: travel by vehicle, go by vehicle
4. chōh fōchē CoV+O: go by train, take the train
5. daap vehicle CoV/v: travel by vehicle; take vehicle; catch vehicle
6. -dāk Vsauf: verb suff. 'can,' 'able to,' indicating physical ability
7. dīksāi n: taxi
8. dīmāsāi? QW: why?
9. dīmāng m: hour (length of time)
10. fōchē n: airplane
11. fōchē chēuhng n: airport
12. fōchē n: train
13. gāyān n: family members
14. gōgo láihbasāi Ph: every week
15. gōgo yuht Ph: every month
16. nīhmīn Ph: every year
17. gōmāhchīt Ph: can't make it in time; [hurry-not-make it]
18. hāhng louh CoV+O: go on foot
19. hāyēt M Ph: the next M
20. hah yēt bān chē Ph: the next trip of the vehicle
21. hōi v: start off, set out, (for vehicles)
22. lōahmchēh n: cable car, Peak Tram
23. lōunihhāng VO: excursion
| 24. múih | Sp: every, each |
| 25. pa | v: frightened of, be afraid of |
| 26. sàmseî | nu: three or four - an approximate number |
| 27. Sàndãoŋ | FW: the Peak |
| 28. sahpréi | nu: a few more than 10 |
| 29. Sàngsaai | FW: the New Territories |
| 30. sóyih | Cj: therefore |
| 31. ayûñh | n: ship, ferry |
| 32. tûúng person yêchàiŋ | Ph: Y together with person |
| 33. yahtsah | Ph: every day |
| 34. yànwaîh | Cj: because |
| 35. yànwaîh... sóyih... | PCj: because..., therefore...; since..., so... |
| 36. yîhché | Cj: furthermore |
| 37. yîu | CoV: cause, make (someone do something) |
| 38. yîu length of time | v: takes length of time |

| 39. yûhnîôíh | MA/n: basically; basis, origin |
| 40. Yûhnîôíh haih gâm ge. | Ph: Oh, so that's why. So that's the reason! |
LESSON 21  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(It's February in Hong Kong, and a native of Hong Kong is talking about the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

**Bündeiháhn**
dung
gàsyäht hóu dung boi

cold
Gosh it's cold today!

**Tōihwāanyáhn**
dunggwo kâhmyaht
dunggwo kâhmyaht hóu dò
Haíh a. Gàsyäht dunggwo kâhmyaht hóu dò.
colder than yesterday
much colder than yesterday
Sure is. Today is a lot colder than yesterday.

**Bündeiháhn**
ji-
sùnsìh
sùnsìh dòu
ji dung
yìhyuht sùnsìh dòu haíh ji dung
coldest
always
February is always the coldest
ge là.
(superlative degree; -est,
most
always, every time
(month).

**Tōihwāanyáhn**
yìhṭtín
lâahngtín
yìhṭtín hóu, yikwaahk
lâahngtín hóu a?
hot weather; summer
cold weather; winter
is summer good, or winter good? (i.e., which is better?)
feel, consider
Do you think summer is better, or winter is better?

**Bündeiháhn**
gokdák
Gàns, nàin gokdák yìhṭtín hóu,
yikwaahk lâahngtín hóu a?
comparatively, in
Do you think summer is a bit better,
béigasu
in comparison better
bèigasu hóu dì
I think summer is a bit better.
Ngóh wah yìhṭtín bèigasu hóu dì leak.
Yänwaih ngôh ji pa dung ge.

tûhng \_ yâtyeuhung ge
tînheîh
Tôihwâan ge tînheîh haih âûhaïh
tûhng nîdouh yâtyeuhung ge?

Tôihwâanyâhn
juhnng Adi-di
juhnng dung-di
Tôihwâan ge lâahng-tîn juhnng
dung-di tîm.
Bûndeîyâhn
dîm a? or dîmyeûng?
Gâm, yîhtîn dîm a?

Tôihwâanyâhn
tûhng nîdouh chêshdô

sâp
môuh gam sâp
môuh nîdouh gam sâp
Tûhng nîdouh chêshdô, daahnhaih
môuh nîdouh gam sâp.

Bûndeîyâhn
bêî
1 bêî 2 bóû

Hêunggông tînheîh bêî
Tôihwâan hôû
Gâm, ngôh sah Hêunggông tînheîh
bêî Tôihwâan hôû--

Yänwaih ngôh êhpa sâp, ji pa
dung.

Because what I hate most is
cold weather. [...] I am a
fear-cold-the-most-one
the same as \_
weather
Is the weather in Taiwan the
same as here?

even more Adi, even Adi-er
even colder
Taiwan's winter is even colder.

how is it?
What's the summer like?

about like this [with this
approximately the same]
damp
not so damp
not as damp as here
About the same as here, but not
so damp as here.

in comparison
1 in comparison with 2,
is better. (or) 1 is
better than 2.
Hong Kong's weather is
better than Taiwan's
In that case, I say Hong Kong's
weather is better than
Taiwan's--
Because I don't mind the damp,
but I can't stand the cold.
Tōihwānyânh
ngōh jauh wah ...
I then say ..., I in response
say ...
Well I say Taiwan's weather is
better than Hong Kong's.
Because I'm not bothered by cold
but I can't stand damp
(weather)!

Ngōh jauh wah Tōihwāan tînhei
bēi Hêunggông hōu laak.
Yânwaih ngōh âhpə dung ji pa
sāp!

B. Recapitulation:
(It's February in Hong Kong and a
native of Hong Kong is talking about
the weather with a native of Taiwan:)

Bûndeihyânh
Gâmyaht hōu dung bo.
Gosh it's cold today.

Bōihwānyânh
Haik a, Gâmyaht dunggwə kâhmyaht
hōudō.
Sure is. Today is a lot colder
than yesterday.

Bûndeihyânh
Yihyuht sihsìh dōu haik ji dung
gle lâ.
February is always the coldest
month.

Tōihwānyânh
Gâm, néih gokdák yihttânh hōu,
yikwaahk lâahngtânh hōu a?
Do you think summer is better,
or winter is better?

Bûndeihyânh
Ngōh wah yihttânh bēigaa hōudī
laak.
I think summer is a bit nicer.

Yânwaih ngōh ji pa dung ge.
Because what I hate most is
cold weather.

Tōihwāan ge tînhei haik âhhaih
tûnhg nîdouh yâtēuung ga?
Is the weather in Taiwan the
same as here?

Tōihwānyânh
Taiwan's winter is even colder.

Tōihwāan ge láahngtânh juhng
dungdī tīm.
What's the summer like?

About the same as here, but not so damp as here.

In that case, I say Hong Kong's weather is better than Taiwan's--Because I don't mind the damp, but I can't stand the cold.

Well I say Taiwan's weather is better than Hong Kong's.

Because I'm not bothered by cold but I can't stand the damp!

II. NOTES
A. Culture Notes.

-seui, '-years old' (for people). The Chinese count a child as being one year old at birth. At every Chinese New Year (lunar new year) thereafter, one more year is added, rather than adding a year on the anniversary of the date of birth. Since the system of counting age differs in English and Chinese, '-years old' is only an approximate rendering of the term -seui. A Chinese who is 17-seui may be 16, or he may be 15, by Western reckoning.

(See Drill 5)
B. Structure Notes.

1. Comparison forms in Cantonese.

a. Similarity of two substantives is expressed as:

1) A tüng B châândô (gam Adj.)
   A tüng B yâtyeuhung (gam Adj.)
   A is about like B.
   A is like B.
   A is about as Adj. as B.
   A is as Adj. as B.

   Ex: 1. Gâmyaht tüng kâhmyaht yâtyeuhung. Today is the same as yesterday.

   2. Gâmyaht tüng kâhmyaht châândô.

   3. Gâmyaht tüng kâhmyaht yâtyeuht gam y iht.

   4. Yâuhseui tüng dâ bô châândô gam yâuh cheuimeih.
      Swimming and playing ball are about equally interesting.

   (See BC and Drill 2)

2) Sp.-Nu.-M (-M) yâtyeuhung gam Adj. These 2 Ms are equally Adj.

   Ex: NT lêuhung giin (yûhlâu) yâtyeuhung gam gwai.
      These two (raincoats) are equally expensive.

   (See Drill 2)

3) (A,B) lêuhung-M dôu châândô/yâtyeuhung (gam Adj). A and B, these two things are the same (are equally Adj.).

   Ex: Gâmyaht kâhmyaht, lêuhung yaht dôu châândô gam y iht.
      Today and yesterday--the two are both about equally hot.

b. Dissimilarity of two substantives.

1) When two substantives (AB) are stated:

   a) A Adj-gwo B.

      Ex: 1. Kêuih gôngwo nghô. He is taller than I.

      2. Dâ bô yâuh cheuimeihgwo dâ páai.
      Playing ball is more interesting than playing mahjong.

      (See BC and Drill 4)

   b) A bôi B Adj. = A, in comparison to B, is more Adj.

      Ex: Hêunggông bôi Tôihwân aûp. Hongkong is damper than Taiwan.

      (See BC)
c) A móuh  bó gam Adj. = A is not as Adj. as B.
   Ex: 1. Kęuih móuh ngóh gam gòu.       He's not as tall as I.
   2. Daap syùnh móuh daap fęigəi gam faai.
      Taking a ship isn't as fast
      as taking a plane.

(See BC and Drill 7, 11)

d) Dissimilarity by A amount is expressed:
   1) A Adj-gwo B Nu-M (or = A is more Adj than B by A
      indefinite amount) amount.
      Ex: 1. Kęuih gòugwo ngóh yàt
           chyun.                           He is taller than I by one
                                                inch. He is an inch
                                                taller than I.
      2. Kęuih gòugwo ngóh
           sìusi.                          He is a little bit taller
                                                than I.

(See BC and Drill 6)

2) A bèi B Adj Nu-M/Indef = A, in comparison to B, is Adj
   amount phrase than B by A amount.
   Ex: Kęuih bèi ngóh gòu yàt
        chyun.                   He is taller than I by one
                                                inch.

2) When one substantive is stated, and compared to another which
   is not stated, the substantive occupies subject position, and the
   comparison occupies predicate position.

a) Substantive Adj.
   Ex: 1. NI gihng leng.                   This one is prettier.
       2. Toiwhän yìht.                    Taiwan is hotter (than the
                                              other place under
                                              discussion).

b) Substantive Adj-dì.
   Ex: NI gihng lengdì.                This one is a little prettier.

b) Substantive bęigaau Adj(-dì).
   Substantive is comparatively
   (i.e. in comparison to the
   other substantive under
   discussion) Adj-er.
   or:
   Substantive is fairly Adj. (in
   comparison to other members
   of same category.)

Ex: Toiwhän tinhel bęigaau yìht
dì.               Taiwan weather is relatively
                   hot (in comparison to other
                   places)
                   or
                   ...hotter than the other
                   places under discussion.

(See BC)
d) **Substantive juhng Adj (dī)**

Ex: 1. NI gihn juhng lêng dî tim! This one is even prettier!
    2. Kêuih juhng gôn. He is even taller.

(See BC and Drill 12)

e) **Substantive Adj. Amount phrase**

Ex: 1. NI gihn lêng hûûdô. This one is prettier by far.
    or: This one is much prettier.
    2. Kêuih gôn sei chyun. He is taller by 4 inches.

(See Drill 8)

f) **Substantive mûuh gâm Adj.**

Ex: NI gihn mûuh gâm lêng. This one is not as Adj.

(See Drill 7)

2. **Superlative: ji + Adj, or jeui + Adj. 'Adj.-est'**

Superlative degree is expressed by ji or jeui immediately preceding the adjective concerned.

Ex: Yihyuht sîhny dûûh haih ji dung ge la. February is always the coldest.

(See BC and Drills 13,14,15)

3. **Measurable adjectives:** gêi Adj a?, 'which number Adj?', 'how Adj?'.

a. Some but not all adjectives can follow the question word gêi?, 'which number?' and fill the blank in the question sentence Gêi ____ a?, 'which number ____ (tall, short, etc)', i.e., 'How ____ (tall, short, etc.)?

Ex: NI dî bou gêi chêuung a? How long is this cloth?
    [This cloth which-number long?] 

(See Drill 5)

The question pattern can be expanded by a Measure, between gêi and the adjective.

Ex: 1. NI dî bou gêi (mâh) chêuung a? How (many yards) long is this cloth?
    2. NI dî bou sei mâh chêuung. This cloth is four yards long.

We designate adjectives which can follow the question word gêi? as 'measurable adjectives.'
b. Measurable adjectives can combine with number-measure expressions in the following ways:

1. Nu-M Adj

The number-measure expression can be the center of the predicate, with the adjective following as an adjunct to indicate in what respect the number-measure phrase applies.

Ex: 

```
S   P
NI jëung töi sei chek chëuhng.  This table is four feet in length.
Gó jëung   sei chek gòu.  That one is four feet in height.
Gó jëung   géi chek fut a?  That one is how many feet in width?
```

(See Drill 5)

2. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the subject, and the number-measure expression the predicate. In this case there is a pause between subject and predicate, and the Subject-Predicate sentence often is Comment in a larger Topic-Comment sentence.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NI jëung töi chëuhng</td>
<td>48 chyun, This table—its length is 48 inches,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut</td>
<td>24 chyun, width 24 inches,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gòu</td>
<td>16 chyun, height 16 inches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

3. Adj Nu-M

The adjective can be the center of the predicate in a sentence of implied or explicit comparison, with the number-measure expression following to indicate the amount of the difference in the comparison.

Ex: 

```
S   P
NI jëung fut yát chek.  This one is wider by one foot, i.e., one foot wider than another one (here unspecified).
NI jëung béi gó jëung fut yát chek.  This one, in comparison to that one, is wide by one foot, i.e., This one is one foot wider than that one.
```

(See Drill 5)
c. Measurable adjective sentence in SVO form with yauh as equative verb.

The measurable adjective sentence in the positive degree (as opposed to the comparative degree in examples immediately above) can be expressed in SVO form with yauh as equative verb and the measured adjective phrase (or the Nu-M phrase) as Object.

Ex: 1. NI di bou yauh gei (chek) cheuhng a? How (many feet) long is this cloth?

2. NI di bou yauh sei chek cheuhng. This cloth is 4 feet long.

3. NI jeung toi cheuhng yauh sei chek. This table, the length is four feet.

(See Drill 5)

4. daaih, 'big,' and sai, 'small' used in reference to years of age.

sai is used to mean 'young(er)' in comparing the ages of two people.

Ex: Kauh sai kwon yu (yiit sei). He is (a year) younger than I.

daaih is used to mean 'years of age,' in the question formula.

goi daaih a? 'How many years of age is he?,' 'How old (is he)?'
It is also used to mean 'old(er)' in comparing the ages of two people.

Ex: 1. Kauh goi daih a? How old is he?

2. Kauh bei kwon daih. He is older than I.

(See Drill 5)

5. Frequency words in Cantonese.

In Cantonese frequency words are adverbs which precede the verb concerned:

sihsih dou = always
houdi sih dou = very often, lots of times
yauhsih = sometimes
hou sui = very rarely, seldom, i.e., not often

Ex: Kauh dasheih sihsih dou sihk Junghooi. They always eat Chinese food.

" houdi sih dou " " They eat Chinese food very often.

" yauhsih " " They sometimes eat Chinese food.

" hou sui " " They seldom eat Chinese food.

(See BC and Drill 17)
III. DRILLS

1. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dung ñhdung a?
   S: Ñhhaih géi dung.

   T: Is it cold?
   S: It's not very cold.

   1. Léuhng ñhléuhng a?
      Is it cool?
   2. Hóu ñhhóu a?
   3. Yiht ñhyiht a?
      Is it hot?
   4. Chúhng ñhchúhng a?
      Is it heavy?
   5. Lök ñhlök a?
      Is he smart?
   6. Náahn ñnnáahn a?
      Is it difficult?
   7. Yih ñhyiht a?
      Is it easy?
   8. Góu ñhgóu a?
      Is he tall?
   9. Yáuh móuh cheuimeih a?
      Is it interesting?
      (yáuh cheuimeih = interesting)

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Haih sän ge.
   S: Haih Ñhhaih sän ga?

   It is new.
   Is it new?

   1. Haih gauh ge.
   2. Haih baahk sik ge.
   3. Haih hääk sik ge.
   4. Haih yátyeuhung ge.
   5. Haih sän ge.
   6. Haih yiht ge.
   7. Haih dunsch ge.
   8. Haih daahg ge.
   9. Haih sai ge.
3. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dī bējāu dung āhdung a? /nod/
    S: Hōu dung.
    T: Dī gafe yiht āhiyt a? /shake/
    S: Nhhaih ĝei yiht.
    T: Is the beer cold?
    S: Very cold.
    T: Is the coffee hot?
    S: Not very hot.

    mēih a? /shake/

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Gāmyaht dungdī.
    /kāhmyaht/  T: It's colder today.
    S: Gāmyaht dunggwo kāhmyaht.
    S: It's colder today than yesterday.

1. Nh gihn seutsāam daaihdi.
    /gō gihn/ 1. Nh gihn seutsāam daaihgwō go gihn.
2. Ngōh ĝaan sējihlāu̱h saldi.
    /nēih gāan/ 2. Ngōh ĝaan sējihlāu̱h sāiɡwō nēih ĝāan.
4. Nēih sīnsāang go dāfōgēi
gwaidī. /kēuih go/ 4. Nēih sīnsǎang go dāfōgēi
gwaigwō kēuih go.
5. Wōng Sāang go bēu jœundī.
    /ngōh go/ 5. Wōng Sāang go bēu jœungwō
    ngōh go.
5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nêih gêi gòu a?
   /nêh chek sâu/
   chek =
   foot, feet (long)
   S: Ngôh nêh chek gau
gôu.

1. Nêih jek gêî chûnhg a?
   /sâm gân/
2. Gô tluh yû gêî chûnhg a?
   /(yêt) gân gêî/
3. Nêih dî bou gêî chûnhg a?
   /sâm mâm bun/

+ 4. Nêih go jái gêî daaih a?
   (gêî daaih = (in reference
to age) how old?)
   How old is your son?
   /17 seuî/
   (seui = years (of age))

5. Kêuih go néui gêî daaih a?
   /yahsei seuî/
6. Nêih pângyûh gêî daaih a?
   /sâamsaehp seuî/
7. Nêih tsâiáai gêî daaih a?
   /yahyât seuî/
8. Nêih jëung tôî gêî chûnhg a?
   /luhk chek/

+ 9. Nêih daaiji gêî chûnhg a?
   /saehp chyun/
(chyun = inch)

How long are these chopsticks?
/10 inches/

a. Repeat, expanding with yauh, thus:

T: Nêih yauh gêi gou a?  How tall are you?
/âgh chek gau/

S: Nêoh yauh âgh chek gau.  I am five foot nine inches
    tall.

These chopsticks are 10 inches long.

6. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nêih jek gai chûngh yat gân.  /gô jek/

S: Nêih jek gai chûnhgwo gô jek yat gân.

T: This chicken is one catty heavier.

S: This chicken is one catty heavier than that one.

1. Hëunggông tinhâi hou sêsiu.  /âhahingdeuhn sêsiu/

2. Nêoh go jai gou yat chyân.  /nêh go/
    My son is one inch taller.

3. Nêih jung yinjai gwai yat houh-ji.  /gô jông/

4. Yahtbun faaiji dyûn sêsiu.  /junggwok ge/

5. Gô jëung tôi chëuhng sàam chek.  /nêi jëung/

6. Këuih ge jaijëui lêk houhdô.  /âghô ge/

7. Nêih jek dip daaih sêsiu.  /gô jek/

8. Nêi jëung tôi dyûn lëuhngsàam chyûn.  /gô jëung/

9. Gô jëung yi chûnhg gêi bohng.  /nêi jëung/


11. Hëimohng tingyaht lëuhng houdô.  /gamyah/

12. Nêi go jëung daaih sêsiu.  /gô go/


14. Hëimohng tingyaht lëuhng houdô.  /gamyah/

15. Nêi jëung daaih sêsiu.
13. 廣州廣州去唔去度。/ngon gon/ 13. 廣州廣州去唔去度。/ngon gon mouhgeidou.
14. 魚肉咁大嘅熟。
He is one year older.
/gon/ 14. 魚肉咁大嘅熟。
He is one year older than I.
+ 15. 廣州廣州去唔去度。
/Mouh Saang/ 15. 廣州廣州去唔去度。
Mrs. Ho is one year younger.
Mrs. Ho is one year younger than Mr. Ho.

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nǐ di yǐnjái móuh gam hóusihk. T: These cigarettes are not as good.
/gó di/ S: Nǐ di yǐnjái móuh go dǐ gam hóusihk. S: These cigarettes are not as good as those.

8. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kēuih gōugwo ngón yāt chyun. T: He is one inch taller than I.
S: Kēuih gōu yāt chyun. S: He is one inch taller.
You weigh 5 pounds more
You weigh five pounds more than he does.

135
2. Gâmâyht dunggwô kâhmyaht hóudô.
3. Nî jëung chëuhnggwo gô jëung leuhng chek.
5. Ngôh tiûh pënhnggwo nêih tiûh luhk sàam.
7. Yahtbûn lâahnhtîn dunggwo Hëunggông hóudô.
8. Kêuih go jâî lëkzwô nôh go hóudô.

9. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Nî go blû tûnhng gô
go yâtyeuhng.
/gwai/
S: Nî go blû tûnhng gô
go yâtyeuhng gam gwai.

T: This watch is the same as that one.
S: This watch is as expensive as
that one. or
This one and that one are
both equally expensive.

1. Gâmâyht tûnhng kâhmyaht yât-
 yeuhung. /yiht/
2. Sâamyuht tûnhng Seiyuht yât-
 yeuhung. /sâp/
3. Ngôh bâbê bûnhng mâtma yât-
 yeuhung. /daih/
4. Gwôngdûng choi tûnhng Seuhnghôî
choi yâtyeuhng. /hôu sîhk/
5. Kêuih tûnhng nôh yâtyeuhng.
/goû/
6. Duhh syû tûnhng jouh sîh yât-
yeuhung. /yâuh chêuimeih/
7. Châau mîhn tûnhng tông mîhn
yâtyeuhng. /pênh/
8. Nî go jûng tûnhng gô go yât-
yeuhung. /jiwun/
10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Jüngchoi tühng Sáih- T: Chinese food and Western food are equally expensive.
    yät-    S: Jüngchoi gwaì hò- yeuhung gam gwi.
    S: Jüngchoi gwaì ēh- S: Is Chinese food more expensive
    S: Is Chinese food more expensive
    S: Sáicháan a? than Western food?
    S: Sáicháan a?

1. Châang tühng pihnggwo yät- 1. Châang pêng ēhpênggwo
    yeuhng gam pênhnggwo a?
    yeuhng gam daaih.
3. Ngôh jyuü ge deihfông tühng 3. Ngôh jyuü ge deihfông yiht
    Töhwaan yät-yeuhng gam yiht.
4. Dî bêjáu tühng heïseui yät-yeuhng 4. Dî bêjáu dúng ēhmênggwo
    gam dúng.
5. Yahtbûn tînhéi tühng Töhwaan 5. Yahtbûn tînhéi hóuh ēhmìuoghwo
    ge yät-yeuhng gam hóu.
    ge yät-yeuhng gam sai.
7. Gwôngdôngwâ tühng Gwokyûh 7. Gwôngdôngwâ nàaih ēhmìaaihh-
    yät-yeuhng gam náahgghôhk. ngókwo Gwokyûh a?
   (difficult to learn) Is Cantonese more diff-
   (difficult to learn than) icult to learn than
   Mandarin?

8. Töhwaan tînhéi tühng Yahtbûn 8. Töhwaan tînhéi sâp ēhsâp-
   ge 8. Töhwaan tînhéi sâp ēhsâp-
   gwo Yahtbûn ge a? gwo Yahtbûn ge a?
   a. Repeat, students responding with hâih ēhhaïh question,
   thus:
   T: Jüngchoi tühng Chinese food and Western
   Sáicháan yät- food are both equally
    yeuhng gam gwaï. expensive.
   S: Jüngchoi tühng Are Chinese food and Western
   Sáicháan haïh food equally expensive?
    ēhmìaaih yät-yeuhng
    gam gwi a?

11. Transformation Drill: Transform the sentences from Negative to
    choice-type question.

Ex: T: Nîdî móu gôdî gam T: This isn't as big as that.
    daaih.
S: Nîdî yûuh móu gôdî S: Is this as big as that?
    gam daaih a?
1. Tōihwān mōuh nǐdouh gam yiht.
2. Nǐ deui mōuh gō deui gam fut.
3. Nǐ gihn mōuh gō gihn gam jaak.
4. Hēunggōng tinhēi mōuh Yīnggwok gam dung.
5. Yātyuht mōuh yihyuht gam dung.
6. Hēunggōng ge yihttin mōuh Yīnggwok gam lēuhng.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok tinhēi hōu dung. /Yīnggwok/
     S1: Yīnggwok tinhēi juhng dungdī tīm.
     S2: Haih a, Yīnggwok tinhēi dunggwo Méihgwok.

1. Hēunggōng yihttin hōu yiht. /Wāhseihngdeuhn/
2. Yahtbūn hāaih hōu pēhng. /Daaihluhk/
3. Gwokyū hōu nāahnhokh. /Seuhnhghōiwa/
4. Tōihwān hōu sai. /Hēunggōng/
5. Gāmyaht tinhēi hōu sāp. /kāhmyaht/

1. Tōihwān yāu rhōuh nǐdouh gam yiht a?
2. Nǐ deui yāu mōuh gō deui gam fut a?
3. Nǐ gihn yāu mōuh gō gihn gam jaak a?
4. Hēunggōng tinhēi yāu mōuh Yīnggwok gam dung a?
5. Yātyuht yāu mōuh Yihyuht gam dung a?
6. Hēunggōng ge yihttin yāu mōuh Yīnggwok gam lēuhng a?

T: In America the weather is very cold. /England/
S1: In England the weather is even colder.
S2: Yes, the weather in England is colder than America.

1. Wāhseihngdeuhn yihttin juhng yihdī tīm.
   B: Haih a, Wāhseihngdeuhn yihttin yihtgwo Hēunggōng.

2. Daaihluhk hāaiah juhng pēhngdī tīm.
   B: Haih a, Daaihluhk hāaih pēhnggwo Yahtbūn hāaih.

3. Seuhnhghōiwa juhng nāahnhokh tīm.
   B: Haih a, Seuhnhghōiwa nāahnhohkgwo Gwokyūh.

4. Hēunggōng juhng sāidī tīm.
   B: Haih a, Hēunggōng saigwo Tōihwān.

5. Kāhmyaht juhng sāpī tīm.
/Baatyuht/ 

B: Haih a, Baatyuht yihtgwo Châtyuht.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh sêung oi léuhng jek gâi. /ji leng/ 
S: Ngôh sêung oi léuhng jek ji leng ge gâi. 

1. Ngôh sêung oi tou gâsi. /ji leng/ 
2. Ngôh sêung oi jêung yi. /ji leng/ 
3. Ngôh sêung oi sâm jek bûi. /ji hûw/ 
4. Ngôh sêung oi go dâfôgôi. /jeui sai/ 
   (most, -est) 
5. Ngôh sêung oi gêi go wûn. /jeui leng/ 
6. Ngôh sêung oi deui faaiji. /jeui chêuhng/ 
7. Ngôh sêung oi luhk jek dip. /jeui daaih/ 
8. Ngôh sêung oi jêung tôi. /jeui pêhng/ 

Comment: jeui, 'most', '-est,' is interchangeable with ji.

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Ji daaih gêídô chûn a? /$3.00/ 
S: Ji daaih sâm mân. 

T: How much is (or are) the biggest? (i.e., the biggest one(s)) 
S: The biggest is (or are) three dollars.

1. Ji sai gêídô chûn a? /$5.50/ 
   1. Ji sai âgh go bun.
2. Ji gwai géidō chín a? /$10/
3. Ji gòu géidō chín a? /$25/
4. Ji dääih géidō chín a? /$36/
5. Ji leng géidō chín a? /$25/
6. Ji hōu géidō chín a? /$33/
7. Ji pêhng géidō chín a? /$2/

Comment: In a different context, #7 above can mean 'What's the cheapest (you'll sell it for)?', with the answer being 'The cheapest (I'll sell it for) is $2.00.'

Repeat, with ge, thus:

T: Jeui dääih ge géidō chín a? /$3.00/
S: Jeui dääih ge sääam män.

The meaning is no different from that without -ge.

15. Transformation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngōh sëung oi géi go lengdī ge. S: Bēi géi go lengdī ge ngōh là.
2. T: Ngōh sëung oi gén leuñg gän lengdī ge. S: Bēi leuñg gän lengdī ge ngōh là.

140

Comment: Note that the comparative -dî is used in the example sentence above, and in the problem sentences that follow. In the idiomatic English equivalents the comparative is not required. This use of the comparative parallels that in the following sentence, which you have encountered before:

Ngón go bûu faaidî. My watch is fast.
[my watch faster (than it should be.)]

16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kâhmyaht âhdung. T: It was not cold yesterday.
      S: Kâhmyaht dung  S: Was it cold yesterday?
       âhdung a?

+ 1. Nî tou gâsî hou âhâoutsî a?
   This set of furniture is
   ugly.
   (houtsî =
   nice-looking, pretty)
   (not said in reference to
   people)

1. Nî tou gâsî hou âhâoutsî a?
   Is this set of furniture
   nice-looking?

2. Gâmyaht âhdung.
3. Ngón jëung tôi âhhaih hou
gwai je.
4. Gô gân ük âhhaih hou daaih jë.
5. Këuih ge sànsëui âhhaih géi
gou.
6. Hëunggông ükJou âhpèhng ga.
7. Ngón go gûngyâhn (ge) yâhn-
gûng âhhaih hou gwai.
8. Këuih go jâi âhhaih géi lêk.

7. Nëih go gûngyâhn (ge) yâhn-
gûng gwai âhgwai a?
8. Këuih go jâi lêk âhlêk a?
17. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh yahtyaht dōu chōut gāai sihk faahn ge. /sihk dōu/
S: Ngôh siheih dōu chōut gāai sihk faahn ge.

T: I eat out everyday. /always/
S: I always eat out.

1. Ngôh siheih dōu chōut gāai sihk faahn ge.
+ /hôudô sih dōu/ (very often)

2. Ngôh hóudô sih dōu chōut gāai sihk faahn ge. /yâuhsieh/ (sometimes)

3. Ngôh yâuhsieh chōut gāai sihk faahn ge.
+ /hôusiùu/ (rarely, seldom)

4. Ngôh hóusiùu chōut gāai sihk faahn ge. /yahtyaht dōu/

5. Ngôh yahtyaht dōu tâi dihnsi̤h ge. /hôusiùu/

6. Ngôh hóusiùu tâi dihnsi̤h ge. /yâuhsieh/

7. Ngôh yâuhsieh tâi dihnsi̤h ge.
+ /hôudô sih dōu/

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) hî tâan = seaside
2) Chîa Sâu Wân = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]
3) Chinséui Wân = Repulse Bay
4) Chinséui Wân = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South shore of Hong Kong island.
5) Chekchûh = Stanley, a village and beach on the south-eastern tip of Hong Kong island.
6) taai = too
7) fôngbiuâ = convenient
8) Lóu léih = 'Old Lee' -- Lóu + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends.
9) mat = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in 'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!' 
10) sêhng yihsahp seui = a full 20 years 
11) Lóuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man' 
12) yáuh chîn = rich, wealthy 
13) wàh...hâai! = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
1. My it's hot today!
2. Hong Kong is hotter than the U.S.
3. I think Washington is a bit hotter.
4. How old is your father?
5. My elder brother is 6 feet tall, but I'm just 5 foot 10.
6. Her son isn't as smart at Mrs. Lee's.
7. Is that new table you bought very heavy?
8. We often go out to have tea on Sundays.
9. Which do you think is easier--Mandarin or Cantonese?
10. How much does the biggest one cost?
11. Please give me a dozen of your nicest oranges.
12. This shirt is $1.00 cheaper.

B. And he replies:
1. Yes, it's hotter then yesterday.
2. In August Hong Kong and Washington are both equally hot.
3. I like hot weather, I don't like cold weather.
4. He's 55 years old. He's three years older than my mother.
5. How tall is your father?
6. Is her daughter smart?
7. Not as heavy as our old one.
8. My husband has to work on Sundays, so we rarely go out on Sunday.
9. I think Mandarin is easier than Cantonese.
10. The biggest is $20.00.
11. I'm sorry, we're all sold out.
12. OK, give me the cheaper one.
LESSON 21  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

14. These trousers are an inch longer than these.  14. Give me the shorter ones.
15. These trousers aren't as wide as those.  15. These are even narrower.
16. Are these cigarettes the long kind?  16. No, those are the short kind. Do you want the long kind?

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 21

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>běi</td>
<td>in comparison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>běi-gau</td>
<td>in comparison, comparatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>chùnhdō</td>
<td>more or less, approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>chek</td>
<td>foot (measurement)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>chùnhng</td>
<td>heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>chyun</td>
<td>inch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>daaih</td>
<td>in ref. to age: years of age 'old' in How old are you, I am older than he.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>X dim?</td>
<td>QM: How about X? What's X like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>duwng</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>gěi daaih?</td>
<td>Ph: how old (as in 'How old are you?')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>gěi chùnhng?</td>
<td>Ph: how heavy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>goh-kāk</td>
<td>v: feel, consider, realize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>gōu</td>
<td>adj: tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>gwo, in Adj-gwo</td>
<td>bf: [exceed, surpass] used to form the comparative: more Adj than, Adj-er than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>hōu-dōi</td>
<td>advPh: very often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>hōo-slu</td>
<td>advPh: rarely, seldom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>hōutāi</td>
<td>adj: nice-looking, pretty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>jeui</td>
<td>bf: most..., exceedingly...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>bf: (superlative) most..., exceedingly...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>juhng</td>
<td>adv: even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>juhng...Adj-di</td>
<td>Ph: even more Adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>láahng-tīn</td>
<td>Tw: winter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>lèk</td>
<td>adj: smart, brilliant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>liëuhng</td>
<td>adj: cool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

144
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>adj:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>naahn</td>
<td>difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>naahnhohk</td>
<td>difficult to learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>sai</td>
<td>younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>sap</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>seu</td>
<td>years of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>alhsih</td>
<td>always, at all times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>tinhei</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Tōihwǎanyân</td>
<td>Taiwanese person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>tūhng.X.yātyeuhng</td>
<td>Ph: the same as X.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>yāuh cheuimeih</td>
<td>interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>yâuhsih</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>yīh</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>yih</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>yihjtîtîn</td>
<td>TW: summer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Miss Jones, a young foreigner employed as secretary in Hong Kong, is talking to her friend, Miss Lee, a young Cantonese employed in the same office:)

Júnggwokyáhn

góngdāk gěi hóu
Néih ge Gwóngdǔngwá yìhgá
góngdāk gěi hóu bo.

Ngoighwokyáhn

'You praise me too much.'
[over-speak], overdo it
Middling, indifferent, so-
so, just scrapes by

Gwojéung laak; māhmádaí jē.
leuhnjeuhn
Ngóh góngdāk hóu leuhnjeuhn ga.

Júnggwokyáhn

kinggái
túhng néih kinggái
ngāamgnāam (āamām)
héisáu
ngāamgnāam héisáu
jih

sé jih
héisáu hohk sé jih
Ngóh daihyātchi túhng néih king-
gái, néih ngāamgnāam héisáu
hohk sé jih, haih šhhaih né?

Ngoighwokyáhn

sailóu
Haih. Ngóh túhng ngóh sailóu
léuhng go yāṭcháih hohk.

Ngoighwokyáhn

youngest brother
That's right. My youngest
brother and I are studying

146
Hokdak dim a?

Jungwokyan

How are you doing?

Ngoiwokyan

yaab

terrible, awful

Sodak hou yaab.

My writing is awful.

Ngoh sailou sodak mhcho

my younger brother writes

ngoh sodak mouh keuih gam

pretty well

leng

I don't write as well as

Ngoh sailou sodak mhcho, daahnhaih

My younger brother writes pretty

ngoh sodak mouh keuih gam leng.

well, but I don't write as

well as he.

Jungwokyan

(seen some Chinese characters written

on a piece of scratch paper on the desk:)

Ni dji jih haih mhhaiah nei

These characters, are they ones

se ga?

that you wrote?

Ngoiwokyan

Mouh cho.

That's right.

Jungwokyan

Sodak mhcho a.

They're written quite well.

Hohkdak gei faai bo.

You learn fast!

Ngoiwokyan

Sinsaan hou je.

It's just that the teacher is

Ah! Ngoh tennghinwah nei jyu

good.

Jungchoi jyudak hou housihk.

Oh--I hear that you cook Chinese

gan nei hohk

food very well.

Ngoh hou seung gan nei hohkhah.

learn from you [follow you

I'd like very much to learn

from you.

Jungwokyan

Neih gwojung je, ngoh ahdak ge.

You praise me too much, I'm

no good.

147
LESSON 22  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

**Ngoihgwokyàhn**

taai too, excessively
him humble
Néih taai him laak. You're too modest.

---

B. Recapitulation:

**Jünggwokyàhn**

Néih ge Gwóngdùngwá yihgá Say! Your Cantonese is pretty
góngdák gēi hōu bo. good now.

**Ngoihgwokyàhn**

Gwojéung laak; màhmádéi jō. You overdo it—it barely scrapes
Ngóh góngdák hōu leuhnjuehn ga. by. I speak very stupidly.

**Jünggwokyàhn**

Ngóh daihyātchí tūhng néih king- The first time I talked with you,
gái, néih ngāaang àam hēisâu you had just begun to learn
hohk sé jih, haih ānhhaih nē? Chinese characters, isn't
that right?

**Ngoihgwokyàhn**

Haih. Ngóh tūhng ngóh sailōu That's right. My younger brother
lāuhng go yātcháih hohk. and I are studying together.

**Jünggwokyàhn**

Hohkdák dim a? How are you doing?

**Ngoihgwokyàhn**

Sédkh hōu yáih. My writing is awful.
Ngóh sailōu sédkh ānhcho, daahn- My younger brother writes pretty
haih ngóh sédkh mōuh kēiūh well, but I don't write as
gam leng. well as he.

**Jünggwokyàhn**

Nī dī jih haih ānhhaih néih sē gas These characters, are they
ones that you wrote?

**Ngoihgwokyàhn**

Mōuh cho. That's right.

**Jünggwokyàhn**

Sédkh ānhcho ā. They're written quite well.
Hohkdák gēi faai bo. You learn fast!
**CANTONES E BASIC COURSE**  
**LESSON 22**

**Ngoihgwokyahn**

Sîmmâang hóu jî.  
It's just that the teacher is good.

Aî Ngôh têngginwah néih jyû  
Oh--I hear that the Chinese food you cook is delicious.
Jûngchêi jyûdâk hâu houisihk.  
I'd like very much to study with you.
Ngôh hóu séung gân néih hohkhâh.

**Jûnggwokyahn**

Néih gwojêung jî, ngôh âmdâk ge.  
You praise me too much, I'm no good.

**Ngoihgwokyahn**

Néih tasi him laaki  
You're too modest!

---

**II. NOTES**

**A. Culture Notes**

**Sibling.**

Brothers and sisters in Cantonese are specified according to their age in relation to oneself.

- Ex: 1. aô  
  elder brother  
- 2. gâje  
  elder sister  
- 3. sailôu  
  younger brother  
- 4. sâmûi  
  younger sister, (also: mûi, mmûi)

There is no word for 'brother' referring to one person, or 'sister' referring to one person, though there is a collective noun for 'brothers': hîngdaih, 'elder and younger brothers,' and one for 'sisters': jîmûih, 'elder and younger sisters'.

- Ex: 1. Néih yâuh mâu hîngdaih a?  
  Do you have any brothers?  
  [elder and younger brothers]

- 2. Néih yâuh mâu jîmûih a?  
  Do you have any sisters?  
  [elder and younger sisters]

- 3. Néih ūkkîi yâuh géidô  
  hîngdoih jîmûih a?  
  How many brothers and sisters are there in your family?  
  [at your house]

149
LESSON 22  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Within the family children call their elder siblings by their rank in the family and their younger siblings by their given names.

Ex: You are the third born of five sons. You call your elder two brothers and your younger two as follows:

1 Daaihgō  #4 by given name.  Ex: A Kihn
2 Yihgō  #5 by given name.  Ex: A Kihn
3 (you)

B. Structure Notes

1. Manner patterns in Cantonese (how something is done)

The manner in which an action is carried out (fast, slow, well, badly, etc.) is expressed by two patterns: 1) V-dāk hōu Adj. = Verb in such and such a way; and 2) hōu Adj. V. = Verb in such and such a way.

The former is very common, the latter used with only a few adjectives.

V dāk hōu Adj.

Ex: Kēuih hāahngdāk hōu faai.  He walks very fast. The way he walks is very fast.

hōu Adj. V.

Kēuih hōu kānmlhihk duhk syu.  He studies very hard.

a. Verb dāk hōu Adjective = Verb in such and such a way

1) V-dāk hōu Adj. is a pattern expressing the way the action of the verb is/was done, or the way the action turns/turned out.

Ex: 1. Kēuih hāahngdāk hōu faai.  He walks fast. The way he walks is fast.

2. Kēuih jouhādāk taaai daaiah laak.  She made it too big. She made it in such a way that it was too big.

2) The affirmative, negative, and question forms operate on the adjective portion of the phrase.

Ex: sēdāk hōu chingchō = writes clearly; written clearly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>V-dāk hōu Adj.</th>
<th>Kēuih sēdāk hōu chingchō.</th>
<th>He writes clearly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mi dī jīn sēdāk hōu chingchō.</td>
<td>These words are written very clearly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>V-dāk māhái hōu Adjective</td>
<td>Nēoh sēdāk mchingchō.</td>
<td>I don't write clearly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>V-dāk Adj. m̄h Adj.</td>
<td>Nēîh sēdāk ching mchingchō?</td>
<td>Do you write clearly?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See BC and Drills 2-14)
3) *dim?* 'how?' can substitute in the adjective position in this pattern.

Ex: *V-dāk dim a?* How is it/was it *V*-ed?, How does subject *V*?

1. Kēuih háahngdāk dim a? How does he walk? What is the
   manner in which he walks?

2. Dī béng jíngdāk dim a? How did the cookies turn out?
   How did the cookie-making go?

   (See Drill 3)

4) Subject patterns in *V-dāk hōu Adj* sentences

a) Loose relationship of Subject and Predicate.

In keeping with the loose relationship of subject and predicate in Chinese sentences, (see Note 6, Lesson 3), the Subject of a *V-dāk hōu Adj* sentence can be the performer of verb, or the thing performed upon, without any change in the verb form.

Example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Kēuih</td>
<td>jyouthdāk hōu ngāamjuk. She made it in such a way that it fits very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cihn sāam</td>
<td>jyouthdāk hōu ngāamjuk. The dress is made in such a way that it fits very well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In English the two types of subject (performer and performed upon) require the active and passive voice of the verb respectively, but in Chinese note that the same verb form is used whether the subject is the performer of the action (Kēuih above), or the object performed upon (Cihn sāam above).

b) Subject types for *Verb-dāk hōu Adjective* sentences

In addition to performer and performed-upon discussed above, a third subject type is the SVO subject. Examples of the three types are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. Kēuih      | jyouthdāk
   hōu sāamjuk. She made it in such a way that it is very tasty.|
| 2. Dī choi    | hōu
   sāamjuk. The food has been cooked so it is very tasty.|
| 3. Kēuih jyú Jūngchoi | |

(See Drill 3)
LESSON 22  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

5) Contracted form with SVO subject

Some SVO, Vdâk hóu Adjective types permit omission of the
V-dâk portion, leaving the SVO subject to precede the predicate
Adjective portion directly.

Compare:


(See Drill 11)

b. hóu Adj. + Verb = Verb in such and such a way

1) hóu Adj + V expresses how, in what manner, a V is or was
done. Note that the Verb does not use dâk. Only a few
adjectives use this pattern. One of them, for example, is
kânhlihk, 'industrious.'

Kéuih hóu kânhlihk duhk ayù. He studies very industriously.
or, He is very industrious
in his studies.

(See Drill 15)

2) The hóu Adj V pattern can be rephrased with the V transposed
to the center of an SVO subject, and the hóu Adj by itself
forming the predicate.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Kéuih</td>
<td>hóu kânhlihk duhk ayù. He is very industrious in his studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Kéuih duhk ayù hóu kânhlihk.</td>
<td>(The way) he studies is very industrious.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Verbal comparison forms: A \{ V_{a} or V_{b} \} more Adj in relation to B

a. V more Adj than

1) A V-dâk Adj-gwo. A V_a/V_b more Adj than B does/did.

(See BC and Drill 12)

2) A V-dâk bêi. A V_a/V_b more Adj than B does/did.

(See Drill 12.4)
b. Y not as Adj as

1) A v-dâk mûuh B gam Adj.  
   A Vs/Ved not as Adj as B 
   does/did.  
   (See BC and Drill 13)

2) A mûuh B v-dâk gam Adj.  
   A Vs/Ved not as Adj as B  
   (See Drill 13 Comment)

c. Y equally Adj

   A v-dâk tûuhng B yâtyeuhng  
   A and B V equally Adj.  
   (See Drill 14)

3. hîiseû, 'begin.'

   Another common word for 'begin' is hîoihi, used interchangeably 
   with hîiseû.

4. taai, 'excessively,' 'too'

   taai + Adj, 'excessively Adj;' 'too Adj.'

   taai + Adj is different in emphasis from Adj-dî, though both can be 
   translated into English as 'too Adj.' The import of taai X is 'ex-
   cessively X,' 'much too X,' whereas the import of X-dî is 'a bit on 
   the X side,' a little X-er than the ideal.'

   Ex: Neiûh taai him laak.  You're too modest! 
   (excessively modest, much too modest)

   Tiûh kwûhâm chëuhnûrdî.  The skirt is too long. 
   (a bit longer than it should be)

   (Students who have previously studied Mandarin should guard 
   against using taai in Cantonese everywhere where tâi would 
   be appropriate in Mandarin. Of times where Mandarin would have 
   tâi, Cantonese has Adj-dî. The Adj-dî form in Cantonese 
   corresponds to the Adj + (yi)dyân form in Mandarin, but is 
   more widespread in use.)
III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh bân bă ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.
   /màhm/ 
   S: Ngôh màhmá ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.
   S: My mother's English is very good.

1. Ngôh saimúi ge Yìng-màhn jëun. /gài/ 
   1. Ngôh gài ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.
      My elder sister's English is very good.

2. Ngôh gài ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun. /agô/ 
   2. Ngôh agô ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.
      My elder brother's English is very good.

3. Ngôh agô ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun. /sailôu/ 
   3. Ngôh sailôu ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.
      My younger brother's English is very good.

4. Ngôh sailôu ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun. /go mûi/ 
      My younger sister's English is very good.

5. Ngôh go mûi ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun. /gûngyân/ 
   5. Ngôh gûngyân ge Yìng-màhn hòu jëun.

Comment: mûi and saimúi both mean 'younger sister' and are
interchangeable. However, as noun head in a possessive
NP, saimúi can follow the possessive pronoun directly,
and mûi requires either the Measure ge (or di), or
the subordinating ge between possessive pronoun and
noun head.

Ex: Ngôn (go) saimúi (preferred without go)
ngôh go mûi (go or ge required)

2. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh gài ge sëdâk hòu chîngchô.
   S: Ngôh gài ge sëdâk mà-háih géi chîngchô.
   S: My elder sister doesn't write clearly, or writes unclearly.

1. Ngôh sailôu hohkâk hòu lêk. My younger brother is
clever in his studies.
2. Ngóh sai... ēdák hōu leng.

+ 3. Ngóh āgō gôngdāk hōu lāuhléih.
   My elder brother speaks fluently.


5. Ngóh saisúi ge bēng jingdāk
gēi hóusihk.

6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdōngwá
gōngdāk gēi hōu.

   His car is running very fast.

+++ 8. Chísō lauhdāk hōu gānyiu.
The toilet is leaking quite seriously.
chísō = toilet

   lauh- = to leak
gānyiu = serious, important

---

3. Response Drill

Ex: T: Agō sēdāk dīm a?
    /hōu yáih bo/
S: Agō sēdāk hōu yáih bo.

+ 1. Sēuihāu lauhdāk dīm a?
    /hōu gānyiu bo/
   How's the leak in the water-pipes?

2. Ngóh saisúi hōhkdāk dīm a?
    /māhcho ā/

3. Chísō lauhdāk dīm a?
    /mâhhaih hōu gānyiu jē/

4. Kēuih sailōu gôngdāk dīm a?
    /hōu lāuhléih bo/

5. Agō jouhdāk dīm a? /mâhmádēi jē/

---

2. Ngóh sailōu sēdāk ânhhaih gēi leng.

3. Ngóh āgō gôngdāk ânhhaih gēi lāuhléih.


5. Ngóh saisúi ge bēng jingdāk
   ânhhaih gēi hóusihk.

6. Ngóh go múi ge Gwóngdōngwá
   gōngdāk ânhhaih gēi hōu.

7. Kēuih ga chē hōidāk ânhhaih
gēi faai.
   His car doesn't drive very fast.

8. Chísō lauhdāk ânhhaih gēi
gānyiu.
The toilet isn't leaking very badly.
6. Gājē jaːc득 dīm a?
/hóu leuhnejuhn ga/

7. Kēuih yāuhdāk dīm a?
/hóu lēk ga/
How does he swim? or
How's his swimming?
He swims very well. or
He's clever at swimming.

8. Kēuih gōngdāk dīm a?
/hóu saisēng ga/
How does he speak?
/very softly/
saisēng =
small sound; in a small voice
He speaks very softly. or
He speaks in a low (i.e., not loud) voice.

9. Kēuih sēdāk dīm a?
/bēigaau chingchō/

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kēuih gōngdāk hōu lāuhleih. /Yingmānn/
S: Kēuih gōng Yingmānn gōngdāk hōu lāuhleih.

1. Kēuih háahngdāk hōu maaahn. 
/louh/
1. Kēuih háahng louh háahngdāk hōu maaahn.

2. Kēuih táidāk hōu faai. /syù/
2. Kēuih tái syù táidāk hōu faai.

3. Kēuih yuhngdāk hōudō. /chín/

/Gwokyūn/

5. Kēuih dàdāk mĥcho. /páai/
5. Kēuih dá páai dādāk mĥcho.

/yāuhsēui/

/sāam/
5. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Këuih jîngdák hîu hôusiâkh. /bêng/
S: Këuih ge bêng jîng-
dák hîu hôusiâkh.

T: She bakes well. [She bakes tasty.] /cakes/
S: Her cakes are very tasty.
[Her cakes baked very tasty.]

1. Këuih sêdák hîu chîngchó.
/jih/
    She writes clearly.

2. Këuih gôngdák hîu lâuhleih.
/Gwôngdùngwâ/

3. Këuih dâdák mâhcho. /bô/

4. Këuih gôngdák hîu jêun.
/Yîngmânh/

5. Këuih maaïhdák hîu pêhng.
/yêh/

/sâam/

7. Këuih jûdák hîu hîu. /yêh/

8. Këuih gôngdák bêigau hîu.
/Yîngmân/

6. Expansion Drill:

Ex: T: Ngôh gâjê ge bêng jîngdák hîu hîu.
/mûi/
S: Ngôh gâjê ge bêng jîngdák hîu hîu,
ngôh go mûi dôu jîngdák hîu hîu.

T: My elder sister makes good cakes. [My elder sister's cakes are made very well.]
S: My elder sister makes good cakes, and so does my younger sister.

1. Ngôh aôô ge bô dâdák mâhcho.
/sailou/
    My elder brother plays ball well.

2. Ngôh gâjê jûngyi dà páai.
/saîmûi/

/nêui/

/jâi/

1. Ngôh aôô ge bô dâdák mâhcho,
ngôh go sailou dôu dâ- dák mâhcho.

2. Ngôh gâjê jûngyi dà páai,
ngôh saîmûi dôu jûngyi dâ.

3. Ngôh mâhâm séung heui Yahtbûn,
ngôh go nêui dôu séung heui.

4. Ngôh bâhû jûngyi tâi dihnsih,
ngôh go jâi dôu.
5. Ngóh gâjê sêung hohk yauhséui.  
/mui/

T: Her cookies are very well made,  
or: Her cookies are very good.

S: Köuih ge bêng jingdák hou houisihk.  
/negative/

S: Köuih ge bêng jingdák énhaih géi houisihk.

S: Köuih ge bêng jingdák hou houisihk.  
/question/

S: Köuih ge bêng jingdák hou énhouisihk a?

1. Köuih ge Gwongdungwâ gông-  
dák hou hou.  
/negative/

2. Köuih ga chê háangdák hou  
faai.  
/question/

/negative/

4. Köuih dî gatê jingdák hou  
houyâm.  
/question/

5. Nî ga bâai hoidâk hou faai.  
/question/

6. Go chisô lauhdák hou gányiu.  
/question/

6. Go chisô lauhdák gân énhgan-  
yiu a?
8. Transformation Drill: Transform the cue sentences into question sentences.

Ex: T: Kéuih sé jih sèdák m’hchingchó. T: Her words are not very clearly written.
  S: Kéuih sé jih sèdák ching m’hchingchó a?
  S: Are her words clearly written?

1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdák hóu saiiseng;
   (góng yéh = say-thíng, i.e., to talk)
  1. Kéuih góng yéh góngdák sai mhsaiseng a?

2. Kéuih yauhseuí yauhdák hóu lék.
  2. Kéuih yauhseuí yauhdák lék mhlék a?

  3. Kéuih góng Gwóngdúngwa góngdák leuñ mhleuhñjeuhn a?

4. Kéuih jíng cháan jíngdák mhóusiikh.
  4. Kéuih jíng cháan jíngdák hóu mhóusiikh a?

5. Kéuih háahng louh háahngdák hóu maahn.
  5. Kéuih háahng louh háahngdák maahn mhmaahn a?

1. Alteration Drill: Change from an NP subject to an SVO subject.

Ex: T: Kéuih ge jih sèdák hóu hóu. T: His handwriting is very nice.
  S: Kéuih sé jih sèdák hóu hóu. S: He writes a nice hand.

1. Kéuih ge Gwóngdúngwa góngdák gèi hóu.

2. Kéuih ge nàai dàdák hóu faai.
  2. Kéuih dà phái dàdák hóu faai.


4. Kéuih ge jih sèdák m’hcho.
  4. Kéuih sé jih sèdák m’hcho.

5. Kéuih ge wá góngdák mhlàuh-leiñh.
  5. Kéuih góng wá góngdák mhlàuh-leiñh.

6. Kéuih ge wá góngdák m’hchingchó.
  6. Kéuih góng wá góngdák m’hchingchó.
10. Alteration Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih jíng chān jíngdāk hòu hòu.
   S: Kéuih hòu wúih jíng chān.

   T: She cooks meals well.
   S: She's a terrific cook.

   (wúih = can, is able to,
capable of... hòu wúih =
does a good job of...)

2. T: Kéuih ge chān jíngdāk hòu hòu.
   S: Kéuih hòu wúih jíng chān.

   T: His meals are well prepared.
   S: He's a terrific cook.

1. Kéuih máaih yéh máaihdāk hòu hòu.

   1. Kéuih hòu wúih máaih yéh.
      She really knows how to buy things.
      (for example, she gets a good price, or she selects the good and leaves the bad, etc.)

2. Kéuih yáuhséui yáuhdāk hòu hòu.


4. Kéuih ge sāam joudāk hòu hòu.

5. Kéuih ge bénj jíngdāk hòu hòu.


7. Kéuih ge páiái dádāk hòu hòu.

8. Kéuih paak ché pãokdāk hòu hòu.

   a. Repeat 1 - 4 as negative.
   b. Repeat 5 - 8 as question.
11. Reduction Drill

Ex: T: Kœuih jà chê jâdãk hōu faai.  
   S: Kœuih jà chê hōu faai.

T: He drives very fast.             
   [He (regarding) driving a car, drives very fast.]

S: He drives very fast.

1. Gâjê duhk syû duhkdaik hōu lêk.
2. Gâjê gông yêh gôngdaik hōu làuhleih.
4. Gâjê gaau syû gaau daik hōu chingchô.
5. Gâjê hâahngh louh hâahnghdaik hōu maahn.
6. Gâjê jyû yêh jyûdâk hōu hûousihk.

Comment: The form without Dâk is suitable in some cases, but not all. We give it to you here for recognition, but advise you not to make up a sentence on this pattern unless you have heard someone say it.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kœuih sê jîn sêdãk hōu chingchô.  
   S: Kœuih sê jîn sêdãk chingchô gwo ngôh.

T: He writes very clearly, or His handwriting is very clear.
   S: His handwriting is clearer than mine, or He writes clearer than I.

1. Agô gông wâ gôngdaik hōu làuhleih.
2. Ngôh gâjê dá pâai dádâk hōu lêk.
3. Mâhmâ máaih yêh màiâhdâk hōu pêngng.
5. Ngôh sailôu yûuhseui yûuhdâk hōu faai.

5. Ngôh sailôu yûuhseui yûuhdâk faai gwo ngôh.
7. Ngóh sín-sâng yâm bêjáu yâm-dák hòudê. He drinks a lot of beer. or
    He is capable of drinking a lot of beer. He can drink a lot of beer.
    a. Repeat with teacher cueing as before, students responding with the following type of comparison:
       T: Kêuih séjih sêdák hòu chingchô. He writes very clearly.
       S: Kêuih séjih bêi ngóh chingchô. He writes more clearly than I.

Comment: With the bêi verbal comparison, the following variations are also possible:

1. Kêuih sé jih sêdák bêi ngóh chingchô. He writes more clearly than I.
2. Kêuih sêdák bêi ngóh chingchô. He writes more clearly than I.

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih gông yêh gông-dák ñhâu-yâh-leih. He doesn't speak fluently.
    S: Kêuih gông yêh gông-dák mòuh ngóh gam ñâu-leih. He doesn't speak as fluently as I.

1. Kêuih saimûî dá pái dá-dák êhleik.
2. Ngóh sailôú sé jih sêdák êhleik.

Comment: An alternate form of the above pattern is:

A mòuh ê V-dák gam Adj. A doesn't/didn't V as Adj as Ê.
14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih ge tông jing-dák hòu hòusînh.
LESSON 22
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

gēi faai. /affirmative/
S: Kēuih dá gāai
dādāk hōu faai.

1. Kēuih ēnhaih gēi wūi gōng
Swokyūh. /affirmative/
2. Kēuih ge jih sēdāk hōu leng.
negative/
3. Kēuih yāuhsēui yāuhdāk hōu
faai. /question/
4. Kēuih māaih yēh māaihdāk
hōu pēhng. /question/
5. Kēuih ge wā gōngdāk ēnhaih
gēi chingcho. /affirmative/
6. Kēuih ēnhaih yēh gōngdāk hōu
daaihsēng. /negative/

1. Kēuih hōu wūi gōng Swokyūh.
2. Kēuih ge jih sēdāk ēnhaih
gēi leng.
3. Kēuih yāuhsēui yāuhdāk faai
ēnhaih a?
4. Kēuih māaih yēh māaihdāk
pēhng mēhng a?
5. Kēuih ge wā gōngdāk hōu
chingcho.
6. Kēuih ēnhaih yēh gōngdāk
ēnhaih gēi daaihsēng.

16. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Nēih tūngx bīngō
kīnggāi a?
B: Tūngx ngōh go mūi.
A: Nēihdeih kīng nó-
yēh a?
B: Ngōndeih kīnghān
heui bīndouh honk
Yīngmāhn jē.

A: Who are you chatting with?
B: With my younger sister.
A: What are you chatting about?
B: We're talking about where we
went to study English; that's
all. (or Where we are going
for studying English)

1. A. ........................?
B. ........................ sāilōu.
A. ........................?
B. ........................ kīnghān heui bīndouh
yāuhseui................

2. A. ........................?
B. ........................ sāimūi.
A. ........................?
B. ........................ heui bīndouh lēuih-
hāhng......
3. A. ................?
   B. ............gājē.
   A. ................?
   B. .......heui bindouh tái hei....
4. A. ................?
   B. ............agō.
   A. ................?
   B. ............gāmyaht ge tinhei....
5. A. ................?
   B. ............māhmā.
   A. ................?
   B. .......heui bindouh dá pāai....
6. A. ................?
   B. ............bāhbā.
   A. ................?
   B. .......heui bindouh lāuhhohk...

17. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Néih géisih hai-
   saú hohk jyu
   faahn ga? /saahp
   seui gōjān, jauh/
   S: Néih saahp seui
   S: when I was 10, I started to
   gōjān jauh haiçau
   hohk jyu faahn ge
   learn to cook.

2. T: Néih géisih hai-
   saú hohk jyu
   faahn ga? /git-
   jūn, sinjī/
   S: Néih géisih haiçau
   S: when I was 10, I started to
   jī haiçau hohk
   jyu faahn ga ja.
1. Ngón duhkh daaihhok gójän, sinji hêisau hokh yâuh-seui ga ja.
2. Ngón gâjê daaihhok bêtjô yihp, jauh hêisau hokh jâ chê ge laak.
3. Köujh saimûi sahn chât seui gójän, jauh hêisau jouh sîh ge laak.
5. Ngón go jâi sahn ho yuht jauh hêisau hokh hââanh louh ga jauh.

It was only several years ago that H.K. began to have Chinese University.

18. Expansion Drill

T: My younger sister is learning to write. /industriously/
S: My younger sister works hard at learning to write.
[My younger sister industriously learns to write.]

1. Ngón sailôu duhkh syû. /lâahn/
My younger brother is studying. /lazy, idle/

2. Ngón gâjê sé jih. /lâahn/
3. Ngón go müi hokh Yîngmûn. /kähnlîhk/
4. Ngón bâhba jouh sîh. /kähnlîhk/
5. Ngón agô jâ chê. /sîusâm/ [careful]
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING
(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)
Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) siu ho k = elementary school
2) sihk ngaanjau = sihk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
1. My younger brother speaks Cantonese better than I.
2. These characters are not written very clearly.
3. Does your elder sister speak Cantonese fluently?
4. I hear you cook Chinese food very well.
5. Her handwriting is terrible.
6. Is your watch running on time?
7. The water is dripping [leaking] pretty badly.
8. She speaks in a very small voice.
9. He drives a car too fast.
10. Two years ago he began to study writing Chinese characters.
11. Who are you chatting with? What are you talking about?
12. My elder brother is very industrious in his studies.
13. When did you begin studying Cantonese?

B. And he replies:
1. You're too modest—you speak very well.
2. Who was it that wrote them?
3. She speaks more fluently than I do.
4. You praise me too much—I'm no good!
5. She's just begun to learn to write Chinese characters.
6. Running right on time—it's now 4:15.
7. Can you fix it?
8. Ask her to speak a little louder.
9. He doesn't drive as fast as my younger brother.
10. He writes pretty well now [not bad].
11. With my friend. We're talking about studying Cantonese, that's all.
12. Is your younger brother also industrious in his studies?
13. It was just three months ago that I began.
14. Does your younger sister swim well?
14. Not bad, but she swims not as well as my elder sister.
15. The way I swim is terrible!
15. Not so! You swim pretty well.
16. He plays mahjong very fast.
16. Yes---. I don't play as fast as he.
17. My father drives a car carefully.
17. Does your mother drive carefully?
18. That child is quite smart but he is lazy in his studies.
18. His elder brother is also in his studies.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 22

1. 𤆀 Statements
   adv: just, only a moment ago
2. 𤀂 toilet
3. 𤀁 ago
4. 𤀖 grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells how verb is done, or what result of verb is.
5. 𤀞 from as in: learn from someone
6. 𤀘 important, serious
7. 𤀙 say things, i.e. to talk
8. 𤀞 'You praise me too much.' [response to compliment]
9. 𤀚 run (of watches)
10. 𤀠 begin
11. 𤀡 modest
12. 𤀃 drive (a car)
13. 𤀄 does a good job of V-ing, is good at V-ing
14. 𤀅 ...ago (when used after numbered time expression, as in '3 years ago')
15. 𤀖 written word, written figure, Chinese character
16. 𤀗 industrious
17. 𤀘 have a chat, talk casually
18. 𤀘 lazy, idle
19. 𤀘 leak
20. 𤀖 fluent in speech, fluently
21. 𤀖 clumsy, awkward, stupid
| 22. mǎhmádéi | PH: middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just
scraps by |
| 23. múi | n: younger sister |
| 24. ngämngäm | adv: just, only a moment ago |
| 25. sailóu | TÀ/N: younger brother |
| 26. saisèng | adj: quiet-voiced, soft (opposite of loud) in
regard to speech [small-sound] |
| 27. sē jih | VO: to write [write words] |
| 28. sūnhāuh | n: water faucet, water pipes |
| 29. sūsām | adj: careful |
| 30. taai | adv: too, excessively |
| 31. yáih | adj: terrible, awful |
I. BASIC CONVERSATION
A. Buildup:
(A tourist in a hotel in Hong Kong has rung for the roomboy:)

sihjái

Sihjái

fanfu

Sihjái

Sīnsāang yáuh méyéh fānfū a?

Yes sir—you called? [what instructions does the gentleman have?]

Yàuhaak

Yàuhaak

yàuhaak

sái

I have some clothes to be washed.

Ngóh yáuh dī sām yiu sái ge.

Sihjái

Sihjái

Hòu—běi ngóh jau ēk laak.

Fine—give them to me and they'll be done.

Yàuhaak

Yàuhaak

hauhyaht

the day after tomorrow

jiujóu

morning

Ngóh hauhyaht jiujóu yiu jau laak.

I'm leaving the day after

tomorrow in the morning.

sáidákchit

able to get (it) washed in
time

Sái àhsáidákchit nē?

Will you be able to get them
washed in time?

Sihjái

Sihjái

Dāk ē.

Yes indeed.

hahjau

afternoon

níngfāan

carry back

níngfāanlāih

bring back

hahjau níngfāanlāih

bring (it) back in the

afternoon

Tīgāyht hahjau yātdīnhng níng-
fāanlāih běi nēih.

We'll bring it back to you

tomorrow afternoon without fail.
Yauhhaak

Gâm, ènhói néih tûnhg ngoûh nîng-
chêutheui lá.
(The tourist points out a spot on one of the garments:)
yan
Nîdouh yâuuh go yan--
gònjehg
sâidâk gònjehg
 ámbî...?
Nhji sài âhâsidâk gònjehg mê?

Sihjái

hôu chîh

Mmmm...Hôu chîh ânhâk bô.

Sihâh lâ!

Yauhhaak

A--juhng yâuuh!
tong
tong chêuhung fu
Nhgoûh néih tûnhg ngoûh tongjô
nîtiuh chêuhung fu lá.

Sihjái

Hôu aak,
dân
sêfân
Dâng ngoûh sêfân jeûng dân bôi
néih lâ.
Juhng yâuuh mûtîh fânfu a?

Yauhhaak

fan or fangaa
Ngônh yîngâ fan la.
sêng

In that case, please take them [away for me].

spot
There's a spot here--
clean
able to be washed clean
I wonder...?
I wonder whether you can get it clean?

it seems, probably, it looks
like ...
Mmmm...It looks like it can't be
done--
But we'll give it a try.

Oh--there's something else!
iron, press
press trousers
Please get these trousers
pressed for me.

Yes sir.
list
write and return
I'll write you a list.

Anything else, sir? [In addition
what instructions do you
have?]

sleep
I'm going to sleep now.
wake up
giuséng

tingyaht jiujóu

tingjú

tingjáu giuséng ngóh

Ngóh néih tīngjú chí dím bún
giuséng ngóh lá.
jóu

Ngóh yiu jóùi chōut gāai.

wake (someone) up, be waked
up [call-wake]
tomorrow morning
tomorrow morning
wake me up in the morning
Please wake me up tomorrow
morning at 7:30
early
I want to go out a little
early, (i.e., earlier than
customarily)

B. Recapitulation:

Siuhjái
Sīnssàng yáuh mōyóh fān̄fú a?

Yauhhaak
Ngóh yáuh dī sāam yiu sáí ge.

Siuhjái
Hóu--bêí ngóh jauh dāk laak.

Yauhhaak
Ngóh hauhyáht jiujóu yiu jàu
laak.
Sāí áhsoídákchit nē?

Siuhjái
Dāk gé.

Tīngyaht babjau yūtdehng
ningfāaaslēih bêí néih.

Yes sir--you called? [what
instructions' does the
gentleman have?]

I have some clothes to be
washed.

Fins--give them to me and
they'll be taken care of.

I'm leaving day after tomorrow
in the morning.
Will you be able to get them
washed in time?

Yes indeed.

We'll bring it back to you
tomorrow afternoon without
fail.
Yauhhaak
Gam, mhogi nei hung ngoh
nichtsouthei la.

Nidouh yauh go yan—khi sai
mhaaidak gonjehng ne?

Sihjai
Mmm... Hou chih mhdak bo.

Sihah!

Yauhhaak
A—juhng yauh!
Hogoi nei hung ngoh tongjoi
nitiuh choung fu la.

Sihjai
Hou aak.
Dang ngoh sefaan jseung daan
bei nei la.
Juhng yauh meyeh fanfu a?

Yauhhaak
Ngoh yihga fan la.
Hogoi nei hung tingjou chat dim bun
gioseng ngoh la.
Ngoh yiu joudi chou gai.

In that case, please take them
[away for me].
There's a spot here—I wonder
whether you can get it clean?
Mmm... It looks like it can't
be done.
But we'll give it a try.

Oh—there's something else!
Please get these trousers
pressed for me.

Yes, sir.
I'll write you a list.

Anything else, sir? [In
addition what instructions do
you have?]

I'm going to bed now.
Please wake me up tomorrow
morning at 7:30
I want to go out a little
early.
II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes.

1. fàn-fu, (N/V) 'instructions, orders (given by a superior to a subordinate);' 'to order, instruct (someone to do something)'

   The term fàn-fu is most frequently encountered said by a subordinate to a superior, particularly in the fixed phrase: 'Yáu nēyēh fàn-fu? ', 'what instructions (or orders) do you have?' From a superior to a subordinate it is not used in direct address, being considered too peremptory. In direct address, instructions are phrased in courtesy forms.

Ex: 1. Nīgoi nēih tūng ngōh cheunghōi jeung baak man ji. Would you please change a hundred dollar bill for me.

   2. Kēuīh fàn-fu ngōh tūng kēuīh cheunghōi jeung baak man ji. He instructed me to change a hundred dollar bill for him.

2. hahngau, 'afternoon.' Another word for afternoon is hahnggh. (ng)aang-
   jau is also used by some people to mean 'afternoon,' but other people
   mean 'around noontime' when they say ngaanjau. (sīhk ngaanjau,
   sīhk ngaan is 'eat noontime meal,' 'eat lunch'). Twelve o'clock noon
   is expressed as ngaanjau saheuyeh dim, and twelve midnight as
   byen saheuyeh dim.

B. Structure Notes.

1. V-dàk (Adj) = 'can V so that (Adj) occurs,' 'can (V-Adj)

   The above represents how the dàk, 'can' construction is used with
   two-part verb constructions of performance-achievement.

   You remember from Lesson 20 encountering the dàk 'can' pattern
   with the single verb: V-dàk, 'can V.' For example:

   1. Kēuīh ni pāi nhheuyidāk. He can't get away these few days.

   2. Ga chē hahngdāk ga- Nēih meih hōi sōsih ja! The car can run -- you simply haven't
ten on the ignition!

   (See Drill 15)
With a two-part verb 㖆 comes between the two parts, the first part being the performance, the second part the outcome which can or cannot be achieved.

Examples:
1. Performance verb + achievement suffix, with 㖆 becomes 㖆-㖆-㖆

   Ex: 㖁黌 㖆 = [work on + successful outcome], i.e., fix, fix so that it is OK

   㖁黌 㖆 㖆 can be repaired

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>English Equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>V-㖆-㖆-㖆</td>
<td>Pong sâm laak- nêih ga chê hoih 㖁黌 㖆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Don't worry-- your car can be fixed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>&quot;㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
<td>Ga chê taai gauh-- &quot;㖁黌 㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or V-㖆-㖆-㖆</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;㖁黌 㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The car is too old-- it can't be fixed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>&quot;㖁黌-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
<td>Ga chê sam gauh-- juhng &quot;㖁黌 㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The car is so old-- can it still be repaired?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See Drill 17)

2. Performance verb + achievement Adj, with 㖆 becomes 㖆-㖆-㖆-

   㖁 㖇 㖆 = wash (so that it becomes) clean

   㖁黌 㖇 㖆 = can be washed clean, can be cleaned

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>English Equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>V-㖆-㖆-㖆</td>
<td>Ngôh nâm nê dî yêh 㖁黌 㖇 㖆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I think this stuff can be cleaned. [washed clean]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>&quot;㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
<td>Ngôh nâm nê dî yêh &quot;㖁黌 㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or V-㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;㖁黌 㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I don't think this stuff can be cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>&quot;㖁黌-㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
<td>Ngôh nâm nê dî yêh &quot;㖁黌-㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆-㖆&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Do you think this stuff can be cleaned?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 23 CANTONENSE BASIC COURSE

Note that there are two alternate forms of the negative of the V-đáč-achievement pattern. m̀h either precedes the whole V-đáč-achievement phrase, or it supplants đáč in the phrase:

\[ m̀h + \text{Verb-đáč}\underbrace{\text{Adj}}_{\text{Suffix}} \rightarrow m̀hV-đáč-Adj/Suf V-m̀h\underbrace{-Adj}_{\text{Suf}} \]

2. Use of V-đáč (can V) construction in VO phrases.

In a Verb-Object phrase V-đáč is rendered as V-đáč O, can VO, 'able to VO.'

Ex: paak chê  = park a car
paakđáč chê = can park a car

| a | Hauhbihn paakđáč chê. You can park a car in the back. (i.e., there's space for parking there) |
| n | Chúhbihn m̀paaakđáč chê. You can't park a car in front. (i.e., there's no space) |
| q | Chúhbihn paak m̀paaakđáč chê a? Can you park a car in front? (i.e., is there space?) |

(See Drill 16)

3. -jô, as verb suffix in imperative sentences: V-đáč, 'get V done'

a. In an imperative sentence -jô conveys the meaning 'get the action accomplished.'

Ex: Nhôgùi nêih tùhung ngôh saijô di sàam. Please wash the clothes for me. (or) Please have the clothes washed for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)

b. Inasmuch as Cantonese doesn't differentiate active and passive voice, a Verb-jô imperative sentence may mean 'do it yourself,' or it may mean 'have someone else do it.' Cf. example sentence above.

c. A Verb-jô imperative sentence requires an object. For this type of sentence a pronoun object is permitted.

Ex: Nhôgùi yâuh yât jông baak m̀n ji; nhôgùi nêih tùhung ngôh saijô cheungjô keuik lâ. Here's a hundred dollar bill--please change it for me.

(See BC and Drills 6, 14)
4. **ngaan** (var:aan), 'late (in the daytime)' and **yeh**, 'late (in the evening)' and **jóu**, 'early'

   a. When bound to -di, the implication is 'earlier (or later) than usual or expected'
      
      Ex: Ngóhdeih gàmmàahn jóu di sîhk faahn lâ. We'd like dinner a little early tonight. (Said by housewife to her cook)

   b. **jóu**, **ngaan** and **yeh** may occupy the position of Time When words before the Verb or they may follow the verb, in which case -dak is suffixed to the verb, making the phrase into the form of the V-dak hòu Adjective phrase of manner. (The pre-verb position is favored for sentences of non-past reference.)
      
      Ex: 1. Ngóhdeih kàhmàahn hòu yeh sîhk faahn. We ate very late last night.
          2. Ngóhdeih kàhmàahn sîhkdkàh hòu yeh. We ate very late last night.
          3. Ngóhdeih gàmmàahn hòu jóu sîhk faahn. We're going to eat very early this evening.

   c. **ngaan** and **yeh** do not mean 'late' in the sense 'unpunctual,' 'not on time.' The word for 'unpunctual' is **chihn**.

      (See Drill 9a,b)

5. Reference charts for morning, noon and night.

   a. Sections of the day.
      
      morning: jiújóu, or jiutàuhjóu
      noon: (ng)aanjau
      afternoon: hahjau
      night: yehmàahn, or màahntàuhhaak

   b. Sections of the day for yesterday, today, and tomorrow.
      
      | Yesterday | Today  | Tomorrow |
      |-----------|--------|----------|
      | kàhmyaht | gàmyaht| tingyaht |
      | chàhmyaht |        |          |
      | morning: kàhmyaht jiú | gàmjiu | tingjiu |
      | noon: (ng)aanjau | (ng)aanjau | (ng)aanjau |
      | afternoon: kàhmyaht hahjau | gàmyaht hahjau | tingyaht hahjau |
      | night: kàhmìahn | gàmmàahn | tingmàahn |
6. *jiujiu*, 'every morning' and *maahnmaahn*, 'every evening'

The boundwords *jiu*, 'morning' and *maahn*, 'evening' pattern like duplicated Measures to mean 'each and every ___.' Thus, *jiujiu* is 'every morning,' and *maahnmaahn*, 'every evening.'

Ex: Ngóh jiujiu táj jóubou. I read the morning paper every morning and the evening paper every evening.

(See Drill 13)

7. *yauh* 'have,' in pivotal construction with personal subject; S *yauh* SVO

In the pivotal construction the object of the first verb is the subject of the second one. We have encountered this pattern before (in Lesson 10) with a PW as subject of the whole sentence: PW *yauh* SVO. Example: Góshou yauh go yáhn dá dihnyá, Over there is a man talking on the phone.

In this lesson we have an example of a pivotal construction with a personal noun/pronoun as subject of the sentence.

Ex: 1. Ngóh yauh dí saam yu săí go. I have clothes needing washing.

2. Ngóh yauh go pánggyauh sík góng Gwóngdúngwá. I have a friend who can speak Cantonese.

(See BC)
III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first two sentences after the teacher, then substitute as directed:

   1. Kéuih yahtyaht sáí sāam.
       She washes clothes everyday.
   2. Kéuih yahtyaht jiújóu sáí sāam.
       She washes clothes in the morning everyday.

   + 3. /ngaanjau/ (or aanjau)
       (morning; around noon)
   4. /hahjau/
       (afternoon)
   + 5. /yehmáahn/
       (night)

   1. Kéuih yahtyaht sáí sāam.
   2. Kéuih yahtyaht jiújóu sáí sāam.

2. Substitution Drill:

   1. Kéuih kâhmyaht fàanheui.
       He went back yesterday.
   + 2. /kâhmyaht jiú/
       (yesterday morning)
   + 3. /kâhmyaht ngaanjau/
       (yesterday noon)
   + 4. /kâhmyaht hahjau/
       (yesterday afternoon)
   + 5. /kâhmáahn/
       (last night)
   + 6. /chînyaht/
       (the day before yesterday)

   1. Kéuih kâhmyaht fàanheui.
   2. Kéuih kâhmyaht jiú fàanheui.

Comment: 1) kâhmyaht uses its contracted form kâhm- with -máahn but not with jiú.
   kâhmáahn yesterday evening
   kâhmyaht jiú yesterday morning

2) ngaanjau and hahjau don't have contracted forms.
LESSON 23 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

3. Substitution Drill

1. Ngōn gāmyaht yiu hohk yātgo jüngtāuh Yingmān.
   I'm going to study English for an hour today.

   + 2. /gāmjiu/ (this morning)

   + 3. /gāmyaht ngaanjau/ (this morning; today around noon)

   + 4. /gāmyaht hahjau/ (this afternoon)

   + 5. /gāmjāhn/ (this evening; tonight)

   1. Ngōn gāmyaht yiu hohk yātgo jüngtāuh Yingmān.

4. Substitution Drill

1. Tingyaht jīng âhjīngdākhōu a?
   Can it be fixed by tomorrow?

   2. /tingjiu/ (tomorrow early morning)

   + 3. /tingyaht ngaanjau/ (tomorrow morning around noon)

   + 4. /tingyaht hahjau/ (tomorrow afternoon)

   + 5. /tingmāhn/ (tomorrow night)

   6. /nauhyaht/ (day after tomorrow)

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Jek būi.
    S: Ngōi néih ning dō jek būi lāih.

   T: A cup.
   S: Please bring another cup.

   1. jī bējāu.

   2. go wūnjái.

180
3. gēi jek sēui būi.
+ 4. gēi go māamga.
    several clothes hangers.
5. jek gāng.
++ 6. gauh fānggāan.
    a bar of soap.
7. deui faaijī.
8. aām jek būi.
+ 9. tiuh mōuḥgān.
    (towel)
+ 10. dī chījī.
    (toilet paper)

6. Expansion Drill

+ Ex: T: Gihn sēutsāam hōu laahttaat.
S: Gihn sēutsāam hōu laahttaat, māgōi néih tūngh ngōh sāijō kēuih lā.
1. dī chōunglim

T: The shirt is very dirty.
S: The shirt is very dirty, please wash it for me. (or please get it washed for me)

2. go wūnjái
3. tiuh mōuḥgān
    (towel)
4. gihn lāangsāam
5. tiuh kwāhn
    (skirt)
6. /hóu chàah/tong/  6. Tíuh kwàhń hóu chàah,  ēngoi néih tùng ngôh  ēngoi néih tùng ngôh  tongjô kêuih lâ.  tongjô kêuih lâ.  The skirt is wrinkled,  The skirt is wrinkled,  would you please press it  would you please press it  for me.  for me.

7. gihn sêutsāam  7. Gihn sêutsāam hóu chàah,  ēngoi néih tùng ngôh  ēngoi néih tùng ngôh  tongjô kêuih lâ.  tongjô kêuih lâ.

8. tiuh fu  8. Tíuh fu hóu chàah, ēngoi  Tíuh fu hóu chàah, ēngoi  néih tùng ngôh tongjô  néih tùng ngôh tongjô  kêuih lâ.  kêuih lâ.

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: /tingjiu/
S: 'Tingjiu' jikhaih tingyaht jìu jòu.
3: 'Tingjiu'--that's 'tomorrow morning'.

1. /gàmjìu/  1. 'Gàmjìu' jikhaih gàmyaht jìu jòu.
2. /gàmmáahn/  2. 'Gàmmáahn' jikhaih gàmyaht yehmáahn.
3. /tingjiu/  3. 'Tingjiu' jikhaih tingyaht jìu jòu.
4. /tingmáahn/  4. 'Tingmáahn' jikhaih tingyaht yehmáahn.
5. /kàhmáahn/  5. 'Kàhmáahn' jikhaih kàhmyaht yehmáahn.

+ 6. /chìhnjiu/  6. 'Chìhnjiu' jikhaih chìhnyaht jìu jòu.
   (the day before yesterday morning)
+ 7. /chìhmáahn/  7. 'Chìhmáahn' jikhaih chìhn- yahnt yehmáahn.
   (the night before last)
8. /hauhjiu/  8. 'Hauhjiu' jikhaih hauhyaht jìu jòu.
+ 9. /hauhmáahn/  9. 'Hauhmáahn' jikhaih hauhyaht  (two nights from now)  yehmáahn.
8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Néih gāmyaht haijau géidim dák-hàahn a? /sàâm dìm/
S: Ngôh gāmyaht haijau sàâm dìm dákhaahn.

T: When will you be free this afternoon?
S: I am free at 3 p.m.

1. Néih bànhë jùjòu géi dìm fàan gùng a? /gàu dìm/
2. Néih saiáu jùjòu géidim fàan hòhk a? /baat dìm bun/
3. Néih gài hahjau géidim chòut gài a? /lèuhng dìm géi/
4. Néih agô yehmáahn géidim fàan ükkéi a? /sàhp dìm lèhng/
5. Néih màh-mà kàhmyaht jìu géi-dìm hèi sàn a? /baat dìm dòu/
6. Néih go néui hauhmáahn géi-dìm dákhaahn a? /baatgàu dìm dòu/

1. Ngôh bànhë jùjòu gáu dìm fàan gùng.
2. Ngôh saiáu jùjòu baat dìm bun fàan hòhk.
3. Ngôh gài hahjau lèuhng dìm géi chòut gài.

9. Expansion Drill

1. jòu
   jòudë
   jòudë wah
   jòudë wah kéuïh jì
   dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì a?
   Néih dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì a?
   Néih dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì néih èmhheui a?
   Néih dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì néih èmhheuidëk a?
   Néih dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì néih èmhheuidëk kéuïh douh a?
   Néih dígäaí èmhjòudë wah kéuïh jì néih èmhheuidëk kéuïh

1. early
   earlier, a bit early
   say earlier
   tell her earlier
   why didn't (you) tell her earlier?
   Why didn't you tell her earlier?
   Why didn't you tell her earlier you weren't going?
   Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go?
   Why didn't you tell her earlier you couldn't go to her house?
   Why didn't you tell her earlier that you wouldn't
douh dá páai a?  
be able to go to her house  
to play mahjong?
+ 2. yeh  
gam yeh  
dimgái gam yeh a?  
néih dimgái gam yeh a?  
néih dimgái gam yeh tái syü a?  
Néih dimgái gam yeh juhng  
tái syü a?
2. late (in the evening)  
so late  
why so late?  
why are you so late?
why are you reading so late?  
How come you're still reading so late?
+ 3. ngaan, (aan)  
gaandí  
gaandí heui  
gaandí ji heui  
gaandí ji heui wán kéuih  
néih ngaandí ji heui wán kéuih  
dou dimgányiu.  
Ngóh wáh néih ngaandí ji heui  
wán kéuih dou dimgányiu (ge).
3. late (in the day)  
later  
go later  
(wait) until later to go  
(wait) until later to go see him  
it won't matter if you (wait)  
until later to go see him.  
I think it won't matter if you (wait till) later to  
go to see him.
+ 4. chíih  
chíih dou  
Deuikâhjyu ngóh chíih dou.
4. late (for an appointment),  
not on time, tardy  
late in arriving  
Sorry I'm late.

10. Response Drill: For the purposes of this drill pretend that it is now 12 o'clock noon.

Ex: 1. T: Néih sáijó zāam  
    T: Have you washed the clothes  
    meih a? /gàmjíu/  
    yet? /this morning/  
    S: Sáijó la. Ngóh  
    gàmjíu yhíng  
    sáijó la.  
    S: Yes. I have already washed  
    them this morning.
2. T: Kéuih tongjó tiuh T: Has she ironed the skirt yet?
  kwáhn meih a?
  /hahjau/

S: Juhung meih. Kéuih S: Not yet, she will iron it in
  hahjau ji tong. the afternoon.

1. Néih gájó heuijó Tóihbák meih a? /tingjiu/
2. Néih agó máaihjó boují meih a? /gámjóu/
3. Néih sailóu fánjó hohk meih a? /hahjau/
4. Néih saimúi heuijó jouh sán
   saam meih a? /tingyaht
   hahjau/
5. Néih néuihpáhngyáuh làihjó
   meih a? /káhmyáht jíu/
6. Néih dí sailóugó máaihjó syú
   meih a? /káhmyáht jíu/
7. Néih máhmá jouhjó chěunglím
   meih a? /tingmáahnh/
8. Láih Táai fánjó gkkéi meih
   a? /káhmmaahnh/
9. Néih gúngyáhn níngjó jëung
   tôi láih meih a? /káhmmaahnh/
10. Néih heuijó ngánnhóhng meih a?
    /yátián/
    (in a little while)

+ 11. Néih dâjó dihná béi kéuih
    meih a? /ngáamngáam/
    Did you phone him (as I
    knew you were planning to)?

  1. Juhung meih. Kéuih tingjiu
     ji heui.
  2. Máaihjó la. Kéuih gámjóu
     yihyng máaihjó la.
     fán.
     hahjau ji heui.
  5. Làihjó la. Kéuih káhmyáht
     jíu yihyng låihjó la.
  6. Máaihjó la. Kéuihdeih káhm-
     yaht jíu yihyng máaihjó
     la.
  7. Juhung meih. Kéuih tingmáahnh
     ji jouh.
  8. Fánjó la. Kéuih káhmmaahnh
     yihyng fánjó la.
     yihyng níngjó láih la.
10. Juhung meih. Ngóh yátián ji
    heui.
11. Dâjó la. Ngóh ngáamngáam
    dâjó béi kéuih la.
    Yes, I've just now phoned
    him.
11. Response Drill: It is now 12 noon. (ngaasajau sahpyih dim)

Ex: 1. T: Ga chê jinghou meih a? /kâhmyaht jiu/
   S: Jinghou la. Kâhm-yaht jiu yih-king jinghoujô la.
   T: Is the car repaired yet? /yesterday morning/
   S: Yes, it was finished yesterday morning.

2. T: Gihn sâat dák meih a? /hahjau/
   S: Juhng meih dák bo. Hahjau sin la.
   T: Is the dress ready yet? /afternoon/
   S: Still not ready yet. It'll be ready this afternoon.

1. Nêih go dihnwâ jinghou meih a? /kâhmmâahn/
2. Nanjô kewih ji meih a? /kahjau/
3. Nîngjô chûtheui meih a? /kâhmyaht jiu/
4. Deui hâsih dák meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/
5. Di chüunglim dák meih a? /kâhmyaht jiu/
6. Gihn laangsâam sâihou meih a? /tingmaahn/
   Is the sweater ready yet? (said to clerk at dry cleaning establishment)
7. Jêung tôî jingfân meih a? /kâhmmâahn/
   (fix back to original shape)
   Have you repaired the table yet? [fix back (to original condition)]
8. Môthjô wûndihp meih a? /tingyaht hahjau/
   B. Juhng meih mâth bo. Ting-yaht hahjau sin la.
9. Sihkdaak faahn meih a? /yûtjän/
Is dinner ready? or
Are you ready to eat?
[able to eat yet? or
Eating--is it able to be
done yet?]
Yûtjän sin lā.

10. Heudiak meih a? /gàmmáahn/
Are you ready to go yet?
Can you go yet?
Gàmmáahn sin lā.

12. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ngōhdeih gàmmáahn T: Tonight we'll eat at six
    luhk dim jauh o'clock.
sihek faahn laak. /joudī/
    Ngōhdeih gàmmáahn S: We'll have dinner earlier
    (than usual) tonight.
    joudī sihek faahn.
2. T: Ngōhdeih gàmmáahn T: Tonight we won't eat until 9
    gau dim bun ji o'clock. /later/
sihek faahn. /yehdī/
    Ngōhdeih gàmmáahn S: We'll have dinner later (than
    yehdī sihek faahn. usual) tonight.

1. Ngōh tingjiu gau dim bun ji
    sink jouchaan. /ngaandī/
2. Ngōh hahjau sàam dim jauh
    yám chàh laak. /joudī/
    Ngōh gàmmáahn sahp dim ji
3. Ngōh gàmmáahn sahp dim ji
    chèut gāai. /yehdī/
    Kèuih kàmmyaht jiu luhk dim
4. Kèuih kàmmyaht jiu luhk dim
    jauh hēi sān laak. /hōu jōu/
    jiu hōu jōu hēi sān.
    Agō kàmmáahn lëuung dim
5. Agō kàmmáahn hōu yēh fan
    ji fan gaau. /hōu yeh/
    gaau.
13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh láihbaai hái ükkéi sikh faahn. /hóusiú/
S: Ngóh láihbaai hóusiú hái ükkéi sikh faahn.

T: I eat at home on Sunday. /very seldom/
S: I don't eat at home much on Sunday.

1. Ngóhdeih láihbaai mhhái ükkéi sikh faahn. /yáuhsih/
2. Ngóhdeih múih go láihbaai sikh leuhung sàam chi Jùng-choi. /jiisiú/
3. Ngóh múih níhn heui féigé-chèuhung yáthí. /jido/
4. Kéuih heui wán pânggyáuh chóh. /hóusiú/
5. Ngóh ángéidák néih ge dihmá góidó houh. /hóudósiú/
6. Kéuih gónàhchit sikh jóucháan. /jiíjíú/ (every morning)
7. Kéuih hóu yeh ji fan. /sáah máahn/ (every evening)

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh yiu wuhn jëung sahp mán ji.
S: Shgôi néih têuhng ngóh wuhnji jëung sahp mán ji lá.

S: Would you please change a ten dollar bill for me?
T: I want to change a ten dollar bill.

1. Ngóh yiu tong tiuh kwànn.
2. Ngóh yiu sái di sàam.
3. Ngóh yiu jouh gihn sàu tsám. /jouhóóu/
5. Ngóh yiu jouh di chëunglím.

+ 7. Ngóh yiu gwa tiu̯h kwáhn.
   /gwahou/  
   (hang up)

6. ŝhgoi neih túhng ngóh búnjó jeung tói chuthuei lá.

7. ŝhgoi neih túhng ngóh gwahóu tiu̯h kwáhn lá. Please hang the skirt up for me.

15. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Ga chē gauh, T: That car is so old--can it run?
    S: Hahng hahng-dák a? /nod/
    S: Sure it can!

2. T: Ngóhdeih tingyaht chhóng haak, néih làih mhláihdák a? /shake/
    S: Mhláihdák bo. S: I'm sorry I can't.

1. Néih ŭkkéi chinhbihn paak hhpakdák chē a? /nod/
2. Kâmhmáahn gauh dúng, néih fan hhfandák a? /shake/
4. Goďi tông gauh yih, néih yám hhyámddák a? /nod/
5. Gihn sêutsaam gauh sai, néih jeuk hhfjeukdák a? /shake/
6. Néih yát go jüngtáuh duhk hhdunkdák yát baak yihp a? /shake/

189
16. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Ngón yáuh gam dò chín, yatdihg máihdkák hóudó yéh. /móuh géidd/
S: Ngón móuh géidd géi baak yáhn.

T: I have so much money, I can buy a lot. /not much/
S: I don't have much money, I can't buy much.

1. Gógaan jáudím gam saai, yatdihg jyuhdk généi baak yáhn. /gam saai/
   The hotel is so large it can accommodate several hundred people.

2. Ní go fēigéi chèuhng gam daaih, yatdihg tinhngdk hóudó (ga) fēigéi. /gam saai/

3. Nóm ga chê gam daaih, yatdihg chôhdák baat go yáhn. /gam saai/

4. Ngón tingyaht móuh yéh jouh, yatdihg heuidák wán hôh Siújé chón. /hóhdák háahn/

5. Gámyaht gam yiht, yatdihg heuidák yáuñéuí /gam dung/

6. Kúuih yáuh duhk syú, yatdihg bátdák yíhp. /móuh duhk syú/

17. Response Drill: Answer in the negative.

Ex: T: Yauh gam dò yéh, sahk hóehkdák- saai a?
S: Gam dò yéh, hóehkdák S: There's so much stuff, can you eat it all?

S: Gam dò yéh, hóehkdák S: There's so much stuff, I can't eat it all.

1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, jouh hóehjoudák saai a?
2. Yáuh gam dò sáam, sái hóehsidák saai a?
3. Ga chê gam gauh, jing hóehjoudák hóu a?
4. Gih sáam gam lëuhttaht, sái hóehsidák gómjehng a?

1. Yáuh gam dò yéh, hóehjoudák saai bo.
2. Yáuh gam dò sáam, hóehsidák saai bo.
3. Ga chê gam gauh, hóehjoudák hóu bo.
4. Gih sáam gam lëuhttaht, hóehsidák gómjehng bo.
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) sāi sāambouh = laundry department
2) fan ngaanid = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than usual)
3) chūnglèuhtng = take a bath, take a shower
4) chūnglèuhtngfōng = bathroom
5) māt = here; dimgāi?
6) jingēi = yourself
7) Gām dīm dāk gā? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such?
8) yeuhngyeuhng = everything
9) Luhk jē = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyīng or Chāhn Ngāh-luhk) and the jē part means 'elder sister'.
10) gōn = in a hurry; gōn âhgōn,jyuh? = Are you in a hurry?
11) Sinkdāk faahn mēih? = Can we eat yet?
12) âhhaih = otherwise, if not,...

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. This shirt is very dirty--would you get it washed for me?
2. This skirt is very wrinkled--would you press it for me?
3. There's a spot here on my tie--do you think it can be washed clean?

B. And he replies:

1. All right, (I'll) bring it back tomorrow--OK?
2. I'm very busy right now--I'll press it this afternoon, would that be all right?
3. Probably it can't be washed clean.
4. What time do you want dinner tonight?
5. It was very late last night before I went to bed.
6. Please excuse my late arrival—I got up late this morning.
7. I get up every morning at 7:30.
8. Every evening after dinner I study Cantonese.
9. Did he arrive the day before yesterday?
10. Have you hung up the clothes?
11. Is there any toilet paper in the John?
12. Can you get it fixed by tomorrow?
13. Do you study in the morning or at night?
14. Does the gentleman have any further instructions? (said by bellboy to hotel guest)
15. We go to bed quite early every night.

4. Tonight we’re going to go to the movies, so we’d like to eat a bit early.
5. I went to bed late too.
6. That’s all right. I’ve just arrived.
7. I get up every morning at 6:30.
8. You’re very industrious!
9. No, he arrived yesterday morning.
10. Not yet—in just a minute!
11. There is, I just brought some in.
12. Can’t get it fixed by tomorrow—it’ll be day after tomorrow.
13. I study in the morning and at night too.
14. Would you please bring another towel and a bar of soap.
15. We go to bed comparatively late.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 23

1. cháauh
2. chih
3. chij
4. chihmiju
5. chihmâahn
6. chihnyah\nt
7. dâm
8. fânfu
9. fânggâan
10. fan(gaau) adj; wrinkled
     adj; late (for an appointment)
     n; toilet paper
     TW; day before yesterday in the morning
     TW; night before last
     TW; day before yesterday
     n; list
     n/v; instructions
     n; soap
     V(O); go to bed, sleep
<p>| 11. gämjlu | <strong>TW:</strong> this morning |
| 12. gämmaahn | <strong>TW:</strong> tonight |
| 13. gämmyaht hahjau | <strong>TW:</strong> this afternoon |
| 14. gämmyaht ngaanjau | <strong>TW:</strong> this morning; today around noon |
| 15. gauh | <strong>m:</strong> bar; <strong>M. for soap</strong> |
| 16. giuséng | <strong>v:</strong> wake (someone) up [@call-wake] |
| 17. gënjeeng | <strong>adj:</strong> clean |
| 18. gwa | <strong>v:</strong> hang (something) up |
| 19. gwahóu | <strong>v:</strong> hang (something) up |
| 20. hahjau | <strong>TW:</strong> afternoon |
| 21. hauhmáahn | <strong>TW:</strong> day after tomorrow night |
| 22. hauhyaht | <strong>TW:</strong> the day after tomorrow |
| 23. hóu chih | <strong>Ph:</strong> it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely... |
| 24. jingfån | <strong>v:</strong> fix back to original shape |
| 25. jlüjlu | <strong>AdvPh:</strong> every morning |
| 26. jlüjóu | <strong>morning</strong> |
| 27. jóu | <strong>adj:</strong> early |
| 28. kähnmáahn | <strong>TW:</strong> last night |
| 29. kähmyaht bahjau | <strong>TW:</strong> yesterday afternoon |
| 30. kähmyaht jlu | <strong>TW:</strong> yesterday morning |
| 31. kähmyaht ngaanjau | <strong>TW:</strong> yesterday noon |
| 32. laahttaat | <strong>adj:</strong> dirty |
| 33. máahm | <strong>BP:</strong> night |
| 34. máahn máahn | <strong>adv:</strong> every evening |
| 35. môngán | <strong>n:</strong> towel(s) |
| 36. (ng)aan | <strong>adj:</strong> late (in the day) |
| 37. (ng)aanjau | <strong>TW:</strong> around noon; morning |
| 38. sâmágá | <strong>n:</strong> coat hanger |
| 39. sái | <strong>v:</strong> wash |
| 40. sáidákchit | <strong>VPh:</strong> able to get it washed in time |
| 41. sáfään | <strong>v:</strong> write and return |
| 42. säng | <strong>v:</strong> wake up |
| 43. sihnjái | <strong>n:</strong> roomboy (in hotel) |
| 44. tingjlu | <strong>TW:</strong> tomorrow morning |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 23</th>
<th>Cantonese Basic Course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45. tingmáehn</td>
<td>TW: tomorrow night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46. tingyaht bahjau</td>
<td>TW: tomorrow afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47. tingyaht ngaanjau</td>
<td>TW: tomorrow morning around noon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48. tong</td>
<td>v: iron, press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49. yan</td>
<td>n: spot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. yêtján</td>
<td>advP: in a little while, in just a little while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51. yâuhhaak</td>
<td>n: tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52. yeh</td>
<td>adj: late (in the evening)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53. yehmáehn</td>
<td>TW: at night</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

194
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bàu Tāai

Yâm būi chàh ji dāk. I'll have a cup of tea--that'll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

chûng chàh make tea, steep tea
wûh pot, container, Measure
chûng wûh chàh make a pot of tea

A Sei, śhōi niē chûng wûh chàh A Sei, would you please make me a pot of tea?
bēi ngōh lā.

(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei

Taaitāai here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy,' 'Madam.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house)

Hái bīndouh yâm a?, Taaitāai? Where would you like to drink it ma'am?

Bàu Tāai veranda, terrace

kâhlāu It's cooler on the veranda--
kâhlāu lā. I'll go out to the veranda.

A Sei like to, going to (strong possibility)

wûih to rain [fall-rain]

lohkyyû́h

Hōu chîh wûih lohkyû́h bo. It looks like it's going to rain.

Bàu Tāai living room

haaktêng
Gâm, jauh hài hasktōng nǐdouh là.
A Sei
jái
Jài hài nǐ jèung tói, hòu
mànhou a?
Bàu Tai
Hòu là.
Ài Jànhaih lohkyûn tîm boi
chĕung
sàn
sàn chĕung
Sànjo dî chĕung là.
Àngôi nêh tûng ngôh heui
sânjo dî chĕung sîn là.
faaidì
Àngôi nêh faaidì tûng ngôh
heui sânjo dî chĕung sîn là.
(The servant and housewife both go
around closing windows, then return
to the living room. A Sei feels the
tea pot and notes that it is cold:)
A Sei
dungjô
Dî chăh dungjô laak.
chûng wûh yiht châh
chûng wûh yiht ge
chûnggwò
chûnggwò wûh yiht ge
Dâng ngôh tûng nêh chûnggwô
wûh yiht ge là.
Bàu Tai
Àngôi,
hômông a!
Well, here in the living room then.
put, place
I'll put it on this table, is
that all right?
Fine.
Oh-oh, it is raining!
window
close, shut
close windows
Please close the windows.
Please go close the windows
for me first.
right away, hurry and ...
Please hurry and close the
windows for me.
has become cold
The tea's gotten cold.
make a pot of hot tea
make a hot one [make pot
hot one]
make another [steep-change]
make another hot one (i.e.,
as replacement)
Let me make you another hot
one.
Thanks.
be careful

196
dousé  
Houseng a, ênhîou dousé a!  
A Sei  
Baihlakl or Baihlok!  
Baihlakl janhiaj dousé tim!  
Bâau Tâai  
faai  
faai vou  
maat
Faail ning faai vou láih maat lâ.

dit
laahn
ditlaahn
houchoï
Houchoï...jë
Houchoï móuh ditlaahr jek büi jë.
spill  
Be careful! Don’t spill it!

A Sei  
exclamation of surprise  
Blast! I did spill it!

Bâau Tâai  
piece, Measure  
a cloth, a piece of material  
wipe, polish; wet-mop  
Hurry and get a cloth to wipe it up.

B. Recapitulation:
(At home one hot summer afternoon Mrs. Brown, realizing she is thirsty, says:)

Bâau Tâai  
Yâm büi châh ji dâk.  
I’ll have a cup of tea—that’ll do it. (i.e., the tea will take care of the thirst)

A Sei, êhgoi néih chûng wûh  
châh bëi ngañ lâ.
(A Sei brings the tea into the living room:)

A Sei  
Hâi bîndouh yâm a?, Taaitaï?  
Where would you like to drink it, ma’am?

Bâau Tâai  
Kêhlau êuuhngdï, chêutheui  
kêhlau lâ.
It’s cooler on the veranda—
I’ll go out to the veranda,
A Sei
Hâu chǐh wūih lohkyūn bo.
It looks like it's going to rain.

Bāau Tāai
Gâm, jauh hái haaktēng nǐdouh lā.
Well, here in the living room then.

A Sei
Jāi hái nǐ jēung tǒi, hōu ánhhōu a?
I'll put it on this table, is that all right?

Bāau Tāai
Hōu lā.
Fine.

A! Jânhaih lohkyūn tím bol
Oh-oh, it is raining!

Ngōi néih fasidī tūnhng ngōh
Please hurry and go close the
heui săanjō dī chēung sin lā.
windows for me.

(The servant and housewife both go
around closing windows, then return
to the living room. A Sei feels the
tea pot and notes that it is cold:)

A Sei
Dī chēh dungjō laak.
The tea's gotten cold.

Dāng ngōn tūnhng néih chümggwō
Let me make you another hot
wūn yiht ge lā.
one.

Bāau Tāai
Ngōi.
Thanks.

Hōusēng a, ánhhōu dōusē a!
Be careful! Don't spill it!

A Sei
Baihlaat! Jânhaih dōusē tīm!
Blast! I did spill it!

Bāau Tāai
Fasidī ning faai bou lāih maat lā.
Hurry and get a cloth to wipe
Hōuchōi mōuh ditlamhn jek būi jō.
it up.
At least it's lucky you didn't
break the cup.
II. NOTES
1. wúih, 'likely to,' '(probably) will'

wúih is an auxiliary verb, in a full sentence having a verb as its object. It is used in prediction sentences, indicating strong probability: 'likely to,' 'probably will,' 'could be that__'.

Ex: wúih lohk yûh = likely to rain
1. Gàmyaht wúih lohkyûh ga. It's going to rain today.
  or: It's likely to rain today.
2. Gàmyaht înwûih lohkyûh ge. It's not going to rain today.
3. Gàmyaht wûih înwûih lohkyûh Is it going to rain today?
   a?

(See BC and Drill 6)

The underlying meaning of wúih is 'able to,' 'capable of,' in the sense of 'in one's power to V,' 'possible for one to V.' This connotation emerges when wúih is used to detail past or present capability:

Ex: 1. A: Nî dî châng hâi Weihông mûnhjo sei houhjí go. These oranges (I) bought at Wellcome Company for 40 apiece.
   B: Nî Jûngwèhâhn Gâjaih saah, waahnjé wúih pehngdí. Buying at Central Market, probably would be cheaper.

   B: Sëühnggo láihbâni wûih pehngdí. These oranges are now 40 apiece.
   Last week (one was) able to (get them) cheaper.

(Students who have previously studied Mandarin will recognize the Cantonese wúih as cognate to Mandarin hweí, 'can;' 'know how to.'

Note that Mandarin would use hweí in the sentence patterns detailed above, but that the Mandarin meaning of hweí as 'know how to' is represented in Cantonese by sûi, 'know how to'.)

2. jài, 'put,' 'place,' is a verb which requires a following place phrase object or verb suffix:

Ex: 1. jài + place phrase:
2. jai + suffix
   b. Jaimaah di saam la. Put the clothes away.

(See BC and Drills 1.7, 1.8, 9)

3. faaidi in pre-verb and post-verb position.
   In pre-verb position faaidi means either, 1) 'hurry up and Verb,' or 2) 'Verb faster'
   Ex: Faaidi sihk a. 1. Hurry up and eat. (We have to catch a train, hurry up and start eating.) or:
   2. Eat faster. (Stop dawdling.)

(See BC)

When faaidi follows the verb, there is only one interpretation, 'Verb faster.'
Ex: Sihk faaidi! = Eat faster!

4. Sentence suffix la for friendly advice.
   la is suffixed to imperative sentences, giving the connotation of low-keyed friendly advice. (Remember we use imperative to mean a sentence which directs an addressee to act, and is not limited to sentences giving commands.) Imperative suffix la in mid-pitch intonation is similar to imperative suffix laa with high-pitched intonation. Mid-pitched la suggests low-keyed advice, in contrast to high-pitched laa, which suggests polite urging.

(See Drill 15)

5. Houchoi... je. 'At least it's lucky that.....'
   The je of Houchoi...je indicates: 'it's not much (to be thankful for), but it's something.'

(See BC and Drill 14)
6. **Adjective-jo,** 'has gotten Adjective,' 'got Adjective.'

**Compare:**

1. Dī tong mnhóuyám ge, dung gé. The soup doesn't taste good--it's cold.
2. Dī tong dungjó, mnhóuyám ge. The soup has gotten cold--it doesn't taste good.

*Adjective-jo* views the condition described by the adjective as the end result of a process. The adjective without *-jo* is descriptive of a static state.

Ex: 
- dungjó = has gotten cold, got cold
- sāpjó = got wet
- gāghjó = has gotten old (things, not people)
- chaauhjó = got wrinkled

*(See BC and Drill 11)*

English too has ways of expressing the condition described by an adjective in terms of a static state, or the end result of a process.

**Compare:**

1. It is cold.
   - It has turned cold.
2. It is damp.
   - It has gotten damp.

7. **-go**, 'another (as replacement for the original, in exchange for the original)'

*Go*, attached to a verb preceding and a Measure following, has the meaning 'another,' 'other,' in the sense of a replacement (*or* replacements) for the original Measure.

*Go*, 'another, others' in the sense of a replacement, contrasts with *dō*, 'another,' 'others' in the sense of an additional one (*or* ones).

Ex: 
- V go M = V a replacement M
- V dō M = V an additional M

**Compare:**

1. Dī chāh dungjó--chūng go wuh laih là. The tea's gotten cold--please make a replacement potful and bring it.
2. Dī chāh yāmsaai laank--chūng do wuh laih là. The tea's all drunk up. Please make an additional potful and bring it.

*(See BC and Drill 15)*

201
8. láih, 'for the purpose of,' 'in order to,' 'to'
láih connects two verb phrases: \( V(O)_1 \) \( V(O)_2 \), with the meaning:

\[
\begin{aligned}
&'V(O)_1' \\
\{ &\text{in order to} \\
&\text{for the purpose of} \\
&\text{to} \\
&\text{so that one can}
\}
&V(O)_2'
\end{aligned}
\]

Ex: 1. Míng faai bou láih maat. Bring a cloth to wipe (it up).
2. Neih mái láih běng jowh meyeh a? what did you buy cookies for?
3. Ngóh máa láih dí běng láih siihk.
4. Kéuihmai láih hóuó choi láih chéng haak. She bought a lot of food to have a dinner party.

9. Performance-achievement verb compounds

Ex: 1. díløahh drop-break = break
díløahh (jeung yí) (the chair)
2. chořløahh sit-break = break
3. chořløahh (tiuh fu) (the trousers)
4. díløahh hit-break = break
díløahh = come to the brim-overflow = spill

a. The first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound tells what action is performed, the second one tells what the result is:

Ex: díløahh hit and break
chořløahh sit and break
díløahh drop and break

b. In sentences of past reference, the performance-achievement compound verbs pattern like single verbs.

Forms: affirmative: \( VY-jó \)
negative: \( móuh VY \)
choice ques: \( yáuh móuh VY? \)

Ex: díløahh = hit and break

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>Kéuihmai díløahhjó jek būi.</th>
<th>She broke the cup.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Kéuihmai móuh díløahh jek būi.</td>
<td>She didn't break the cup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Yáuh móuh díløahh jek būi a?</td>
<td>Did she break the cup?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

202
c. The dâk, 'can,' pattern with performance-achievement compounds. This pattern is, indeed, it is the same as, the V-dâk-Adj = 'can V with Adj results' construction studied in Lesson 23.

Ex: dâdâklaahn = [hit-can-break], i.e., able to break by hitting; can be broken by hitting; breakable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>V-dâk-Adj</th>
<th>Nî jek bûi dâdâklaahn.</th>
<th>This glass is breakable.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>mhV-dâk-Adj</td>
<td>Nî jek bûi mhâdâklaahn.</td>
<td>[hit-can-break]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or V-mh-Adj</td>
<td>Nî jek bûi mhdâklaahn.</td>
<td>This glass is unbreakable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>VmhV-dâk-Adj</td>
<td>Nî jek bûi da mhdâklaahn a?</td>
<td>Is this glass breakable?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. In sentences of customary action, not referring to a specific event.

For customary action the performance-achievement compound tends to be phrased in the affirmative, with frequency expressions such as hîu siu, 'very seldom' suggesting the negative, and with the question formed by hâi hîuhaî preceding the affirmative.

Ex: 1. Kőuîh sihâh dûo dálaahn yêh ga. She always breaks things.
   2. Kőuîh hîu siu dálaahn yêh ga. She very seldom breaks things.
   3. Kőuîh hâi hûhâîh sihâh dûo dálaahn yêh ga? Does she break things all the time?

e. jîng, 'fix,' 'do,' 'make,' may be the first verb of a performance-achievement verb compound, substituting for a verb of specific means.

Ex: 1. chôhlaahn = [sit-break], i.e., 'tear (cloth by sitting it out),' 'break (a chair by sitting in it),' etc.
    jînglaahn = [make-break], i.e., 'break' (without saying how)

2. chôchânh = [sit-wrinkled], i.e. 'get (something) wrinkled by sitting in it'
    jîngchânh = [make-wrinkled], i.e., 'get something wrinkled' (without saying how)
III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. faahntōŋ
   b. hái faahntōŋ
   c. hái faahntōŋ sihk faahn
   d. āhhái faahntōŋ sihk faahn
   e. hái āhhái faahntōŋ sihk faahn a?

+ 2. a. chyuhfōng
   b. hái chyuhfōng
   c. hái chyuhfōng gōdouh
   d. hái chyuhfōng gōdouh jyū faahn

+ 3. a. seuihfōng
   b. go seuihfōng
   c. géī(dō) go seuihfōng a?
   d. yăuh géī(dō) go seuihfōng a?
   e. Nēih ngūkkōj ĭyăuh géī(dō) go seuihfōng a?

+ 4. a. syūfōng
   b. hái syūfōng
   c. hái syūfōng tāi boujī
   d. Këuīh hái syūfōng tāi boujī
   e. Këuīh hái syūfōng tāihāh boujī a, duhksh ēyă a, sēnăh jīh a, găm lă.

+ 5. a. lauhdāi
   b. lauhdāi hái bāsi
   c. lauhdāi hái bāsi tīm
   d. Bă jē lauhdāi hái bāsi tīm.
   e. Aiyah! Bă jē lauhdāi hái bāsi tīm!

6. a. lohkyūŋ
b. hōu sīu lohk yūḥ
  c. SAhp yuht hōu sīu lohk yūḥ
  d. Hài Hěunggōng SAhp yuht hōu sīu lohk yūḥ.
  e. Tèngginwah hāi Hēunggōng SAhp yuht hōusiū lohkyūh hāih māhāi̍h a?

+ 7. a. tokpūn
  b. go tokpūn
  c. go tokpūn hāi bīndouh a?
  d. go tokpūn jāi hāi bīndouh a?

  e. go tokpūn jāi jō hāi bīndouh a?
  f. Go tokpūn jāi jō hāi bīndouh- ngōh tāi māhōu ge.

+ 8. a. syūtōi
  b. hāi syūtōi
  c. hāi syūtōi gōdouh
  d. jāi jō hāi syūtōi gōdouh

  e. Tokpūn jāi jō hāi syūtōi gōdouh.

9. a. chung chāh chēutlāi̍h
  b. chung wūh chāh chēutlāi̍h

  c. gūngyāhn chung wūh chāh chēutlāi̍h.
  d. giu gūngyāhn chung wūh chāh chēutlāi̍h.

  e. yahpheui giu gūngyāhn chung wūh chāh chēutlāi̍h.
  f. ngōh yahpheui giu gūngyāhn chung wūh chāh chēutlāi̍h.

seldom rains
seldom rains in October
It seldom rains in October in Hong Kong.
I hear that in Hong Kong it seldom rains in October--is that right?

tray
a/the tray
Where is the tray?
Where (should I) put the tray? or Where has the tray been put?
Where has the tray been put?
Where has the tray been put--I don't see it. (or Where did you put the tray?)

desk
on the desk
on the desk there
has been put there on the desk
The tray (I) put on the desk there. (or--in another context--this could be a command: Put the tray on the desk there.)

make tea and bring it out
make a pot of tea and bring it out
the servant made a pot of tea and brought it out.
tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
go in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
I went in to tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.
g. Dăng ngóh yahpeui giu gung-yàhn chùng wúh chàhn cheut-làih.
   I'll go in and tell the servant to make a pot of tea and bring it out.

2. Substitution Drill

1. Kèhláu hái bǐndouh a?
   Where is the veranda?
2. /haaktèng/
3. /chisò/
4. /faahntèng/
5. /seuihfông/
6. /haaktèng/
7. /syúfông/
8. /chyúhfông/
9. /chünglèuhngfông/ (bathroom; i.e. room for bathing)
10. /Nèih gân fông/ (your room)

1. Kèhláu hái bǐndouh a?
2. Haaktèng hái bǐndouh a?
3. Chisò hái bǐndouh a?
4. Faahntèng hái bǐndouh a?
   Where is the dining room?
5. Seuihfông hái bǐndouh a?
   Where is the bedroom?
6. Haaktèng hái bǐndouh a?
7. Syúfông hái bǐndouh a?
   Where is the study?
8. Chyúhfông hái bǐndouh a?
   Where is the kitchen?
9. Chünglèuhngfông hái bǐndouh a?
10. Nèih gân fông hái bǐndouh a?

3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bùn syù hái syúfông. T: The book is in the study.
   S: Jài bún syù hái syúfông là. S: Please put the book in the study.

1. Jek chàhbûi hái ngóh nǐdouh.
2. Wûh chàh hái haaktèng yahp-biihn.
4. Deui hàah hái jèung yì hauh-biihn.
   The shoes are behind the chair.

   The shoes are behind the chair.
5. eventIdoujou hâi chisô yahbihn la.
6. Go tokpûn hâi tôi douh.
+ 7. Dî sâm hâi chóhng gòdouh. (bed)
    Put the clothes there on the bed, would you.

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nîng chêutheui kêh-
    lau la. /di châh/
    S: Nîng di chât chêu-
        theui kêhlau la.

T: Take (it) out on the veranda.
S: Take the tea out on the
    veranda.

1. Nîng chêutheui haakëng la.
    /di búi-dip/
2. Nîng chêutheui kêhlau la.
    /jûng yî/
3. Nîng chêutheui chyûhfông la.
    /go tokpûn/
4. Nîng chêułaih kêhlau la.
    /jûng buôjî/
5. Nîng sëuhngtheui lûuhseuhng la.
    /go sàamgâ/
7. Nîng gô jêung buôjî chêułaih}
    kêhlau la.
8. Nîng gô sàamgâ sëuhngtheui
    lûuhseuhng la.

7. Ning lohklaïh mûnhnhäu lä. /d̠i syû/ 7. Ning d̠i syû lohklaïh mûnhnhäu lä.

---

5. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ānhgôi néih tûnhng ngôh lô gauh fâaângâan heui chyuhfông gûduh lâ.
2. /d̠i wûndihp/fahntëng/ 1. Ānhgôi néih tûnhng ngôh lô gauh fâaângâan heui chyuhfông gûduh lâ.
2. /d̠i wûndihp heui faahntëng gûduh lâ.
3. /wûh chäh/haaaktëng/ 3. Ānhgôi néih tûnhng ngôh lô wûh chäh heui haaktëng gûduh lâ.
5. /jëung bouji/këhlâu/ 5. Ānhgôi néih tûnhng ngôh lô jëung bouji heui këhlâu gûduh lâ.
6. /nîdî sâmâga/seuhiﬂông/ 6. Ānhgôi néih tûnhng ngôh lô nîdî sâmâga heui seuhiﬂông gûduh lâ.

---

6. Response Drill

Ex: 1. T: Nêih wah ting-yaht wûih mûh-wûih yiht a? /nod/
S: Ngôh wah tingyaht yâtihung wûih yiht ge.

T: Do you think it’s likely to be hot tomorrow?
S: I think it certainly will.

2. T: Nêih tingjiu wûih ènhwûih heui ngânhnhông a? /shake/
S: Ngôh tingjiu ènh-wûih heui ngânhnhông.

T: Are you likely to go to the bank tomorrow morning?
S: It’s very unlikely that I’ll go to the bank tomorrow morning.

208
1. Ngóh wah nǐpái láih wūi híh dung a? /shake/
   I don't think it will be cold these few days.
2. Ngóh hahjau yātdihng wūi heui ge.
4. Wah hūdihng bo. Kēuih tīngyāh hahjau wūi hīh chēng, dā māhjēuk a?
   /wah wūdihng/
5. Ngóh gāmyahnt hahjau wūi hīh gāsam a? /shake/

7. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: tong kwāhn
S: Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh S: Please press this skirt for me.
tōnjō tīuḥ kwāhn
lā.

1. sāi deui māht
2. hōi go chēung
+ 3. hōi douh mūhn

hōi = open
douh = M. for doors
mūhn = door

3. Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh hōi jō go chēung lā.
4. sāi jek būi
5. maat jēung tōi
6. chōng wūi chāh
7. gwa tīuḥ fu

1. sāi deui māht
2. hōi go chēung
+ 3. hōi douh mūhn

hōi = open
douh = M. for doors
mūhn = door

4. Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh sāi jō jek būi lā.
5. Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh maat jō jēung tōi lā.
6. Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh chōng jō wūi chāh lā.
7. Ángōi nēih tūhng ngōh gwa jō tīuḥ fu lā.
8.  sāan go cheung  
9.  sāan douh mūhn

---

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Mídouh yáuh jëung yàt baak mân ji. /cheung/  
S: Mídouh yáuh jëung yàt baak mân ji, ânggõi néih tûnh ngõh cheungjó keuih là.

1. Mídouh yáuh tiuh kwåhn. /tong/  
2. Mídouh yáuh gihn sāam. /sáu/  
3. Mídouh dōusé séui. /maat/  
4. Mídouh yáuh dī yú. /jyu/

S: Here is a $100 bill, please change it for me.

---

9. Alteration Drill: Change ning...heui to jài...hái

Ex: T: Néih ningjó dī chín heui bindouh a?  
S: Néih jàijó dī chín hái bindouh a?

1. Néih ningjó tiuh mûuhgân heui bindouh a?  
2. Néih ningjó gauh fàangåan heui bindouh a?  
3. Néih ningjó dī gâng heui bindouh a?

S: Where did you take the money?

1. Néih jàijó tiuh mûuhgân hái bindouh a?  
2. Néih jàijó gauh fàangåan hái bindouh a?  
3. Néih jàijó dī gâng hái bindouh a?
10. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Heui chiāmsāt máaih dī bēng làih sīhk. T: I’m going to the restaurant to buy some cookies to eat.

S: Dāng ngōn heui chāan- làih sīhk ji dāk. S: I’ll go to the restaurant to buy some cookies to eat, that’ll do it. (dissatisfied, but thinking of a solution to the problem.)

(lāih = for the purpose of, in order to, to)

1. Heui syūfōng lō būn syū làih tāi.
2. Heui kēhlāu lō jēung yì làih chōh.
3. Heui chyuhpōng lō būi dūng sēui làih yām.
4. Heui chisō lō fāai bou làih maat.
5. Heui seuihpōng lō tīuh kwān làih tong.
6. Heui seuihpōng lō go sāamgā làih gwa.

Comment: lāih as used above joins two VP, to form the construction: VP₁ in order to VP₂. That this is not a heuilāih use of lāih is demonstrated in the following sentence:

Bēi jēung boujī làih tàiāhāh. Give (me) the paper to read.

211
LESSON 24  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

11. Response Drill

+ Ex: T: Joumāt néih âhyám gō bui gâfe a? /dung/
   S: Būi gâfe dungjō laak. S: (Because) it has gotten cold already.

1. Joumāt néih âhaai gō gō bui a? /laahn/
   "daai biu = wear a watch"

   Why don't you wear that watch?

1. Go biu laahnjō la. (Because) it's broken.

2. Joumāt néih âhjeuk gō deui hāai a? /sâp/

2. Gō deui sâpjō la.

3. Joumāt néih âhmáah gō bâ jē a? /laahhtaat/


4. Joumāt néih âhjeuk gō gihn seutsâm a? /châauh/

4. Gihn seutsâam châaukjō la.

5. Joumāt néih âhyuhng gō tīuh mōuhgān a? /laahhtaat/

5. Tīuh mōuhgān laahhtaatjō la.

12. Response Drill

Ex: T: Dinggāi gam âhjusám ga, gâmchi dōuséjō meyh a? /châh/ (this time)
   S: Deuiahjyuh, ngōh dōuséjō dī châh.

   S: I am sorry, I spilled some tea.

1. Dinggāi gam âhjusám ga, gâmchi dālaahnjō meyh a? /jek bui/

1. Deuiahjyuh, ngōh dālaahnjō jek bui.

2. Dinggāi gam âhjusám ga, gâmchi dālaahnjō meyh a? /jek wūn/
   What did you break this time?

2. Deuiahjyuh, ngōh dālaahnjō jek wūn.

3. Dinggāi gam âhjusám ga, gâmchi lauhdāijō meyh a? /ji bāt/
   What did you leave behind this time?

3. Deuiahjyuh, ngōh lauhdāijō ji bāt.

4. Dinggāi gam âhjusám ga, gâmchi dōuséjō meyh a? /dī tōng/
   dī tōng.

4. Deuiahjyuh, ngōh dōuséjō dī tōng.
5. Dimgai gam âhieusâm ga, gâm-chi jinglaahtaatjô meyeh a? /tiuh kwâhn/
   What did you get dirty this time?
5. Deuihâhjyuh, ngôh jing-laahtaatjô tiuh kwâhn.

6. Dimgai gam âhieusâm ga, gâm-chi jingchâauhjô meyeh a? /tiuh fu/
   What did you get wrinkled this time?
6. Deuihâhjyuh, ngôh jingchâauh-jô tiuh fu.

7. Dimgai gam âhieusâm ga, gâm-chi jinglaahnjô meyeh a? /jâung choâhng/
7. Deuihâhjyuh, ngôh jinglaahn-jô jeung choâhng.

13. Transformation Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then transform according to the English instructions.

1. Kêuih nîngjô tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong.
   He has taken (or he took) the skirt to be ironed. (or to iron)
1. Kêuih nîngjô tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong.

2. /he didn't/
2. Kêuih mûuh nîng tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong.

3. /has he...yet?/
3. Kêuih nîngjô tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong meih a?

4. /not yet/
4. Kêuih meih nîng tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong.

5. /is he going to?/
5. Kêuih nîng mânnign tiuh kwâhn chêutheui tong a?

6. /he has, hasn't he?/

14. Response Drill

Ex: T: Aiyâl LouhKyûh tim boî /yûhlâu/
   S: Houchôi ngôh daaijô yûhlâu jë.

1. Aiyâl Dungjô tim boî /lâmgsâam/
   Oh-oh, it's gotten cold.

T: Oh-oh, it's raining!
S: At least it's lucky I brought my raincoat.

S: Houchôi ngôh daaijô lâmgsâam jë.
2. Aiya! Nhàn-tâng ūkkéi sîk ngaan tim bo! / ngaan jau /
3. Aiya! Nânhhông sâanjô mûhn tim bo! / chin /
4. Aiya! Yiú bêi yih baak mâm tim bo. / chin /
5. Aiya! LoÔgyûh tim bo! / jô /
6. Aiya! Kiûh môû chûn jàau tim bo! / sâanjô jô /
7. Aiya! Nîôuh môû syû tâi tim bo! / bouji /

Comment: jê, 'merely,' 'not much,' here forms a set with hûochôi 'fortunately,' 'luckily' to suggest: though something else would have been still better, from this minor aspect it's a good thing.

15. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nî tiûh kwânh taai dyûn laak. / wûhn/chêuhngdî /
S: Nî tiûh kwânh taai dyûn laak--wûngwô tiûh chêuhngdî ge lâ.

1. Nî wûh châh taai duang laak. / chûng/yih /
This pot of tea is too cold.

2. Nî giûn sêutsaâm taai laahttaat laak. / jeuk/gôajehng /

3. Nî bûn syû taai nâahn laak. / lô/yihdî /

4. Nî go tokpûn taai sai laak. / nîng daaîhdî /

5. Nî tou gási taai yâih laak. / máaîh leng /

Comment: The sentence suffix lâ, raised intonation for polite suggestion may also be rendered la with mid intonation, giving a connotation of friendly advice.
16. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu dòusê dǐ châh al!  T: Be careful, don't spill the tea.
    S: Ngôh hóu siusám ge la, âmhûih dòusê ge.  S: I'm being very careful, I won't spill it.

1. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu dálaahn dǐ bûi al
2. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu jînglaahn dǐ dip al!  
   Be careful not to break the dishes.
3. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu sêlaahn ji bât al
4. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu jînglaahhttaat ghînh láangsaam al!
5. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu dòusê dît tông al
6. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu dálaahn go blu al
7. Hóuṣêng a, âhhóu chôhchâauh tiuh kwânh al! 
   Be careful, don't get the skirt wrinkled.

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) gwolâih nîbihn = come over here
2) fôngbihn = convenient
3) mêt + sentence = How come ...?
4) A Yêh = Grandfather (on father's side)
5) hài douh = here: and have it here
6) ngôh gàan fông = my room
7) âmhaih = if not, otherwise
8) sinji = only
9) gôndâkchit = there's enough time or You can make it or  
   If you hurry you'll make it.

215
V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Do you think it'll rain today?
2. Do you suppose it's going to be cold today?
3. My cigarettes have vanished!
4. Please put the teapot on the tray.
5. I left my book on the bus!
6. Take care! Don't spill the beer!
7. It looks like rain.
8. I left the newspaper on the veranda.
9. Where shall I put the clothes? (says the laundress)
10. Could you please tell me what time it is now?
11. There aren't any towels in the bathroom.
12. Your shirt is dirty.
13. How come you're not drinking your tea?
14. This skirt is too long.
15. Aiyah! The weather has gotten cold!
16. Where's Younger Brother?
17. What did you break this time?

B. And he replies:

1. It's not likely to rain.
2. It's likely to be colder today than yesterday.
3. They're there on the table.
4. Where'd you put the tray?
5. Call the bus company and ask if they found it.
6. Wah! (or Aiyah!) I spilled it! Quick, bring a cloth to wipe it up!
7. I'll go close the windows.
8. I'll go get it for you.
9. Put them on the bed.
10. I'm sorry, I didn't wear a watch today.
11. A Sei, would you please take some towels into the bathroom.
12. I'll change into a clean one.
13. Because it's already cold.
14. Well then, wear a shorter one.
15. Fortunately I brought a sweater.
16. He's in the living room reading the paper.
17. Just a water glass, that's all.
Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 24

| 1. Baihlalk | ex: exclamation of annoyance |
| 2. Baihlolk | ex: var. of Baihlalk |
| 3. ohšung | n: window |
| 4. ohɔmg | n: bed |
| 5. oĥung | v: infuse |
| 6. oĥung oĥn | vo: make tea |
| 7. oĥunglån̂hngfɔŋ | n: bathroom; i.e. room for bathing |
| 8. ohɔn̂fɔŋ | n: kitchen |
| 9. daai blu | vo: wear a watch |
| 10. dit | v: drop |
| 11. ditlåhn | v: break by dropping [drop-break] |
| 12. douh | n: M. for doors |
| 13. dɔusé | v: spill |
| 14. faahntång | n: dining room |
| 15. faai | n/m: piece, M. for dishcloth |
| 16. faaijf | adv: hurry and...; ...right away |
| 17. fɔŋ | n: room |
| 18. giɔmʊhi | Tw: this time |
| 19. V gwɔ M | Ph: V. another M, another as replacement for original one |
| 20. haaktång | n: living room |
| 21. hɔi mʊhn | vo: open the door(s) |
| 22. hɔucohɔi | Ph: luckily, 'Thank goodness' |
| 23. Hoochoi...jʊ | Ph: Fortunately..., at least |
| 24. Hōusængi | Ph: 'Be careful' |
| 25. jài | v: put, place |
| 26. ...ji dɔk. | Ph: ...that'll do it. only then will the requirements be satisfied. |
| 27. jʊu bou | n: morning paper |
| 28. kæhl₄u | n: veranda, terrace |
| 29. laaŋh | v/adj: break, broken |
| 30. làih | v: to, in order to, for the purpose of |
| 31. lauhaai | v: leave/left (something) behind |
| 32. lohkyʊh | vo: to rain |
33. maat
v: wipe, polish; also, to wet-mop

34. múhn
n: door

35. sàan
v: close, shut

36. sàan múhn
vo: close the door(s)

37. sœujfông
n: bedroom

38. syûfông
n: study

39. syûtói
n: desk

40. Tsaítáai
tt: here: 'ma'am,' 'Missy.' term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house.

41. tokpún
n: tray

42. wùh
n/m: pot; container Measure

43. wúih
auxV: likely to, going to (indicates strong possibility)
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Māhmā

yīhwāih

think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')

Ngōh jūnhg yīhwāih néih fanjō tim.
Māt + sentence
Māt jūnhg māhfan a?

Jāi

ngāahnfan
sēuiyihn
sēuiyihn..., daahnhaih...
fanjeuhk
fanmāhjeuhhk
Sēuiyihn ngāahnfan, daahnhaih fanmāhjeuhhk.

Māhmā

tōhnghoh
Tōuh māhtōuhnghoh a?
Sēung māhsēung sihk dī yēh nē?

Jāi

ngohngō déi
Ngōh gokdāk ngohngō déi.

Māhmā

Néih jūngyi sihk mēyēh a?

Jāi

mēyēh

And I thought you had already gone to bed.

How come? + sentence
How come you still haven't gone to bed?

sleepy
although
although ..., still ...
got to sleep, fall asleep
can't get to sleep

Although I was sleepy, I still couldn't get to sleep.

Although I was sleepy, I still couldn't get to sleep.

hungry
Are you hungry?
Would you like something to eat?

a bit hungry
I do feel a bit hungry.

What would you like to eat?
anything, everything; whatever
Møyéh dōu dāk.
syutgwaih
Tāihāh syutgwaih yāuh mātyéh
sīn.

(He looks in the refrigerator,
and takes out an orange:)

laahnjó

Yī!—nī go chāang laahnjó laak.

Māhmā

dām
Gām, dāmjó kēuih lā.
hūng
hūng pihnggwó
sōng
tīh
Dī hūng pihnggwó yauh sōng
yauh tīh—sīhk go lā!

Jāi

Hōu aak.
guīh
Ngōb hōu guīh—a—ngōh heui
fan la.

Māhmā

Haih lōh.

hōu + verb phrase + la

hōu heui fan la

yūhgwó ōhhaih or ōhhaih
jingsāhm
Hōu heui fan la—yūhgwó ōhhaih,
tingyaht nēih jauh ōngau
jingsāhm ge la.

Anything is OK.
refrigerator
I'll see what's in the
refrigerator first.
spoiled, rotten (of
perishables)
Whew!—this orange is rotten.
throw out, discard
Well then, throw it out.
red
red apples
crisp
sweet
The red apples are crisp and
sweet—eat one!

OK.
tired
I'm tired—I'm going to bed.

That's right.
'It would be a good idea
to ...' a form used in
making a suggestion
It's a good idea to go to
bed.
if not, otherwise
energy, health
You'd better go to bed—
otherwise you won't have
enough energy tomorrow.
Jái
Tingjìu m̀hs̀ài gam jòu giu ngóh.
You don't have to call me so early tomorrow.

Màhm̀a
Gâm, géidìm giu néih a?
Well, what time shall I call you?

Jái
géidìm
Néih géidìm héisàn, jauh géidìm giu ngóh là.
anytime, whenever
chìh
[Whenever you get up, call me at that time.]
chìh dou
unpunctual, late (for an appointment)
Daahnhaih m̀h̀ou taaì ngaan-- arrive late
ngóh m̀h̀s̀eung chìh dou.
But not too late--I don't want to get to work late.

B. Recapitulation:
(Mrs. Wong is reading late, when her son comes into the living room:)

Màhm̀a
Ngóh juhng yìhwàih néih fanjò tim.
I thought you had already gone to bed.
Màt juhng m̀hfan a?
How come you still haven't gone to bed?

Jái
Sèuiyìhn ngáannfan, daahnhaih fanm̀hjeuhk.
I was sleepy, but I couldn't get to sleep.

Màhm̀a
Tòuh m̀htòuhnhgoh a?
Are you hungry?
Séung m̀h̀s̀eung sihk dĬ yĕh nĕ?
Would you like something to eat?

Jái
Ngóh gokd̀ak ngohngòdéi.
I do feel a bit hungry.

Màhm̀a
Néih jùngyi sihk m̀uyùh a?
What would you like to eat?
Mêyóh dōu děk.
Tāihāh syutgwaih yáuh mēyóh sín.

Yī!--nī go chāang laahnjó laak.

Gām, dámjó kêuih lā.
Dī hūhung pīhnggwō yauh sōng
yauh tīhm--sihk go lā.

Hōu aak.
Ngōh hōu guih a--ngōh heui
fan la.

Haih lōh,
Hōu heui fan la--yūhwō ōhhaih,
tingyænt néih jauh ōhgu
jīngsāhn ko la.

Tīngjīu āhsái gān jōu giu ngōh.

Gām, gēidīm giu néih a?

Mēih gēidīm hēisàn, jauh gēidīm
giu ngōh lā.
Daahhaiah āhhōu tsaai ngaan--
gōh āhseung chīnh dou.

Jāi
Anything is OK.
I'll see what's in the
refrigerator first.
Whew--this orange is rotten.

Well then, throw it out.
The red apples are crisp and
sweet--have one!

OK.
I'm tired--I'm going to bed.

That's right.
It's a good idea to go to bed--
otherwise you won't have
enough energy tomorrow.

You don't have to call me so
early tomorrow.

What time shall I call you?

Call me whenever you get up.

But not too late--I don't want
to get to work late.
II. NOTES

1. *yihwa*  
   1) *(mistakenly) thought*
   2) 'to be under the impression that...', i.e.,
      think (without being entirely certain)

   Ex: 1) 'mistakenly thought'
   A: *höhō nîn tîuh kwânh*
      *cheouthaui— nghô yiu*
      *jeuk ga.*  
   Don't take that skirt away--
   I want to wear it.

   B: *fewîrîn jînh— nghô yihwa*
      *tiuh kwânh yiu sai ge.*  
   Excuse me-- I thought the skirt
   was to be washed. [mistakenly
   thought the skirt was
   wished-to-be-washed thing]

   *(See BC and Drill 10)*

   Ex: 2) 'think (without being entirely certain)'.
   'to be under the impression that...'

   Nhô yihwa *kêi* laînbaailuhkh  
   shfân gîng.  
   I think he
   doesn't work on Saturdays.

   *(See BC and Drill 10)*

   2. *sûiîyînh,..., dahnhaih...*  
      'Although..., still...; 'though..., still...;'
      'Although..... nevertheless....'

   This is another set of paired conjunctions joining two
   clauses in a two-clause sentence. The order is irreversible. Use of
   both sûiîyînh and dahnhaih in the sentence is preferred.

   Ex: *sûiîyînh ngaañfan, dahn-
      haih faamâhjeukh.*  
      Though I was sleepy, I still
      couldn't get to sleep.

   *(See BC and Drill 12)*

   3. Duplication of adjectives

   a. A duplicated adjective with the suffix -déi, is an adjective pattern
      meaning 'a little bit Adjective,' 'fairly Adjective.'

   Ex: 1. *chëuhng*  
      *chëuhngchëugndéi* fairly long
   2. *hûng*  
      *hûnghûngdéi* having some red color (i.e., having red
      in it, but not red all over)
   3. *laaht*  
      *laahtlâahtdéi* a bit peppery
b. With the exception of adjectives in high level and high falling tones, the second syllable in the duplicated adjective pattern is in the high rising tone. The second syllable of an adjective of high level or high falling tone retains its ordinary tone shape in the duplicated pattern.

Ex:  
- hl: sāpāp déi  a bit damp
- hf: sūn sūn déi  a bit sour
- hr: fūfū déi  a bit bitter
- ml: dūng dūng déi  a bit cold
- lf: hūnghūnghūnghūng déi  having some red color
- lr: chūnghchūnghchūnghchūngh déi  somewhat heavy
- ll: ngohng déi  a little hungry

(See BC and Drill 2)

4. Sentence suffix  lòh  = making a bid for sympathy

Frankly this is just a guess, but it seems that the speaker uses sentence suffix lòh to make a bid for the addressee's sympathy.

Ex:  
1. A: Bīngō dālaahn ga?  Who broke it?  
   B: Kēuīh lòh.  He did. (Don't look at me that way.)

2. A: Nēih sēung fan lòh?  You're going to bed, are you?  
   B: Hàiīh lòh. Ngōh hōu ngaaahnfan laak.  That's right-- I'm very sleepy. (poor me)

(See BC)

5. Hōu V la.  'it would be a good idea to V,' 'perhaps you ought to V,' 'hadn't you better V?'

a. Hōu V is an imperative form: 'you'd better V.' The sentence suffix la connoting friendly advice makes the tone of the imperative helpful rather than threatening.

Ex:  
- Hōu heui fan la--  You'd better go to bed--
  yihgwō mhhāih, tingyāht  otherwise you won't have
  neih jauh mghāu jingaahn  enough energy tomorrow.
  ge laak.

(See BC and Drill 4)
b. The sentence suffix of the imperative Hou V can be the raised intonation la, polite but more urgent than la.

(See Drill 2)

c. Hou V 'you ought to V' is the opposite of Muhou V, 'don't V.'

Ex: 1. Hou yam di gafe la-- You ought to drink some coffee,
yuhgwó mhaih, já che otherwise you might fall
gojan jauh wiih asleep driving.
fanjeuhk ge la.

Ex: 2. Muhou yam gafe-- You'd better not drink any
yuhgwó coffee, otherwise you might
mhaih, jauh famhjeuhk not be able to get to sleep.
ge la.

6. jingasahn, 1) (N) 'energy'
2) (Adj) 'feel well'

jingasahn is both a noun and an adjective, and patterns differently
in the two forms.

Ex: 1. Kéuih yát di jingasahn He doesn't have one little bit
dou mouh. of energy.

Ex: 2. Kéuih sì jingasahn. He isn't feeling well.

7. yuhgwó mhaih 'otherwise,' 'if not'
yuhgwó mhaih reduces also to simply mhaih, with no change in meaning.
The two are used interchangeably.

Ex: Hou heui fan la-- (yuhgwó) You'd better get on to bed--
mhaih, tingyaht neih jauh if not, you won't have enough
mhaih jingasahn ge la. energy tomorrow.

(See BC and Drill 4)

8. Question-words used as Non-questions.

a. Question-words in Cantonese also serve as non-question substantives
whose meanings derive from their basic question-word meanings:
## Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QW</th>
<th>As QW:</th>
<th>As Non-Question:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mēyēh</td>
<td>what?</td>
<td>anything, whatever, what, that thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīngō</td>
<td>who?</td>
<td>anyone, whoever, who, that person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīndouh</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>anywhere, wherever, whers, at that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēisīh</td>
<td>when?</td>
<td>anytime, whenever, when, at that time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn-h</td>
<td>which?</td>
<td>any one, whichever, which, that one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīm</td>
<td>how?</td>
<td>any way, however</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēi(dō)**</td>
<td>how many? how much?</td>
<td>any amount, however much/many, whatever amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēi-</td>
<td>which number</td>
<td>any one, whichever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**gēido as question word has high level tone on -dō; as a non-question, it has high falling tone.**

Ex: Yiu gēido chīn a? How much money do you want?
Gēido dōu dāk. Any amount will do.
Sēung bēi gēido, juah gēido là.

b. What we are calling 'non-question QWs,' some other writers identify as 'Question-words used as Indefinites.'

c. There are three patterns in which the QWs are used as non-question QWs:

1. QW Subject + dōu Predicate = anyone, anything, anytime, etc.

   This pattern has a non-question QW as subject in a single-clause sentence, followed by dōu introducing the predicate.

   Ex. 1. Mēyēh dōu hōu. Anything is fine.
   Ex: Everything is fine.

   2. Gēisīh dōu dāk. Any time is fine.

   3. Bīngō dōu jūngyi. [Whosoever all like], i.e., (He) likes everybody.

   4. Bīngō dōu mēh jūngyi. [Whosoever all not like], i.e., (He) doesn't like anyone.

   (See BC and Drill 5)

In regard to the QW subjects in the sentences just above, remember that in Cantonese the grammatical subject is what is being talked about, not necessarily the doer of the verb. Note that in sentences 3 and 4 above the English translation requires a different arrangement of subject and predicate.
A QW Subject + dōu Predicate sentence can be in Topic:Comment form.

Ex: Topic | Comment
Subject | Predicate
Kēu1h bîngo dōu jângyi. [(In regard to) him, whoever, always likes.] i.e., He likes everybody.

2. QW, jauh QW = whoever, whenever, however much, etc.

In this pattern the QW is in both clauses of a double-clause sentence.

Ex: 1. Nê1h jângyi mîyêh, jauh má1h mîyêh la. [You like what, then buy what.] i.e., Buy whatever you like.

2. Nê1h jê1di mîjåsan, jauh jê1di giu nghô lâ. [You what time get up, then what call me.] i.e., Call me whenever you get up.

(See BC and Drills 6, 7, 8, 9)

The jauh in the second clause follows the QW of that clause if the QW is the subject of the second clause.

Ex: QW, QW jauh...

Ngô1h jîdu bîngo, bîngo jauh gông. [I point to who, who then speaks.] i.e., Whoever I point to should respond.

(See Classroom Phrases, Lesson 3)

3. Negative Verb + non-question QW = not anything, anyone, anywhere, etc.

This pattern has the non-question QW as part of the predicate, following a negative verb.

Ex: 1. Ngô1h mû1h heui bînsôu1h. I didn't go anywhere. or: I didn't go anywhere in particular—no place special.

2. A: Jauh mîyêh a?
   B: Mû1h mîyêh. Wha'cha doing? Nothing special. [Not (doing) anything.]

3. A: Má1h bîn gînh a?
   B: Má1h bîn gînh. Which one are you going to buy? (said to friend you are shopping with)

   B: Nhâmá1h bîn gînh. I'm not going to buy any.
LESSON 25   CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Dī tông taai yiht laak.
S: Dī tông yiht gwotàuh laak.
Adj + gwotàuh = excessively Adj

1. Dī châang taai gwai laak.
2. Dī bou taai yâih laak.
3. Dī tôi taai gòu laak.

+ 4. Dī phïnggwô taai syûn laak.
The apples are too sour.

+ 5. Dī ngâuhuyuhk taai sàang laak.
The beef is too raw.
sàang = underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)

+ 6. Dī yû taai hâehm laak.
The fish is too salty.

+ 7. Dī hâ taai suhk laak.
The prawns are overcooked.
suhk = done (of cooked things);
ripe (of fruits)

+ 8. Dī gafê taai fû laak.
The coffee is too strong [bitter).


+ 10. Tiuh kwâhn taai lâahm laak.
The skirt is too blue.

+ 11. Dī chêngglîm taai luhk laak.
The curtains are too green.

The papers are too yellow.

The food is too peppery.

The apples are over-ripe.

T: The soup is too hot.
S: The soup is much too hot.

1. Dī châang gwai gwotàuh laak.
2. Dī bou yâih gwotàuh laak.
3. Dī tôi gòu gwotàuh laak.

4. Dī phïnggwô syûn gwotàuh laak.
5. Dī ngâuhuyuhk sàang gwotàuh laak.

6. Dī yû hâehm gwotàuh laak.
7. Dī hâ suhk gwotàuh laak.

8. Dī gafê fû gwotàuh laak.

10. Tiuh kwâhn lâahm gwotàuh laak.
11. Dī chêngglîm luhk gwotàuh laak.
12. Dī jî wôhng gwotàuh laak.

228
2. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóh sêung máaih gaan daaih ngúk.
S: Ngóh sêung máaih gaan daaih-dáaidéi ge ngúk.

1. Ngóh sêung máaih tiuh hühng kwáhn.
   I want to buy a red skirt.

2. Ngóh sêung sihk faai hâahm bêng.
   I want to eat a salty cake.

3. Ngóh sêung yâm bûi yiht cháh.
   I want to drink a cup of tea that is a bit salty.


5. Ngóh júngyi sihk dî syûn yêh.


7. Ngóh sêung máaih dî pêhng bou.

8. Ngóh júngyi sihk dî laaht yêh.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Nêih hóu fan lâ.
2. /heui/
3. /hái sâm/
4. /sihk jóuchâan/

1. Nêih hóu fan lâ.
2. Nêih hóu heui lâ.
3. Nêih hóu hái sâm lâ.
4. Nêih hóu sihk jóuchâan lâ.
LESSON 25  CANTONESSE BASIC COURSE

5. /fān gung/
6. /tāi yīsāng/
7. /wuhn sāam/

5. Nêih hōu fāan gung lā.
7. Nêih hōu wuhn sāam lā.

4. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nêih hōu faaidī heui T: You'd better hurry and go to ngânhônh ng log chîn la, (yūngwó) ânhhaih, la, the bank to get money. If néih jauh ängau chin not, you won't have enough yuhng ge la.

S: Yūngwó nêih ânhfaaidī S: If you don't hurry and go to heui ngânhônh ng log the bank to get money, you chin, néih jauh won't have enough ängau chin yuhng money to use ge la.

1. Nêih hōu faaidī heui fan la, chîn, néih jauh ânhhaih, néih tingyaht jauh ângau jingsânh ge la.
2. Nêih hōu faaidī dâ dihwa bêi jauh jêuih, ânhhaih, jauh jêuih la, jauh chêutjô gaai ge la.
3. Nêih hōu faaidī heui māaih la, māaih, jauh maaishaai ge la.
4. Nêih hōu faaidī jouh jauh jauh la, ânhhaih, jauh jauh gôngchît ge la.
5. Nêih hōu faaidī yâm jauh la, ânhhaih jauh dûng dûng ge la.
6. Nêih hōu faaidī jīngheui sāi jauh jauh jauh, la, ânhhaih jauh māngôndôkchît jauh ge la.
7. Nêih hōu fâan ngûkkâi jauh, vân néih jauh néih ânhhaih neitssâi jauh néih ge la.
5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih jùngyi sihk mèyeh a?
   S: Mèyeh dòu dàk.

T: What do you want to eat?
   S: Anything is OK.

+ 1. Néih wán bǐngo tèng dihnwā a?
   Who do you want to speak to
   (on the telephone.)

+ 2. Néih sōung heui bǐndouh a?
   Where do you want to go?

+ 3. Ngōh gēisi̍h heui néi̍houndouh a?
   When shall I come to see
   you?

+ 4. Néih oi bīn gihnh a?
   Which one do you want?

+ 5. Néih sōung máai̍h géido a?
   How many do you want to buy?

6. Tiông hái bīn bihnh a?
   Which side should I stop on?

+ 7. Néih yiu dám jouh a?
   How do you want to do it?

6. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Ngōh yāu̍h chīn gō- jān, jau̍h máai̍h là.
   S: Ngōh gēisi̍h yāu̍h chīn, jau̍h géisi máai̍h là.

T: When I have money, I ('ll) buy it.
   S: Whenever I have money, I buy.
   or When I have the money, I'll buy.

1. Ngōh hēi sān̄ gōjān, jau̍h géisi̍h gū̄ng néih là.
2. Ngōh dākhāahn gōjān, jau̍h wān néih chōh là.
3. Ngōh tōuhngoh gōjān, jau̍h sīhk là.
4. Ngōh hēisān gōjān, jau̍h dā dihnwā béi néih là.
5. Ngōh gōnghot gōjān, jau̍h yām là.
   When I am thirsty, I ('ll) drink.

231
Comment: Here the final la represents la for change, plus raised intonation for liveliness.

7. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Ngón pa jouhmáhsaai bo. T: I'm afraid I won't get them all done.
S: Jouhdák géidó, jauh géidó la. S: Do as many as you can, then.


8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih júngyi sikh méyéh a? T: What would you like to eat?
S: Néih júngyi sikh méyéh, jauh méyéh la. S: Eat what(over) you like.

9. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih géidim sihk faahn a? /jínghóu/
S: Géidim jínghóu, jauh géidim sihk là.
T: When do you eat dinner?
S: When it's ready, then I eat. or I'll eat whenever it's ready.

1. Néih oi bīn gihn a? /hóu/
2. Néih sáaih bīn jek a? /dáaih/
3. Néih láihbáigéi heui ngáhhóhng a? /dákháahn/
4. Néih daap mëyéh chë jau a? /lái sin/
5. Néih heui bīndoun sihk aan a? /pèhng/
6. Néih sëung táí bīn bún ayù a? /yih/

1. Bīn gihn hóu, jauh oi bīn gihn là.
2. Bīn jek daaih, jauh sáaih bīn jek là.
3. Láihbáigéi dákhaahn, jauh láihbáigéi heui là.
4. Mëyéh chë lái sin, jauh daap mëyéh là.
5. Bīndouh pèhng, jauh heui bīndouh là.

10. Stimulus-Response Drill

Ex: T: Këuhih meih hoi sàn bo.
S: Ngōh juhng yihwái hëui hëi jō sàn tim.
T: She hasn't gotten up yet. (very definite)
S: And I thought she had already gotten up!

1. Ngōh meih giuséng këuhih bo.
2. Këuhih meih fan bo.
The store isn't open at 9 o'clock.
(time + hōi mûhn = opening time at a store)
+ 3. Ngōh juhng yihwái nīdouh gāu dīm hōi jō mûhn tim.
4. Ngōh juhng yihwái gūngsī sahp dīm sàan mûhn gà.
The store won't have closed by ten o'clock.
(time + sàan mûhn = closing time at a store)
[at 10 o'clock not yet closed]


Comment: tim adds to the sentences above the connotation that the situation expressed in the sentence is different from what the speaker expected. It may be a disappointment, as in the example sentence, or it may be a pleasant surprise, as in sentence #4, but in any event it is contrary to the speaker's preconception of the matter.

11. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Faaidī yâmjo kêuih lâi
   Hurry up and drink it!

2. /dâm/

3. /ning/

4. /mâaih/

5. /wuhn/

6. /maat/

1. Faaidī yâmjo kêuih lâi

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngón haik Máihgwok-
yânh. Ngón jûngyi sîhk Jûngchoi.

S: Sàuiyihng ngón haih Máihgwokânh, daahnhaïh ngón jûngyi sîhk Jûng-
choi.

T: I am an American.

S: Although I am an American, still I like to eat Chinese food.

1. Hêunggóng tinhêi hóu y iht.
   Ngón mûngyi yâuhsêui.

2. Dî yôh hóu gwai.
   Kêuih mâmihjó hóudô.

   Kêuih hóu jûngyi tài dihnâih.

1. Sàuiyihng Hêunggóng tinhêi hóu y iht, daahnhaïh ngón mûngyi yâuhsêui.

2. Sàuiyihng dî yôh hóu gwai, daahnhaïh kêuih mâmihjó hóudô.

3. Sàuiyihng kêuih mûngyî tài hei, daahnhaïh kêuih hóu


13. Expansion Drill

Ex: 1. T: DĪ pīnggwä
 jānhái hòu-
 sihk laak.
/sōng/tīhm/

S: DĪ pīnggwä yauh sōng yauh tīhm,
 jānhái hòu-sihk laak.

2. T: DĪ tōng ēnhōuyām
gē. /rū/hāahm/

S: DĪ tōng yauh rū
yauh hāahm
ēnhōuyām gē.

T: The apples are really good.
/crisp/sweet/

S: The apples are crisp and sweet
--really good.

T: The soup tastes awful.
/bitter/salty/

S: The soup is bitter and salty
--it tastes awful.

1. DĪ choi ēnhōusihk gē.
 /syūn/laaht/

2. DĪ ngāuhyuhk ēnhōusihk gē.
 /sāang/hāahm/

3. DĪ pīnggwä jānhhaih ēnhōusihk laak. /sūhk/tīhm/

4. DĪ yī ēnhōuchōhn gē. /gōu/daaīh/

5. DĪ heisūi jānhhaih hōuyām laak.
 /dūng/tīhm/

6. DĪ gafē ēnhōuyām gē.
 /dūng/fū/

1. DĪ choi yauh syūn yauh
 laaht, ēnhōusihk gē.

2. DĪ ngāuhyuhk yauh sāang
 yauh hāahm, ēnhōusihk gē.

3. DĪ pīnggwä yauh sūhk yauh
 tīhm, jānhhaih ēnhōusihk
 laak.

4. DĪ yī ēnhōuchōhn gē. /gōu/daaīh,
 ēnhōuchōhn gē.

5. DĪ heisūi yauh dūng yauh
 tīhm, jānhhaih hōuyām laak.

6. DĪ gafē yauh dūng yauh fū,
 ēnhōuyām gē.
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) Seichyûn = Szechwan, -ese
2) Jouh mât a? = here: Why do you ask?
3) Nûuh = Nothing special
4) Chichi = every time
5) syûnlaaht tông = pungent pepper soup
6) tôngchou yû = sweet and sour fish

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. It's hotter than blazes today! (i.e., excessively hot.)
2. This orange is rotten!
3. His younger brother hasn't gotten married yet.
4. (to a clerk in a store) What time do you close?
5. This soup is bitter and salty both—not at all tasty.
6. You'd better get to the bank and get some money, otherwise you won't have any money to pay the servants.
7. How come you're up so early?
8. Which do you like better, Cantonese food or Shanghai food?
9. Are you thirsty?
10. Would you wake me up tomorrow whatever time you get up?
11. What time would you like to have dinner?

B. And he replies:

1. That's what I say too.
2. Well then, throw it out!
3. And I thought he had already gotten married!
4. We close at 5:30.
5. Well don't eat it then.
6. You're right. Tomorrow's the last.
7. I have to go to work a little early today.
8. Although I'm from Shanghai, I like Cantonese food better.
9. I do feel a bit thirsty, I think I'll what there is in the refrigerator to drink.
10. Sure—is 7:00 OK?
11. Whatever time you get it done will be OK.
12. Which tie should I wear? 12. Any one is fine.
13. Is there a place to park 13. Yes, park anywhere you can
cars around here? find a place.
14. Hurry and change clothes, 14. I don't have time to change
otherwise we'll be late. clothes, let's go now!
15. Do you like the yellow dress 15. They're both nice—buy the
or the blue one? one you like.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 25

1. bĩn-  nonGW: any (one place, etc.) whatever (one place, etc.)
2. bĩndouh  nonGW: anywhere, wherever
3. bĩng  nonGW: anyone; whoever
4. dâm  v: throw out, discard
5. dĩm  nonGW: any manner, whatever manner, however
6. fanjeuhk  v: get to sleep, fall asleep
7. fanũhjeuhk  v: can't get to sleep
8. fũ  adj: strong [bitter]
9. géi-  nonGW: any (number)
10. géidím  nonGW: whatever hour, any hour, any time
11. géidò  nonGW: any moment; however many
12. géisi  nonGW: any time, whenever
13. gũnghot  adj: thirsty
14. guih  adj: tired
15. ....-swotãuh  bf: too..., excessively...
16. hãahm  adj: salty
17. TW. hõi mũhn  Ph: open the doors (of a store) at X time. expresses opening time of a store.
18. hũo + Verb phrase + lâ  Ph: It would be a good idea to...' a form used in making a suggestion

19. hũmng  adj: red
20. jingỹhm  n/adj: energy
21. lãahm  adj: blue
22. laamjó  adj: spoiled, rotten (of perishables)
23. laahmt  adj: peppery
24. lũh  ss: sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy
25. luuk  
   adj: green
26. Māt + sentence  
   sen: How come + sentence?
27. māyěh  
   nonGW: anything; everything; whatever
28. ŋhhaih  
   Cj: otherwise, if not
29. ngāahnfan  
   adj: sleepy
30. ngohngōdéi  
   adjP: a bit hungry
31. sāang  
   adj: raw, underdone (of cooked tip); green (of fruit)
32. sëuiylhnh  
   Cj: although
33. sëuiylhnh...daahnhaih  
   PCj: although...still...
34. sōng  
   adj: crisp
35. suhk  
   adj: ripe (of fruits); done (of cooked
36. syūn  
   adj: sour
37. syutgwaih  
   n: refrigerator
38. tilm  
   adj: sweet
39. tōungoh  
   adj: hungry
40. wōng  
   adj: yellow
41. yīhwaih  
   v: think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be 'mistakenly had the impression')
42. yūhgwō ŋhhaih  
   Cj: otherwise; if not
43. TǝW sāan mòn  
   Ph: close the doors (of a store) at X time. expresses closing time of a store.
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell.)

Wôhung siujo

Meyêh sih a?

Yes? [What business?]

Jyûfân

jyûfân or jyûfaahn

cook, person who works as
cook in a private home
(usually a woman)
hire a cook
the newspaper said they
were hiring a cook here
I read in the paper that they
were hiring a cook here—is
that right?

chêng jyûfân
boujî wah nidouh chêng
jyûfân

Ngôh tâidôu boujî wah nidouh
chêng jyûfân--haih âhhaih a?

Wôhung siujo

Haïh a--yahplâih lâ.

verb suffix, indicating
action in progress
talking on the telephone
My mother is talking on the
phone.

-gân

dâgân dihnwâ

First have a seat.
verb suffix, 'finish'
finish talking
when she finishes talking...
When she gets through, I'll
tell her you've come.

Ngôh màhmâ dâgân dihnwâ.

Nêih chôhhâh sîn lâ.

verb suffix, 'finish'
finish talking
when she finishes talking...
When she gets through, I'll
tell her you've come.

-yûhn
gongyûhn
dâng kêuih gongyûhn

Dâng kêuih gongyûhn ngôh wah
kêuih ji nêih láihjô lâ.

Jyûfân

Hou, âhgoi.

Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and
comes to interview the cook:)

Wôhung Tâai

seun

letter

gasisiuâh seun

letter of introduction,
LESSON 26  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

sânfânjing
Néih yáuh sôuh daai gaa siuhseun
tùhng sânfânjing lâih a?

Jyûfáan
Yáuh. Nành, ângóí néih tâihâh lâ.

Wâung Tâai

gûngfü
dóuh dî gûngfü
dân
gâm or gámèung
gâm fân
Ngôhdeih dôuh ge gûngfü haíh
gâm fân ge:
dâléih
jûshîk
Jyûfáan jînhghaíh dâléih jûshîk.

ngôin
ji

chûhông ji ngoih
chûhông ji ngoih ge sîh
fuâjâak

gûngyâhn fuâjâak
Chûhông jîngôih ge sîh yáuh
daibî gûngyâhn fuâjâak.

daaihyâhn

letter of recommendation
ID card
Did you bring your letters of
recommendation and your ID
card?

Yes. Here--please take a look.

work
the work here
divide, divide up
in such a way; this way,
that way
divide in this way
Our work here is divided up
this way:
take care of, do
cooking
The cook just takes care of
the cooking.

outside
'of,' grammatical word
joining modifying
structure on its left to
head structure on its
right.
outside of the kitchen
the work outside the kitchen
take responsibility (for),
is responsible (for)
the servant is responsible
There's another servant respon-
sible for the work outside of
the kitchen.

adults
altogether
two adults and
two children

Altogether there are two adults and two children here.
ordinarily, usually
by myself, himself, etc.
alone
to, until
Monday to Friday

Ordinarily from Monday to

Friday there's only myself
alone who eats lunch at home.
entire
all week, the whole week
aren't able to come back
to eat all week.
and, together with

My husband and the children
aren't able to come home for
lunch for practically the
whole week.
work
that/this kind of work,
such work

Does such work suit you?

'Whatever you say.' 'Any
way is OK with me.' 'No
complaints.'

It's all right--no complaints.
Wöhng Tāai
Gám, néih yiu géidō-chín yànhngúng nē?

Sei baak lā.

Wöhng Tāai
Hōu lā.

Néih géiai hóyih lāih sāuhng gūng nē?

Jyúfāan
Hah go yuht yāt houh, hōu ma?

Wöhng Tāai
Hōu lā. Ngōh dāng néih lā.

Four hundred.

Agreed.

When can you come start work?

The first of next month, all right?

Fine. I'll expect you.

B. Recapitulation:

(At the Wong's house. The Wong daughter answers the doorbell:)

Wöhng Siujé
Mēyēh siah a?

Jyúfāan
Ngōh tǎidōu boujī wah nǐdouh chēng jyúfāan--haih mānhaih a?

Wöhng Siujé
Haih a--Yahplāih lā.

Yes? [What business?]

I read in the paper that they were hiring a cook here--is that right?

Yes--please come in.

My mother is on the phone.

Have a seat first.

When she gets through, I'll tell her you've come.

Fine, thank you.

(Mrs. Wong finishes her call and comes to interview the cook:)

242
Nôhung Tàai
Nêih yâuh móuh daai gasisiuhsuen
tûhung sâmânjing làih sê?

Jyûfân
Yâuh. Nàh, ânhôi nêih táiâh là.

Wôhung Tàai
Ngôhdeih nîdouh ge gûngfû haih
gâm fân ge:
Chyûhfông ji ngoih ge sîh yâuh
daïhdî gûngyahn suhjaak.

Ngôhdeih nîdouh haihbaahlâahng
lûuhng go daâihyân, lêuhng
go sailôugô.
Tûngsûuhng làihbaalîat ji
làihbaalîngh jînhgeih dák
ngôh yât go yân hái ükkêi
sîh ngaan ge jê.
Ngôh sînsâang tûhungmaiâîh di
sailôugô chàahdô sênhng go
làihbaal dôu ìfhânândaklài
sîh nk.
Gâm ge gûng ngâas ânhgâas
nêih nê?

Jyûfân
Dák--móuh sowâih gé.

Wôhung Tàai
Gâm, nêih yiú gêidô chîn
yânhngûng nê?

Jyûfân
Sei baak là.

Wôhung Tàai
Hôu là.

Did you bring your letters
recommendation and your ID
card?

Yes. Here--please take a look.

Our work here is divided up
this way:
There's another servant respon-
sible for the work outside
of the kitchen.

Altogether there are two
adults and two children here.

Ordinarily from Monday to
Friday there's only myself
alone who eats lunch at home.

My husband and the children
don't able to come back
for practically the whole
week.

Does such work suit you?

It's all right--whatever you
say.

How much wages do you want?

Four hundred.

Agreed.
Nāih géisi hōyīh làih sāuhng
gùng nē?

When can you come start work?

Jyūfān
Nah go yuht yāt houh, hōu ma?
The first of next month, all right?

Wōhng Tāai
Hōu là. Ngōh dāng nāih là.
Fine. I'll expect you.
II. NOTES

1. -gän Verb suffix calling attention to action in progress.
   
   a. When one wishes to call attention to the fact that an action spoken about is going on at the time of speaking (or at the time spoken about), -gän is suffixed to the verb.
   
   Ex: 1. Child (on phone):
   
   Wahga dimgäai juhng
   
   mhlaih jip ngôch a?
   
   Amah: Fong gän lái!
   
   Këuih làihgän ge laak.
   
   How come Mother still hasn't come to get me?
   
   Don't worry! She's on the way now.
   
   2. A: Nêih yãmgän meyéh a?
   
   B: Ngôch a? Ngôch yãmgän
gãfô.
   
   What are you drinking?
   
   Me? I'm drinking coffee.
   
   A: Këuih dôu haih yãm gãfô âh. That's what he's drinking too, I suppose.
   
   
   (See BC and Drills 9,10,14)
   
   b. Note the position of -gän in directional verb compounds:
   
   Compare:
   
   heui heuigän
   
   làih làihgän
   
   lohkláih lohkgánlái
   
   fângheui fânganheui
   
   nìngfâanlái nìnggânfàanlái
   
   haahng seuhng heui haahnggân seuhng heui

2. -yuihn Verb suffix indicating finishing an action.

   Ex: A. Ngôchdeih khàmmysh duhk
   
   daâlh yihsahpông fo.
   
   We read lesson 25 yesterday.
   
   B. Duhk yuihn meih a?
   
   Did you finish it?
   
   (See BC and Drill 10)

3. ñäm 'such' (var: ñamýeung)

   a. ñäm, with the basic meaning 'such,' 'that kind,' has several uses. It may be an independent unit, or a modifier. As a modifier, it can modify both verbs and nouns.

245
1) As an independent unit: ꨏ sınıf = such things, this (or that) kind of thing; in such a way.

Ex: 1. Ngóm máahjó dī būj a, dip a, cheunglim bou a, gam je.
    I bought some glasses, and some plates, and some curtain material— that kind of stuff, that's all.

    (See Lesson 19 BC)

2. Kǎuih Yǐngmán gōngǔk tūnh Yǐnggyok yahn yatyeuhsng ꨏ.
    He speaks English just like an Englishman. [(Regarding) him, English speaks with Englishman same thus.]

3. ꨏ dōu wah tíhs āh!
    (Done in such a way, and you still say it's sweet! (i.e., I put such a small amount of sugar in— you still say it's too sweet?) ꨏ = do/done in such a way

    (See Drill 2)

2) As a verb modifier: ꨏ Verb = Verb in such a way, Verb this (or that) way, Verb like this (or that)

Ex: ꨏ sê ìhdk ga.
    It won't do to write that way.

    ìh tāou ꨏ johh.
    Don't do it that way.

    Ngóhdeih hahbahlahshng dōu hahh ꨏ gōng.
    Everybody says it that way.

    (See BC and Drill 1)

3) As modifier of a noun: ꨏ ge Noun = this (or that) kind of Noun, such a Noun, a thus-done Noun

Ex: ꨏ ge tông neih jüng mhjungyi yam a?
    Do you like soup done this way? [Thus-done soup, you like to drink?]

    ꨏ ge gung ngaam mhngaa neih a?
    Does such work suit you?

    (See BC)

(/gpl N, 'such an N' also occurs. See, for example,
Lesson 27, Drill 4:
Hōu chih hah bējāu
    It seems to be beer— such a smell. i.e.,
    ꨏ meih.
    It smells like beer.)
b. **gam**, 'such' and **gam**, 'so' compared:

**gam** joins with Nouns and Verbs, and **gam** joins with adjectives.

Ex: 1. **gam**
   
   Gām jouh. Do it that way.
   
   Gām ge yōh. That kind of stuff.

2. **gam**
   
   Wàh! Gam lang! Wow-- so pretty!
   
   Aiya, gam laahhttaat. Oh my-- so dirty!

4. **jī ngoih**, 'outside' in the sense 'aside from,' 'with the exception of.'
   
   Chṳ̂ñfōng jī ngoih douhduh dou yiu maat. [Kitchen's outside place-place all want mop] i.e., Except for the kitchen, every place needs mopping (giving instructions).
   
   *yīh ngoih* is interchangeable with **jī ngoih**.

(See BC)

5. Some Verb-Object phrases serve as basis of a compound noun formula:

   **VO**-**ge**, 'one who does VO as an occupation.'

   Ex: tēng dihnwá ge = telephone operator [one who listens to the telephone]
   
   mān syú ge = bookseller [one who sells books]
   
   ja chē ge = chauffeur [one who drives a car]

   (See Drill 6)

English has a similar pattern for occupations, except in English the word order in the compound noun is: **Object-Verb-er**.

Ex: bookseller
   
   math teacher
   
   ball player
   
   taxi driver

The only English expression on the Chinese **VO**-*ge* pattern that comes to mind is 'do-gooder.' Can you think of any others?

6. **Móuh sōwáih ge**. 'Whatever you say,' 'No complaints,' 'It doesn't make any difference,' 'I don't have any preferences.'

   There is some overlap in the use of **Móuh sōwáih ge** and **Sihdaahn lā**.
With Siindaahn la you are asked to make a selection between two or more choices: Which do you want, A or B? Answering Siindaahn la you indicate that either/any of the choices suggested is OK by you.

Ex: Q: Neiih jongyi siik, ha Would you like to have shrimp yikwaak siik yu a? or fish?
A: Siindaahn la. Either one is fine.

With Mouh sówaih ge there are three possibilities:

1) One specific thing has been suggested, and in saying Mouh sówaih ge you agree to it: Is X OK? Ans: No complaints--- whatever you say.

Ex: Q: Gâm ge gung ngâam Does such work suit you? nhinggaam neiih a?
A: Dâk-- mouh sówaih ge. Agreed--- no complaints.
(See BC)

2) You are given a choice between two or more suggestions, and in saying Mouh sówaih ge you indicate that any of the suggestions is OK by you. In this use, Mouh sówaih ge is interchangeable with Siindaahn la.

Ex: Q: Neiih jongyi siik, ha Do you want to eat shrimp, yikwaak siik yu a? or fish?
A: Mouh sówaih ge. I don’t have any preference--- either is OK.

3) No specific suggestion has been made, but you are asked what you would like. In answering Mouh sówaih ge you indicate that you have no special preferences, that anything/any way/any place, etc., is OK by you.

Ex: A: Neiih wah dim, jauh dim la. However you want it done, we’ll do it that way.

B: Ngônh mouh sówaih ge. I don’t have any preferences -- any way is fine.
III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

   Ex: T: Gám jouh, dāk ēhdāk a?  
      S: Gám jouh, hōu ma?

   T: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way?  
      [Do in such a way, OK or not?]

   S: Is it OK to do it that (or this) way?

1. Gám gōng, hōu ma?

2. Gám sē, dāk ēhdāk a?
   Is it OK to write it like this?

3. Gám dā, dāk ēhdāk a?
   Is it OK to hit this way?  
   (in ref. to typing: Is it OK  
   to type this way?) dā jih = to type

4. Gám jīng, dāk ēhdāk a?

5. Gám yuṅg, dāk ēhdāk a?

6. Gám sāi, dāk ēhdāk a?

7. Gám tong, dāk ēhdāk a?

8. Gám maat, dāk ēhdāk a?

2. Substitution Drill:

1. Gám dōu wah tīhm āh!
   Do it that way and you still  
   say it's sweet! (for example:  
   I put such a tiny bit of  
   sugar in it, and you still  
   say it's sweet!)

2. /syūn/

3. /laaht/

4. /laahttaat/

5. /chāuru/

6. /chūhng/

7. /gônjeuhng/

8. /leng/

9. /sāang/

1. Gám dōu wah tīhm āh!

2. Gám dōu wah syūn āh!

3. Gám dōu wah laaht āh!

4. Gám dōu wah laahttaat āh!

5. Gám dōu wah chāuru āh!

6. Gám dōu wah chūhng āh!

7. Gám dōu wah gônjeuhng āh!

8. Gám dōu wah leng āh!

9. Gám dōu wah sāang āh!
Comment: In the above sentences gám substitutes for a VP: gám jouh 'do it thus', 'did it thus,' and is the subject of the sentence. It is separated from the predicate by a slight pause. As a verb gám is used in the affirmative only.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāän a?
   Who is responsible for cooking?
2. /māaīh yēn/
3. /jyūsīhk/
4. /sāi sāam/
5. /jā chē/
6. /dā jih/
7. /chyūhfōng jingoīh ge sīh/

1. Bīngō fuhjaak jyú chāän a?
2. Bīngō fuhjaak māaīh yēn a?
3. Bīngō fuhjaak jyūsīhk a?
4. Bīngō fuhjaak sāi sāam a?
5. Bīngō fuhjaak jā chē a?
6. Bīngō fuhjaak dā jih a?
7. Bīngō fuhjaak chyūhfōng jingoīh ge sīh a?

4. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: laahnjō become broken

S1: Yūngwó laahnjō, ngōh yāt-dihng fuhjaak.
   If it breaks, I will definitely take the responsibility.

S2: Yūngwó laahnjō, ngōh ōhfuhjaak ga!
   If it breaks, I won't be (refuse to be) responsible.
   (or I won't take the responsibility.)

S3: Yūngwó laahnjō, néih fuh ōhfuhjaak ga?
   If it breaks, will you take the responsibility?

1. chāauhjō

1. S1: Yūngwó chāauhjō, ngōh yāt-dihng fuhjaak.
   S2: Yūngwó chāauhjō, ngōh ōhfuhjaak ga!
2. laahnjó  S3: Yûgwó chàauhjó, néih fuh āhrfuhjaak ga?
2. S1: Yûgwó laahnjó, ngóh yatdhing fuhjaak.
S2: Yûgwó laahnjó, ngóh āhrfuhjaak ga!
S3: Yûgwó laahnjó, néih fuh āhrfuhjaak ga?

3. laahttaatjó  S3: Yûgwó laahttaatjó, ngóh yatdhing fuhjaak.
S2: Yûgwó laahttaatjó, ngóh āhrfuhjaak ga!
S3: Yûgwó laahttaatjó, néih fuh āhrfuhjaak ga?

* 4. waaihjó  S1: Yûgwó waaihjó, ngóh yatdhing fuhjaak.
   (waaihjó = out of order, broken down, doesn't work)
   If it gets out of order, I will take the responsibility.
S2: Yûgwó waaihjó, ngóh āhrfuhjaak ga!
S3: Yûgwó waaihjó, néih fuh āhrfuhjaak ga?

5. jinglaahnjó  S1: Yûgwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh yatdhing fuhjaak.
S2: Yûgwó jinglaahnjó, ngóh āhrfuhjaak ga!
S3: Yûgwó jinglaahnjó, néih fuh āhrfuhjaak ga?

5. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Aiyl Ga chè waaiahjó tîmî /go dihnwà/
   T: Oh-öh, the car has broken down.
   (or is out of order, or doesn't work.) /phone/
   S: Aiyl Go dihnwà waaiahjó tîmî
   S: Oh-öh, the phone is out of order.

+ 1. Aiyl Go dihnwà waaiahjó tîmî /ga dihnsih(gœi)/
   (TV Set)
   1. Aiyl Ga dihnsih(gœi) waaiah-
      jó tîmî
2. Aiyal Ga dïnhsih(goi) waaihjó timi /go blu/

3. Aiyal Go blu waaihjó timi /go syutgwaih/

4. Aiyal Go syutgwaih waaihjó timi /ga chē/

5. Aiyal Ga chē waaihjó timi /ga laânhgei(goi)/
   (air conditioner)
   5. Aiyal Go laânhgei(goi) waaihjó timi
   The air conditioner is out of order.

6. Aiyal Go laânhgei(goi) waaihjó timi /go sauânggei/
   (radio)
   6. Aiyal Go sauânggei waaihjó timi
   The radio is out of order.

7. Aiyal Go sauânggei waaihjó timi /go dâïhgei/
   (typewriter)
   7. Aiyal Go dâïhgei waaihjó timi
   The typewriter is out of order.

8. Aiyal Go dâïhgei waaihjó timi /go dînhwá/

Comment: For laânhgei(goi), 'air conditioner,' and dînhsih(goi),
'TV set,' some speakers omit -goi, others don't.
[goi = machine]
Both ga and go are used as Measures for sauânggei,
dînhsih(goi), and laânhgei(goi).

6. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? T: What does he do? (he is a do-
/gau Gwôngdungwá/ what one?) /teach Cantonese/
S: Kèuih gau Gwông-
dungwá ge. S: He's a Cantonese 'teacher.
[teach-Cantonese one]

1. Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? /gau syù/

2. Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? /maaih bouji/

3. Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? /jing chē/

4. Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? /jâ chē/

5. Kèuih jouh mèyêh ga? /dâ jih/

1. Kèuih gau syù ge. He's a teacher.
2. Kèuih maïh bouji ge. He's a newspaper hawker.
3. Kèuih jîng chē ge. He's a car mechanic.
4. Kèuih jâ chē ge. He's a chauffeur.
5. Kèuih dâ jih ge. She's a typist.
7. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih sêhng yah jëuijô bîndouh làih a? Where were you all day?
2. /hahjau/
3. /sâahn/
4. /jiu/
5. /niha/
6. /lâihbaai/

7. Néih sêhng go hahjau heuijô bîndouh làih a?
8. Néih sêhng màahn heuijô bîndouh làih a?
9. Néih sêhng jiù heuijô bîndouh làih a?
10. Néih sêhng nihn heuijô bîndouh làih a?
11. Néih sêhng go làihbaai heuijô bîndouh làih a?

Comment: Heuijô...làih = the làih part indicates that the person has returned from having been away. Compare:

1. Kêuìh sêhng nihn heuijô bîndouh làih a? Where has he gone off to all year? (still away)
2. Kêuìh sêhng nihn heuijô bîndouh làih a? Where did he go off to all year? (has returned)

8. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Dimgâai sêhng gihn sâam dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga? How come the [entire] dress is dirty all over?
2. /faai bou/
3. /tiuh kwâhn/
4. /fûng seun/ (M. for letter)
5. /jûung jôubou/ (M. for newspapers)

1. Dimgâai sêhng gihn sâam dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga?
2. Dimgâai sêhng faai bou dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga?
3. Dimgâai sêhng tiuh kwâhn dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga?
4. Dimgâai sêhng fûng seun dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga? How come the whole letter is dirty all over?
5. Dimgâai sêhng jûung jôubou dôu laahhtaatsaaai ga?
9. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Chàhn Táai jingā tāi syû.
   S: Dàngjān sīn lā, Chàhn jingā tāi-gān syû.

T: Mrs. Chan is reading now.
S: Please wait a bit, Mrs. Chan is reading now.

1. Dī sailóugō yīngā yān chàhn.
2. Kèuih go nèui yīngā sīhk faahn.
3. Chàhn Sújé yīngā wān sànfānjīng.
4. Hōh Sàng yīngā tāi dihnsīh.

1. Dàngjān sīn lā, dī sailóugō yīngā yāngān chàhn.
2. Dàngjān sīn lā, kèuih go nèui yīngā sīhkān faahn.
3. Dàngjān sīn lā, Chàhn Sújé yīngā wāsān sànfānjīng.
4. Dàngjān sīn lā, Hōh Sàng yīngā tāí-gān dihnsīh.
5. Dàngjān sīn lā, kèuih bāhbā yīngā dān dihnsū.
6. Dàngjān sīn lā, kèuih māhmā yīngā jīnggān jōuchāān.

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Néih māhmā dāyūhn dihnsū meih a?
     /shāk/
   S: Meih, jhung dāgān.
   T: Néih māhmā dāyūhn dihnsū meih a?
     /nūd/
   S: Dāyūhn laak.
   T: Has your mother finished telephoning yet?
   S: No, she's still on the phone.
   T: Has your mother finished telephoning yet?
   S: Yes, she's finished.

1. Néih bāhbā sīkhūhn ngsān-jau meih a? /shāk/
2. Néih māhmā tēngyūhn sāuyān-gēi meih a? /nūd/
3. Néih go nèui dūkhūhn daah-hobk meih a? /shāk/
4. Néih tʊhʊg kęuh kingyʊhn gái meih a? /nod/
5. Néih gǎjě tǎiyʊhn dǐhnseih meih a? /shake/

---

11. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kęuh tʊng sàuyäm-gəi. /də pəai/
S: Kęuh tʊnggən sàu-yəmgəi, mədəkhəahn də pəai.

T: He is listening to the radio.
S: He's listening to the radio, and doesn't have (free) time to play mahjong.

1. Kęuh sə gən jih. /tài dǐhnseih/
2. Kęuh jəu zhəng fnuf. /kǐnggəi/
3. Kęuh dʊhk sə. /də bə/
4. Kęuh jỳ fnəhn. /həui lò chı̂n/
5. Kęuh tʊng səm. /tài həi/

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngóndeih dòu sikhəh. Sàíchəan gə. /yəuəi/
S: Ngóndeih yəuəi dòu sikhəh Sàíchəan gə.

T: We eat Western food too. [i.e., at times, instead of Chinese food.]
S: We sometimes eat Western food too.

1. Ngóndeih dòu sikhəh Jʊng choi gə. /gəumgəe̯/ From time to time
2. Ngóndeih dòu heuɨhən léuɨhəhn gə. /yəuəi/ We go on outings too.
3. Ngóndeih dòu dáhəh pəai gə. /hóuðəi̯əi/

---

255
13. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngônh agô hou pa yat go yan sihk faahn.
   My elder brother doesn't like to eat alone.

2. /gaj/ /neui sâandêng/

3. /sailou/gwo hoi/

4. /gûngyânh/chût gâai/

5. /mânhâ/nâahng gûng/ei/

6. /ngôh chânchîk/tái hei/

14. Conversation Drill

Ex: A: Nôih tûng bîngo kînggân gâi a?
   B: Tûng ngôh gûngyânh.
   A: Nôihdeih kînggân mâyôh a?
   B: Ngôhdeih kînggân chêng haak.

A: Who are you talking to? [with]  
B: To [with] the servant.
A: What are you talking about?
B: We're talking about having a dinner party.

1. A. ................?
   B. ................chûuhjî.
   A. ................?
   B. ................kinggân jyu châan.

256
2. A. ........................
   B. ...........dâjâap.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........mâaih yéh.

2. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh dâjâap.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûtyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân mûaih yéh.

3. A. ........................
   B. ...........bânhbâ.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........tâi hei.

3. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh bânhbâ.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân tâi hei.

4. A. ........................
   B. ...........agô.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........wân nêuih pànhgâyúuh.

4. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh agô.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân wân nêuih pànhgâyúuh.

5. A. ........................
   B. ...........gâjô.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........jouh sâm.

5. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh gâjô.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân jouh sâm.

6. A. ........................
   B. ...........sailôu.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........dâ bô.

6. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh sailôu.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân dâ bô.

7. A. ........................
   B. ...........mâhmâ.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........dâ pââi.

7. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh mâhmâ.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân dâ pââi.

8. A. ........................
   B. ...........saimûi.
   A. ........................
   B. ...........léuihhâhng.

8. A. Néih tûhng bìngó kînggân gáî a?
   B. Tûhng ngôh saimûi.
   A. Néihdeih kînggân mûyéh a?
   B. Ngôhdeih kînggân léuih-hâhng.

257
15. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih láihbaaiyā̄t ji láihbaaíng ji yât dim ji ĭng dim./
S: Kêuih yât dim ji ĭng dim. S: He works from Monday to Friday.

1. Ngóh gâmyaht ji tingyaht dōu sâdkhâahn.
/láihbaaíng ji láihbaaíng克/ 1. Ngóh láihbaaíng ji láihbaaíng dōu sâdkhâahn.

2. Ēung Sâang gauhnîn ji gâmnh dōu meih fâangwo lâih.
/kâhmyaht ji gâmyaht/ 2. Ēung Sâang kâhmyaht ji gâmyaht dōu meih fâangwo lâih.


4. Lâu Sîujé yîtyuht ji sâamyuht yiu heui Yînggwoh.
/yîtyuht ji ēngyuht/ 4. Lâu Sîujé yîtyuht ji ēngyuht yiu heui Yînggwoh.

5. Ngóh lôuhng dīm ji ēi dīm yiu duhk syi.
/sâam dīm ji ēi dīm/ 5. Ngóh sâam dīm ji ēi dīm yiu duhk syi.

6. Ngóh chîhnyaht ji gâmyaht mhsâi fâangw.d
/gâmyaht ji hauhyaht/ 6. Ngóh gâmyaht ji hauhyaht mhsâi fâangw.d

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) chau = to take care (of children)
   chaujái = baby amah

2) wai = Hi! Hey! Say!

3) woh = sentence suffix, 'That's what she said'

4) nêuijái = young girl

5) jouh gûngfo = do homework, lessons

258
V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. How come Mr. Chan hasn't come yet?
2. I've come to see Mr. Wong.
3. (on the phone:) Mother, I'm at school, can you come get me?
4. (at the head of the stairs looking down:) Who is that person coming up?
5. This book is really interesting!
6. We'd better go, otherwise we'll be late.
7. Did we finish lesson 25 yesterday?
8. When you finish fixing the radio, would you have a look at the TV set?
9. Is it OK to do it this way?
10. Everybody says it that way.
11. Who is responsible for fixing the typewriter?
12. If you break it, will you be responsible?
13. Where were you all day? I phoned you 3 or 4 times.
14. Did you get it (the ID card)?

B. And he replies:

1. He's on his way now.
2. He's on the phone right now, would you have a seat first please?
3. I'm fixing dinner--you take the bus home.
4. It's the radio repairman.
5. When you're through, would you lend it to me?
6. Let me just finish writing this letter of recommendation, then I'll go.
7. Yes, we finished lesson 25 and started lesson 26.
8. I've already fixed the radio, where's the TV?
9. That way's not right--don't use chopsticks.
10. Is it OK to say it this way?
11. There's a company (gūngsī) responsible.
12. Yes.
13. I went to fetch my ID card.
14. No, I didn't--they said to come back next Tuesday.
15. How many people altogether are there in your school?  
16. What are you chatting about?  
16. We're talking about taking a trip.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 26

1. daaihyahn  n: adult
2. da  v: hit
3. da jih  vo: type on the typewriter [hit-words]
4. daajihgi  n: typewriter
5. da  v: take care of
6. dihnsihi  n: TV set
7. dou  adv: still
8. fan  v: divide, divide up
9. subjaak  v: take responsibility for, is responsible for
10. fung  n: M. for letter
11. gaaasiihseun  n: letter of recommendation, letter of introduction
12. gam  n/v: in such a way; this/that way; as V, a reduced form of gam joub; do it this/that way
13. -gan  vs: verb suf. highlighting action in progress
14. gung  n: work
15. gungfu  n: work
16. gaaanggau  adv: from time to time
17. hahmablaahng  Ph: altogether
18. jeung  n: M. for newspaper
19. TW ji TW  prep: TW to TW; TW until TW
20. ji  bf: 'of' grammatical word joining modifying structure preceding it to head structure following it
21. ......jingoih  Ph: aside from....., outside (of) .....  
22. jyuuaan  n: a person who works as cook in private home (usually a woman)
23. jyuuaahn  n: same as jyuuaan (qv)
24. jyuusihk  v: cooking (vv compound which occupies noun position in sentence; cannot be preceded directly by ym.)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CANTONESE BASIC COURSE</strong></th>
<th><strong>LESSON 26</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25. láahnghseí (gēi)</td>
<td>n: air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Móuh sówáih ge.</td>
<td>I²h: 'Whatever you say.' 'Any way is OK with me.' 'No complaints.'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. ngoih</td>
<td>bf: outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. sànhfánjíng</td>
<td>n: ID card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. sāuyámgéi</td>
<td>n: radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. sèhng</td>
<td>sp: entire, whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. sùn</td>
<td>n: letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. sèuhng gúng</td>
<td>vo: start work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. tǔhngsáaih</td>
<td>Cj: and, with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. tǔngsèuhng</td>
<td>adv: ordinarily, usually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. waaihjó</td>
<td>adjP: out of order, broken down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. yāt gō yān</td>
<td>np: alone; by one's self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37. -yūhn</td>
<td>vs: verb suf. = finish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Build up:

(An American who works at the American Consulate in Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Foreigners, mostly, for the most part
Foreigners mostly all study Mandarin
Foreigners who study Chinese

I hear that foreigners who study Chinese mostly all study Mandarin—

Is that true?

Yes, that's right.

But in Hong Kong a lot of Americans study Cantonese.

Consulate work at the consulate
The Americans who work at the consulate

Do the Americans who work at the consulate all study Cantonese?

Some, some of them
Some..., others...

No--

Some study Cantonese, some study Mandarin, others don't study either one.
Bündeihyähn
deui...làih gông
deui ngoihgwok'yähn làih gông

nǐ lêu ng yeuhng wá, bǐn
yeuhng nàahndî a?
Deui ngoihgwok'yähn làih gông, nǐ
lêu ng yeuhng wá, bǐn yeuhng
nàahndî a?

Méihgwok'yähn
Ngón ânhjî bo.
Yânwaih ngón jînghâih hohkgwo
Gwôngdûngwá ja.
 mâhtûnh

Gwôngdûngwá tûnh Gwokyûh yâuh
mêyêh mâhtûnh a?

Bündeihyähn
kêihsaht
chîh
Kêihsaht Gwôngdûngwá tûnh Gwokyûh
yâuh hûudô hû chîh ge.

Méihgwok'yähn
fânbiht
mûuh fânbiht
Nêih jîkhaîh wâh Gwôngdûngwá tûnh
Gwokyûh mûuh mêyêh dâaih fânbiht
lo bo?

Bündeihyähn
Gâm yauh ânhhâih.
geui

speaking for....: speaking about....
speaking for foreigners; for
foreigners; to foreigners
These two languages--which
one is harder?
For foreigners which of the two
languages is more difficult?
Gee, I don't know.
Because I've only studied
Cantonese.
not alike, different,
difference
Cantonese and Mandarin--how do
they differ?
actually
similar, resemble
Actually Cantonese and Mandarin
have many similarities.
difference
there's no difference
You're saying that there are no
big differences between
Cantonese and Mandarin? (He
doesn't believe it)
No, I'm not saying that either.
[that way--also-not]
sentence
sàamléuhng geui
two or three sentences,
(i.e., a few sentences)

Béstgwo sàamléuhng geui hóu nàahn
góngdäkyühn gó.
However it is difficult to
explain [tell and be able
to finish] in just a few
sentences.

B. Recapitulation:
(An American who works at the American Consulate in
Hong Kong talks to a Cantonese friend at a party:)

Bündeihyâhn
Têngginwah hohk Jùngmän ge
ngoihgwoyâhn dòsou dòu hohk
Gwokyüh--
Haih ìhhaih ján ga?

Mèihgwokyâhn
Haih ján ga.
Daahnhaih hái Hêunggông jauh yáuh
hòudô Mèihgwokyâhn dòu hohk
Gwôngdûngwâ la.

Mèihgwokyâhn
Gâm, hái líhhngseihgwûn johu sih
gó dî Mèihgwokyâhn haih ìhhaih
go gòu hohk Gwôngdûngwâ ge
nö?

Mèihgwokyâhn
Ìhhaih gó--
Yáuhdí hohk Gwôngdûngwâ, yáuhdí
hohk Gwokyüh, yáuhdí léuung
yeuhng dòu ìhhho. No--

Bündeihyâhn
Deui ngoihgwokyâhn læih gông,
ñí léuung yeuhng wá, bîn
yeuhng nàahndí a?

264

Yes, that's right.
But in Hong Kong a lot of
Americans study Cantonese.

Bündeihyâhn
Do the Americans who work at
the consulate all study
Cantonese?

Mèihgwokyâhn
Some study Cantonese, some
study Mandarin, others don't
study either one.

Which of the two languages
is more difficult for
foreigners?
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Lesson 27

Méihgwokýahn

Gee, I don't know, because I've only studied Cantonese.

Bündeihýahn

Actually Cantonese and Mandarin have many similarities.

Méihgwokýahn

You're saying that Cantonese and Mandarin don't have any big differences? (He doesn't believe it.)

Bündeihýahn

No, I'm not saying that either. [That way—also not]

However it is difficult to explain in just a few sentences.

II. NOTES

1. chih 'similar to,' 'resembles'

In the Hok language chih, 'is similar to,' 'resembles' does not stand alone in the affirmative, but is preceded by hou: hou chih, [very similar], i.e., 'similar.' The negative and question forms pattern regularly.

Ex: 1. Kêuih hou chih Mähmä. She resembles her mother.
2. Kêuih mënchíh Mähmä. She doesn't resemble her mother.
3. Kêuih chih mënchíh Mähmä a? Does she resemble her mother?

(See Drill 1)

265
2. yauhdi, 'some'
   a. yauhdi may be either modifier or head.
      Ex: 1. Yauhdi noihgyokyang Some foreigners can speak
           elk gong Gwongdungwa. Cantonese.
      2. Yauhdi elk gong, daahn- Some can speak, but can't
           hain mheik se. write.
   b. yauhdi..., yauhdi... = some..., some...; some..., others...
      In paired clauses yauhdi..., yauhdi... form a set meaning: 'some
      (do this), some (do that);' 'some (do this), others (do that).
      Ex: Yauhdi yamgan heisgui, Some are drinking soft drinks and
           yauhdi yamgan bejau. others are drinking beer.
           (See BC and Drill 5)
   c. yauhdi is used only in subject position, not in object position.
      In object position where English would have 'some' as modifier to a
      noun object, Cantonese uses di + N to represent 'some N.' But where
      English has 'some' as the pronoun object of the verb, Cantonese, in
      keeping with its characteristic absence of pronoun object (See Lesson
      3, p. 67), does not have an object to the verb.
      Ex: 1. Yauhdi beng hou housek, Some cookies are quite good,
           yauhdi mihaish gaii some aren't so good.
           housek.
      2. Sihah di beng lai Try some cookies!
      3. Sihah lai Try some!
   d. Comparison with yuuslah, 'sometimes'
      yauhdi is a nominal expression, and yuuslah a verbal one.
      Ex: 1. Go di yeehn yauhdi heu (of) those people, some went
           yam chah, yauhdi hai out to tea, and others
           ukkei. stayed at home.
      2. Go di yeehn yuuslah Those people sometimes go
           heu yam chah, yauhdi out to tea and sometimes
           hai ukkei. stay home.
           (See Drill 5)

266
3. Duplicated Measures for individual nouns = 'every M,' 'all Ns,' 'all M V'

In Lessons 20 and 23 you learned duplicated Measures in relation to
time words-- for example, râhnân, 'every year,' ūjìu, 'every morning,'
gogo láihbrai, 'every week.'

In this lesson you encounter the duplicated individual Measure used to
mean 'every,' 'all' in relation to its individual noun. In duplicated
form the Measure occurs in a set with a following dōu: M-M dōu V = 'every
M V,' 'all M V.'

Ex: gogo dōu V = 'every M V,' 'all M V'
Méihgwoyânh gogo dōu V = Americans, all V
Gogo Méihgwoyânh dōu ... = Every American V
 Hái línggaihwâp joust sîh Those Americans who work at
gódî Méihgwoyânh hâih the Consulate-- do they
mhôsíh gogo dōu hohk all study Cantonese?
Gwânggungwa ge nê?

(See BC and Drill 10)

The duplicated Measure can either precede or follow the noun it is
measure to, and in a follow sentence can occur without its noun referent.
When it precedes its noun referent, it modifies the noun, which is subject
of the sentence; when it follows its noun referent, the sentence is in
Topic-Comment form, with the noun as Topic and the duplicated Measure
serving as subject of the Comment sentence. (See examples above)

The noun yành, 'person,' is used as a Measure in duplicated form to
mean 'everybody.'

Ex: yànhyành = everybody
Yànhyành dōu jîngyi sîhk faahn. Everybody likes to eat.

4. dōsou, 'most,' 'the majority;' 'mostly,' 'for the most part,' 'the
majority of the time'
a. dōsou may modify an otherwise unmodified noun, in which case its
sentence position is before the noun:
Ex: Dōsou mâjóûgô dōu jîngyi Most children like to drink
yâm neïsêûi. soft drinks.
b. Elsewhere, dosou follows the subject and comes just before the verb.

Ex: 1. Kauh dosou gong
     Gwongdungwa.
     He speaks Cantonese most
     of the time.

2. Ngotdei dosou haah
    gam gong.
    We for the most part
    express it that way.

3. Go di yahn dosou
    gong Gwongdungwa.
    Those people speak Cantonese
    most of the time
    or:
    Those people-- most of them
    speak Cantonese.

(See BC and Drill 10)

5. keihsaht, 'in actuality,' 'really,' 'but really...'

Keihsaht leads off a response sentence, indicating disagreement with the
statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence.

Ex: Kauh wah keih sihk se jih.
     Keihsaht yat go jih dou
     minsik se.
     He said he could write Chinese,
     but actually he couldn't
     write a word.

(See BC)

6. lo bo, sen. suf.

The sentence suffix lo bo gives to the sentence to which it attaches the
connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or say-
ing whatever it is he is doing/saying.

Ex: A: Gwongdungwa tueung Gwo-
     kyuh yauh houdo hou
     chin ge.
     Cantonese and Mandarin have many
     similarities.

B: Neih jikhuaih wah, Gwong-
    dungwa tueung Gwokyuh
    mouh maeih daah fah-
    biht lo bo?!
    You're saying that Cantonese and
    Mandarin don't have any big dif-
   ferences?! (The English here
    would be more apt to be: 'You're
    not saying...' to indicate protest-
    ing disbelief.)

(See BC)
7. mihtuhng, 'not alike,' not used in the affirmative.

The verb tuhng, 'to be alike, similar to' is used in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ex:</th>
<th>Ni gihh tuhng g'go gihn tuhng mihtuhng a?</th>
<th>Are this one and that one alike?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>Ni gihh tuhng g'go gihn tuhng mihtuhng.</td>
<td>This one and that one are not alike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>Ni gihh tuhng g'go gihn tuhng mihtuhng.</td>
<td>This one and that one are not alike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Ni gihh tuhng g'go gihn yatyeuhng.</td>
<td>This one and that one are alike.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See BE and Drills 6, 7, 8)
III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh māhmā a?
   + (chīh X = resemble X)
   Do you think he looks like Mother?

+ 2. /Sāiyāhn/
   (Westerner, European, Caucasian)

2. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh Sāiyāhn a?
   Do you think he looks like a European?

+ 3. /Dākgwokyahān/
   (a German, Germans)

3. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh Dākgwokyahān a?

+ 4. /Faatgwokyahān/
   (Frenchman)

4. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh Faatgwokyahān a?

+ 5. /nēih sīnsāang/

5. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh nēih sīnsāang a?

+ 6. /kēuih bāhbā/

6. Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh kēuih bāhbā a?

Comment: Sāiyāhn [West-person], refers to Caucasians, and is translated as 'European' in Hong Kong, though it includes non-European Caucasians as well.

a. Repeat, with responses, according to teacher's nod or shake, thus:

   T: Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh kēuih māhmā a? /nod/
   S: Hōu chīh kēuih māhmā.

   T: Nēih wah kēuih chīh ānhchīh kēuih māhmā a? /shake/
   S: Dōu ānhchīh kēuih māhmā.


2. Substitution Drill:

Ex: T: Kēuih ha hā dá bō ge. T: He's a ball player.
   S: Kēuih dō ānhchīh haih dā bō gé.
   S: He doesn't look like a ball player.

1. Kēuih haih maaīng ngūk ge.
   He's a real estate agent.

2. Kēuih haih duhk syū ge.
   He's a student.

1. Kēuih dōu ānhchīh haih maaīng ngūk gé.

2. Kēuih dōu ānhchīh haih duhk syū gé.
He's a doctor. [work as a doctor, be a doctor]

4. Kèuih haih jyú faahn ge.  
She's a cook.

Comment: The sentence suffix gé said with light stress and rising intonation indicates doubt.

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

He speaks English just like an American.

2. /Yingmàn/Yinggwokyåhn/  

+ 3. /Faatmàn/Faagwokyåhn/  
(French language) (Frenchman)  
(also: Faatmåhn)

4. /Yahtmàn/Yahtbùnyåhn/  

+ 5. /Dékmàn/Dåkwokyåhn/  
(German language) (German person)  
(also: Dékmåhn)

+ 6. /bùndehwà/bùndehyåhn/  
(the local language)

4. Response Drill

Ex: T: Hmm... néih tèngdòu mèyèh sèng a?  
/dinnwà/

S: Hòu chinh haih dình-wà gâm sèng bo.

S: It sounds like a telephone.  
[It seems to be a telephone that kind of sound.]

T: What sound (or what noise) do you hear?

1. Hmm... néih tèngdòu mèyèh  

1. Hòu chinh haih dà páai gâm
LESSON 27  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

sèng a? /dá páai/
2. Hùm...néih tèngdòu mòyéh sèng a? /kènggái/
3. Hùm...néih tèngdòu mòyéh sèng a? /fòchē/
4. Hùm...néih tèngdòu mòyéh sèng a? /lāahmchē/
5. Hùm...néih tèngdòu mòyéh sèng a? /sàuyámchē/
++ 6. Hùm...néih màhndòu mòyéh meih a? /bèjáu/
    What smell do you smell?
    māhn = to smell
    meih = a smell

7. Hùm...néih màhndòu mòyéh meih a? /jìng bèng/
    What's that smell?
    Smells like a cake being baked.

5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: yáuhdī yáhn jùngyi dā páai, yáuhdī jùngyi yáuhsēui.
    T: Some people like to play mah-jong, others like to swim.
S: Ngôh yáuhsīh jùngyi dā páai, yáuhsīh jùngyi yáuhsēui.
    S: I sometimes like to play mahjong and sometimes like
to go swimming.

1. Yáuhdī yáhn tài hei, yáuhdī tài dīhnsīh.
1. Ngôh yáuhsīh tài hei, yáuhsīh tài dīhnsīh.
2. Yáuhdī yáhn hohk Gwōngduàngwā, yáuhdī hohk Gwokyūh.
4. Yáuhdī yáhn daap syūhn, yáuhdī chōh feisīi.
4. Ngôh yáuhsīh daap syūhn, yáuhsīh chōh feisīi.
5. Yáuhdī yáhn daap bāsī, yáuhdī chōh dīkseī.
5. Ngôh yáuhsīh daap bāsī, yáuhsīh chōh dīkseī.
6. Yáuhdī yáhn gōng Faatmān, yáuhdī gōng Dākmān.

272
6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: NI jéung tühng gó jeung yāteuehng ge jē.
    S: NI jéung ântūhng gó jeung ga.
    T: This one and that one are just alike.
    S: This one is not like that one.

1. NI faai tühng gó faai yāteuehng ge jē.
2. NI būi tühng gó būi yāteuehng ge jē.
3. NI tou tühng gó tou yāteuehng ge jē.
4. NI jì tühng gó jì yāteuehng ge jē.
5. NI jek tühng gó jek yāteuehng ge jē.
6. NI jéung tühng gó jéung yāteuehng ge jē.

Comment: tühng can be the verb of the predicate in the negative and question forms, but not in the affirmative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>ântūhng gó go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q</td>
<td>tühng ântūhng gó go a?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Nīgo tühng gó go yāteuehng.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This one is not like that one.
Is this one like that one?
This one is like that one.

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: NI būn tühng ântūhng gó būn a?
    S: NI būn tühng gó būn yāuh mōuh fānbiht a?
    T: Is this book like that one?
    S: Is there any difference between this book and that one?

1. NI deui tühng ântūhng gó deui a?
2. NI tiuh tühng ântūhng gó tiuh a?
3. NI bā tühng ântūhng gó bā a?

1. NI deui tühng gó deui yāuh mōuh fānbiht a?
2. NI tiuh tühng gó tiuh yāuh mōuh fānbiht a?
3. NI bā tühng gó bā yāuh mōuh fānbiht a?
LESSON 27 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

4. Nǐ bāau tūnhg m̀htūnhg gŏ bāau a? 4. Nǐ bāau tūnhg gŏ bāau yāuh m̀oh fànbiht a?
5. Nǐ gàau tūnhg m̀htūnhg gŏ gàan a? 5. Nǐ gàan tūnhg gŏ gàan yāuh m̀oh fànbiht a?
6. Nǐ jùng tūnhg m̀htūnhg gŏ jùng a? 6. Nǐ jùng tūnhg gŏ jùng yāuh m̀oh fànbiht a?

8. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Chàhlāuh tūnhg chān- T: What's the difference [what sat yāuh m̀eyēh things are not alike] between m̀htūnhg a? a Cantonese teahouse and a S: Chàhlāuh tūnhg chān- S: what's the difference (or what sat yāuh m̀eyēh are the differences) between fànbiht a? a Cantonese teahouse and a restaurant serving Western food?

1. Gwòngdṳng choi tūnhg Seuhng- 1. Gwòngdṳng choi tūnhg Seuhng- hōi choi yāuh m̀eyēh m̀htūnhg a? hōi choi yāuh m̀eyēh fànbiht a?
2. Jùngchoi tūnhg Sā ichān yāuh 2. Jùngchoi tūnhg Sā ichān m̀eyēh fànbiht a? yāuh m̀eyēh fànbiht a?
3. Jáugā tūnhg jāudim yāuh m̀eyēh 3. Jáugā tūnhg jāudim yāuh m̀eyēh m̀htūnhg a? m̀eyēh fànbiht a?
4. Chàhlāuh tūnhg jáugā yāuh 4. Chàhlāuh tūnhg jáugā yāuh m̀eyēh fànbiht a? m̀eyēh fànbiht a?
5. Ngūk tūnhg ngūkkēi yāuh 5. Ngūk tūnhg ngūkkēi yāuh m̀eyēh m̀eyēh fànbiht a?

9. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nǐ dī săam dŏsou haih lāahm ge. T: Most of these dresses are blue. /jeuk/ [blue ones].
S: Ngŏn dŏsou jeuk lāahm săam. S: I wear blue dresses most of the time, or I mostly wear blue dresses.


10. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gogo sailŏugō dōu jūngyi yām hei-seui.  T: All children like to drink soft drinks.
   S: Sailŏugō dòu sou dōu jūngyi yām hei-seui.  S: Most children like to drink soft drinks.

      Every woman likes to wear pretty clothes.
      Every man works.

Comment: Note the use of reduplicated Noun Measures gogo, gāngān to mean 'every,' 'each' Noun. This corresponds to the reduplicated time expression measures nihnihn, gogo lāihbaai, etc., previously studied, meaning 'every, each time expression.' Note also the tendency to form a set with dōu.
LESSON 27  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Deui ngôh làih gông, T: Speaking for myself, one thou-
yêt chîn mãn taai dó laak. or For me, one thousand dollars
S: Deui ngôh làih gông, S: For me, one thousand dollars
yêt chîn mãn dó gwotâuh laak.

1. Deui ngôh làih gông, nî bûn syù 1. Deui ngôh làih gông, nî bûn
taai nàahn laak. syû nàahn gwotâuh laak.
2. Deui ngôh làih gông, nî dî 2. Deui ngôh làih gông, nî dî
faaiji taai dyûn laak. faaiji dyûn gwotâuh laak.
3. Deui ngôh làih gông, gô 3. Deui ngôh làih gông, gô
gàan ngûk taai sai laak. gàan ngûk sai gwotâuh laak.
4. Deui ngôh làih gông, go sàu- 4. Deui ngôh làih gông, go sàu-
yangâei hûidâk taai daaîh sêng laak. yangâei hûidâk daaîh sêng
gwotâuh laak.
   + hûi sàuyangâei = turn on the radio
   For me, the radio is turned
   on too loud.

5. Deui ngôh làih gông, go làahng- 5. Deui ngôh làih gông, go
hei hûidâk taai dung laak. làahnghei hûidâk dung
   For me, the air conditioner
   is turned on too cold.

6. Deui ngôh làih gông, sàam gihn 6. Deui ngôh làih gông, sàam
   taai sîu laak. gihn sîu gwotâuh laak.
   For me, three is too few.

12. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Ngôh daap fîchê.  T: I’m going to take the train.
   Fîchê lêuhng dim hôi. The train leaves at two
S: Ngôh daap lêuhng dim o’clock.
   hôi ge fîchê.

1. Ngôh mûhjûngyî nûihyên. 1. Ngôh mûhjûngyî jûngyî gông
   Nûihyên jûngyî gông yêk. yêh ge nûihyên.
   I don’t like talkative
   women.

2. Nàahmyên jûngyî nûihyên. 2. Nàahmyên jûngyî sîk jûsîhk
   Nûihyên sîk jûsîhk ge nûihyên.

   276
3. Ngŏh ñhmáaih yéh.  
Máaih yéh yiu bèi hou dò chîn.  
Dâjâap ñhjûngyi jouth yéh.  
5. Këuih hòusiù màaih lângsàam.  
Lângsàam hou gwai.  

3. Ngŏh ñhmáaih yiu bèi hou dò chîn ge yéh.  
4. Ngŏh ñchêng ñhjûngyi jouth yéh ge dâjâap.  
I'm not going to hire an amah who doesn't like to work.  
5. Këuih hòusiù màaih hou gwai ge lângsàam.

13. Combining Drill

Ex: T: Gö go Yinggwoykàhn  
haih ngôh pânhg- 
yàuh. Këuih jeuk  
làahm sëoutsàam.  
S: Jeuk làahm sëoutsàam  
gö go Yinggwoykàhn  
haih ngôh pânhg- 
yàuh.  

T: That Englishman is my friend.  
He is wearing a blue shirt.  
S: That Englishman (who is)  
wearing the blue shirt is  
my friend.

That child is his son.  
He is swimming.  
2. Gö go yàühn haih ngôh màhmà.  
Këuih dàgàn dihnwà.  
3. Gö go ngoîhgwokyàhn gaaù ngôh Yingmàhn. Këuih yàmgàn  
chàh.  
* 5. Gö go sailounhûei haih ngôh  
ge neui. Këuih jeuk hûhng  
kwàhn. That little girl is my  
daughter.  
6. Gö go Faatgwokyàhn haih këuih  
nêuihpânhgyàuh. Këuih hài  
daaihhohk gaaù Faatmàhn.  

1. Yàuhgàn sëui gö go sailôugö  
haih këuih ge jái.  
That child (who is)  
swimming is his son.  
2. Dàgàn dihnwà gö go yàühn  
haih ngôh màhmà.  
3. Yàmgàn chàh gö go ngoîh-  
gwokyàhn gaaù ngôh Yingmàhn.  
4. Saiûn sàam gö go nêuihyàn  
haih ngôh dâjâap.  
5. Jeuk hûhng kwàhn gö go  
sailounhûei haih ngôh ge  
neui.  
6. Hài daaihhohk gaaù Faatmàhn  
gö go Faatgwokyàhn haih  
këuih nêuihpânhgyàuh.
LESSON 27  CANTONES E BASIC COURSE

14. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Nǐ léuhng júng chē, bin júng hóudi a? /Dākgwok/Faatgwok/
S: Dākgwok chē tūng. Faatgwok chē, bin júng hóudi a?
T: Which of these two kinds of cars is better? Or
Of these two kinds of cars which is better? /Germany/
France/
S: Which is better—German cars or French cars? [Between
German cars and French cars, which is better?]

1. Nǐ léuhng ga sāuyāmgeist, bin
ga hóudi a? /daaih gō ga/
sai gō ga/
2. Nǐ léuhng jèung tōi, bin jèung
lengdī a? /chēungdī gō
jèung/dyǔndī gō jèung/
3. Nǐ léuhng būn ayū, bin būn
+ pěngdī a? /hāuh gō būn/
+ bohk gō būn/
the thick one
the thin one
hāuh = thick
bohk = thin

4. Nǐ léuhng jī bējāu, bin jī
hōuyāndī a? /Nōunggōng/
Ngoingwok/
5. Nǐ léuhng go dùngyāhn, bin go
kānhnlhkdī a?
/daaiddī gō go/saiddī gō go/
/the older one/the younger
one/

15. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Gwōngdūngwá tūng
Gwoyūh dōu gam
nāahn ge laak.
S: Gwōngdūngwá tūng
Gwoyūh, Gwōng-
dūngwá nāahnī.
T: Cantonese and Mandarin are
both equally difficult.
S: Between Cantonese and Mandarin,
Cantonese is a bit more
difficult. Or
Cantonese is a bit more
difficult than Mandarin.

278
1. Faatmân tûnhg Dûkmân dû gam yih ge laak.
2. Ngûnh go tûnhg nêih go dû gam leuhnhjeuhg ge laak.
3. Nî tou tûnhg gô tou dû gam gauh ge laak.
4. Nî faaî tûnhg gô faaî dû gam háuh.
5. Nî gihn tûnhg gô gihn dû gam bohk.

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nî jêung tûnhg gô jêung yât-yeuhng gam gôu. /chêuhngdî/
    S: Nî jêung tûnhg jô jêung yât-yeuhng gam gôu, bâtgwo nî jêung chêuhngdî jê.

T: This one is as high as that one.
S: This one is as high as that one, but this one is a little longer.

1. Nî bûn tûnhg gô bûn yât-yeuhng gam daaih. /gwaidî/
2. Chôh bâsi tûnhg chôh fôchê yât-yeuhng gam û dó cînh. /noihdî/
3. Nî gàah tûnhg gô gàah yât-yeuhng gam û dó cînh jòu. /dô go chîsô/
4. Tûi dihnsîh tûnhg tûi heî yât-yeuhng gam hóu. /gûidî/
5. Syutgwaih tûnhg láahngheigêi yât-yeuhng gam gânyiu. /yuhng dôdî/
6. Daap fêigêi tûnhg daap syûnh yât-yeuhng gam gwai. /faaidî/

1. Faatmân tûnhg Dûkmân, Faatmân yihdî.
2. Ngûnh go tûnhg nêih go, ngûnh go leuhnhjeuhndî.
3. Nî tou tûnhg gô tou, nî tou gauhdî.
4. Nî faaî tûnhg gô faaî, nî faaî hâuhdî.
5. Nî gihn tûnhg gô gihn, nî gihn bohkî.

279
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) chà 阻dāk ぜi dō = 阻māndō = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]
2) 無gīndāk ぜī = Not necessarily!
3) 仏sanjin = anyway, besides,...
4) 極neih go yām jānhaī hā = You really are something!
5) saāngjō = gave birth (to)
6) hōisām = happy
7) jīhēi ge = one's own, your own, etc.
8) 極hāsāi gam mēyēh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?
9) séungfaat = idea, concept
10) A Jēung = Mrs. Jēung's husband
11) hōu chīh = similar to; A similar to B.

(À Jēung is similar to Wōng Tāai and the others that way in not liking girls.)

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:
1. Which is more expensive—Chinese food or Western food?
2. Does your child speak English or Cantonese?
3. Someone told me that some Americans don't speak English—is that true?
4. Miss Chan looks like her younger brother.

B. And he replies:
1. Perhaps Western food is more expensive; however among Chinese food some is cheap and some expensive.
2. He speaks Cantonese mostly, but he can speak a little English too.
3. Yes, it's true. Do all Chinese people know how to speak Chinese?
4. Do you know her mother? She also looks like her mother.
5. You speak Cantonese just like a Cantonese.
6. He's a teacher.
7. (sniff-sniff:) What's that smell?
8. How many languages can he speak altogether?
9. Are there two typewriters alike?
10. This radio is like that one, right?
11. This cloth is too thin--do you have any heavier?
12. I hear you speak Cantonese very well.
13. How do you like soup?
14. What's the difference between jäugä and ohâhlâuh?

5. You praise me too much—I speak very awkwardly.
6. He doesn't look like a teacher.
7. Smells like beer.
8. He speaks four altogether—French, German, English, and Cantonese.
9. No, this one isn't like that one.
10. Yes, they're just alike.
11. Yes, go downstairs.
12. Actually I just speak a few sentences.
13. It's too peppery for me.
14. Actually the difference is quite small.

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 27

1. bohk thin (in thickness, as of cloth)
2. bündeihwá local language
3. chíh v: is similar to; resembles
4. Dëkgwokyânh [go] n: German
5. Dëkmâhn (also: -mán) n: German (language)
6. dei X-lâih gông Ph: speaking for X, from the point of view of X
7. dôsou att/adv: mostly, for the most part; the majority
9. Faatmâhn (also: -mán) n: French (language)
10. fânbiht n: difference
11. hàuh adj: thick
12. hôi sâuyângëi VO: turn on the radio
13. jânh Ph: true; the truth
14. këihsaht Ph: in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence
15. lìhngsìngwún  n: consulate
16. lo bo!  ss: with connotation of good-natured protest that addressee is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying
17. mûhtûhng  v: not alike, used in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative
18. mûhn  v: to smell
19. meih  n: smell
20. nàahmyân [go]  n: man
21. néuihyân [go]  n: woman
22. sailouhmêuï [go]  n: little girl
24. sèng  n: sound
25. siu  adj: few
26. yàuhdï  Ph: some, a few
27. yàuhdï..., yàuhdï...  Ph: some..., others...
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Build-up:

(The amah answers a ring at the doorbell to find the postman at the door:)

Gungyahn

Jouh mat a?

Yauhchaa i

yauhchaa i

postman
gwahouh seun
registered letter
sau
receive, collect, take in
sau seun
receive letters
Sau gwahouh seun a.

Registered letter. [Receive a
postman registered letter.]

Gungyahn

sihtau

Dim syun a?

'How can we handle this?'
'What's to be done?'
Ngoh sihtau mhhai douh bo, dim

My boss isn't home—what'll

syun a?

I do?
saujuhh

procedure(s)
yiu meyeh saujuhh?

What procedure(s) is (are)
necessary?

Ngoh mhjii yiu meyeh saujuhh ga.

I don't know what the pro-

Yauhchaa i
cedure is.

Aghanyiu gah.

That's all right.

chih meng

sign one's name
chih go meng hai ni douh
sign your name here
yiuh neih chih go meng hai
require you to sign your
ni douh
name here
jiyiu... jauh
just have to...; as long
jiyiu neih chih go meng,
as you
jauh...

jiyiu neih chih go meng,
you just have to sign
ni douh, jauh dak ge laak.
your name, and...

Jiyuu neih chih go meng hai
You just have to sign your
ni douh, jauh dak ge laak.
name here, and you can have it.
Gungyahn

Amalik jih
Ngoh amalik jih ga, dim chim a?

Yauhchaaai

Juang yawh mouh binga sik
Jih ge hai douh a?
Chuihjio...(jingoih)

Chuihjio neih jingoia
Gam, chuihjio neih jingoia, juang
Yauh mouh binga sik jih ge hai
douh a?

Gungyahn

Mouh loh.

Yauhchaaai

Touhjeung
Gam, neih yawh mouh touhjeung a?

Gungyahn

So
Somaiah

Ngoh go touhjeung somaiahjio
Ngoh go touhjeung beijio
Sihtau

Ngoh go touhjeung beijio sihtau
tuhng ngoh somaiah.
Soih
Ngoh yawh mouh soih ge.
Gwaih
Gwahtung
Jinglaahn go gwaihtung
Jeung

Gungyahn

To be illiterate
I can't read or write--how can
I sign?

Is there anyone else here
who can read and write?
Aside from, apart from,
besides
Apart from you, besides you
Well, aside from you, is there
anyone else here who can
read and write?

No. (childishly feeling sorry
for herself)

Chop, seal
In that case, do you have a
chop?

To lock
Lock up, lock tight, lock
away
My chop has been locked up
My chop was given to the
boss
My chop I gave to the boss to
lock up for me.

Key
And I don't have the key.
Cupboard; dresser
drawer
Break the drawer
take
jìung go gwaihtüng jìnglaahn
chèveihfèi

Chèveihfèi jìung go gwaihtüng jìnglaahn lá... Yauhchàai
màhfsàahn
Syun laak.
Gàm a, gam màhfsàahn.
Syun la, syun laak.
bàtyûh...bà la(ak)
yàuhjìnggûk
bàtyûh heui yàuhjìnggûk ló
bà laak

jihgéi

sihtáu jihgéi
gíu néih sihtáu jihgéi
heui ló
gíu néih sihtáu jihgéi
heui yàuhjìnggûk ló

Bàtyûh giu néih sihtáu jihgéi
heui yàuhjìnggûk ló bà laak.

Gùngyành

Hòu la.
yàt Verb1, jauh Verb2 la.
yàt fàanlàih, jauh heui la

jìkhàsk
Kèuih yàt fàanlàih, ngôh jauh
gíu kèuih jìkhàsk heui lá.

take the drawer and break it; i.e., break the drawer unless; would have to; only if

Unless I took the drawer and broke it... (thinking it over)

trouble
Never mind! or Forget it!
Oh, such trouble!
Never mind!

it would be preferable to...
post office
it would be better to go to the post office to get it
oneself, himself, myself, etc.

the boss himself
tell your boss to go get it himself
tell your boss to go to the post office himself to get it

You'd better tell your boss to go to the post office himself to get it.

All right.
as soon as..., then...
as soon as he returns, he'll go immediately
As soon as he comes back, I'll tell him to go right away.
B. Recapitulation:
(The amah answers a ring at the doorbell to find the postman at the door:)

Gungyahn

Jouh māt a?

Yauhchāai

Sāu gwahouh seun a.

Gungyahn

Ngōh ścihtāu mhhái douh bo, dīm syun a?

Gungyahn

Ngōh mhhí yiu mēyēh sāujuhk ga.

Yauhchāai

Jīyiū néih chim go mēng hāi nīdouh, jaun dāk ge laak.

Gungyahn

Ngōh mhhík jih ga, dīm chim a?

Yauhchāai

Gām, chēuihjó néih jingōih, juhng yauh mōuh bīago sīk jih ge hāi douh a?

Gungyahn

Mōuh lōh.

Yauhchāai

Gām, néih yauh mōuh tōuhjēung a?

Yauhchāai

That's the way! [Be (it) the way (you) say]

Thanks a lot.

What is it?

Registered letter. [Take a registered letter.]

My boss isn't home--what'll I do?

I don't know what procedures are required.

You just have to sign your name here, and you can have it.

I can't read and write--how can I sign?

Well, aside from you, is there anyone else here who can read and write?

No.

In that case, do you have a chop?
Gunghyāhn
Ngōh go tōuhjeung bēijō sǐhtāu
tūhng ngōh sōmāaih.
Ngōh yaum móuh sōsīh gō.
Chēuihfēi jēung go gwahtūng
jīnglaahn lā...

Yāuhchāai
Gām a, gām máhfaahn.
Syun la, syun laak.
Bātyū h giū nēih sǐhtāu jīhgēi
heui yāuhjinggūk lō bā laak.

Gunghyāhn
Hōu la.
Kēuih yāt fānlāih, ngōh jauh giū
kēuih jīkhāak heui la.

Yāuhchāai
Saih gām wāh la.

Gunghyāhn
Thank you.

My chop I gave to the boss
to lock up for me.
And I don’t have the key.
Unless I broke the drawer...
(thinking it over)

Oh, such trouble!
Never mind!
You’d better tell your boss to
go to the post office himself
to get it.

All right.
As soon as he comes back, I’ll
tell him to go right away.

That’s the way.
II. NOTES

A. Culture Notes

tôuhjêung, 'seal,' 'chop'

A tôuhjêung is a seal (usually referred to as a 'chop') cut from stone or wood, bearing the name of the owner. Documents may be validated by stamping with one's chop rather than by signature.

B. Structure Notes

1. Jîyu,..., jauh,..., = 'If only... then...'; 'You just have to... and'; 'As long as... then...'

Ex: 1. Jîyu yauh sei go yahn, jauh hoyh da meh toh maahn, jëuk lëak.
    You have to have 4 people to play mahjong.

2. Jîyu baïh gônjehng goh, jauh gëi gauh dòu móoh sowaih goh. As long as it's clean, it doesn't matter how old it is.

(See BC)

2. Chèuhîjî... (jî ngoih)... = 'aside from... with the exception of...,' 'in addition to...'

a. Chèuhîjî... (jî ngoih), jühng... = 'aside from... also...,' 'in addition to... also...'

Ex: Chèuhîjî Meihgwok (jî ngoih), ngoi jëng, heui gwo Yahtyn tîm. Aside from America, I have also been to Japan. or: In addition to America, I have also been to Japan.

(See Drill 10)

b. Chèuhîjî... (jî ngoih), jauh mëyén (or bëndouh, etc.) dòu êVërb = 'Aside from... no thing/place/one/etc. else,' or 'With the exception of... no thing/place/one/etc. else.'

Ex: Chèuhîjî Meihgwok, jauh bëndouh dòu meih heui gwo laak. Aside from America, I haven't gone anywhere.

(See Drill 11)
The second clause may substitute a duplicated Measure expression (Ex: M-M  dōu) in place of the QW used as a non-question.

Ex: Chèuihjó Mēihgwok, ngōh douh douh dou meih heugweo. I haven't been anywhere except America.

c. Chèuihjó...(jī ngoih), M-M dōu... = 'aside from..., everything (or everyplace, etc.) else.'

Ex: Chèuihjó ngauyuhk (jī ngoih), nōg yewngyeuhng dou jungyi. Aside from beef, I like everything else.

(See Drill 12)

The second clause may substitute a QW used as a non-question in place of the duplicated Measure.

Ex: Chèuihjó ngauyuhk, ngōh weysh dou jungyi. Aside from beef, I like everything else.

3. chèuihfei, 'unless,' only if

a. In single clause sentences.

In a single clause sentence chèuihfei is restricted to use in follow sentences, as an afterthought. It introduces a necessary condition.


I'll give you a call before I leave—unless I don't have time. (...in which case I won't call...)

Here the necessary condition to not calling is not having time.

2. Ngōh mōu jōchīhn ge... Chèuihfei ngōh jinglaahn go gwahtūng īa...

I don't have a key...(thinking that therefore I can't get into the drawer)... Unless I broke the drawer ...(then could get in)

The necessary condition for getting into the drawer is breaking it open.

(See EC)
b. In double clause sentences.

In double clause sentences, cheuifai pairs with ji, jauh, or yuhgwo mhaaih, with cheuifai introducing the first clause, and the paired conjunction operating in the second clause. The cheuifai clause establishes the necessary condition, and the second states the consequences.

1. Cheuifai......,ji............ Must be..., in order that...
2. Cheuifai......,jauh............ Only if..., then...
3. Cheuifai......,yuhgwo mhaaih...... Unless..., then...

3. Cheuifai......,yuhgwo mhaaih...... Must..., otherwise,...

Ex: 1. Cheuifai keuih heui, ngoh ji heui.
   He'll have to go before I go.
   i.e., Only if he goes will I go.

2. Cheuifai keuih mheui, ngoh jauh heui.
   Only if he doesn't go, will I go.
   or:
   I'll go unless he doesn't.

3. Cheuifai keuih mheui, ngoh jauh mheui lak.
   If he doesn't go, I won't go.

4. Cheuifai keuih heui; yuhgwo mhaaih, ngoh mheui.
   He'll have to go; otherwise, I won't go.

(See Drills 5-9)

4. bátyuh. bá laak (or lá) => 'it would be better to...'

Bátyuh...bá laak suggests alternate plan X as being preferable to the plan already proposed.

Ex: A: Ngódeih maaih níddi hou mhóu a?
   Let's buy these, what do you say?

B: Níddi taaj gwai, bátyuh maaih pehngdí ge bá lá.
   These are too expensive--it would be better to buy cheaper ones instead.

(See BC and Drill 2)

5. fót..., jauh... = as soon as..., (then)...

These two form a set of paired conjunctions joining two clauses in a sentence.
Ex: Ngóh yát yáuh chín,   As soon as I have some money,
(ngóh) jauh chéng néih I'll invite you out to
síhk faahn laak.  dinner.

(See BC and Drill 7)

6. jeung, 'take'

jeung N, V. = take N and V it.

This pattern rearranges a basic VO structure into two verbal phrases, with the object of the basic VO structure brought forward in the sentence to become the object of jeung, thus:

VO becomes jeung O, V...

Ex: V  O   jeung O  V
    dalaahn go gwaihtung  jeung go gwaihtung dalaahn
    break the drawer  take the drawer and break it

(See BC)

This pattern only occurs if the basic verb is a two-part verb or has a post verbal complement.

(The jeung O, V-complement pattern in Cantonese is the equivalent of the bā O, V-complement pattern in Mandarin, but the bā construction is more common in Mandarin than is the jeung construction in Cantonese.)
III. DRILLS

1. Expansion Drill

+ 1. a. dihnbou
   b. fùng dihnbou
   + c. dà fùng dihnbou
   d. dà fùng dihnbou bêi mâhmâ
   e. heui dà fùng dihnbou bêi mähmâ.
   + f. heui dihnbouguhk dà fùng dihnbou bêi mähmâ++
   g. sêung heui dihnbouguhk dà fùng dihnbou bêi mähmâ
   h. Ngôh sêung heui dihnbouguhk dà fùng dihnbou bêi mähmâ.

Comment: A common alternate pronunciation of dihnbouguhk is dihnbougûk.

2. a. seun
   + b. gei seun
   c. heui gei seun
   d. heui yâuhjînggûk gei seun
   e. heui jógân yâuhjînggûk gei seun
   f. yiu heui jógân yâuhjînggûk gei seun
   g. Ngôh yiu heui jógân yâuhjînggûk gei seun.

   + 3. a. wûih seun
   b. wûih seun bêi kêuih
   c. mën dâkhâahn wûih seun bêi kêuih tîm

2. a. letter(s)
   + b. mail letters, send letters
   c. go to mail letters
   d. go to the post office to mail letters
   e. go to the nearby post office to mail a letter
   f. have to go to the nearby post office to mail some letters
   g. I have to go to the nearby post office to mail letters.

3. a. answer a letter, reply by letter
   b. answer his letter, reply to him by letter
   c. haven't had time to answer his letter
d. juhng meih dákhaahn wuǐh seun bēi kéuih tíṃ

e. ngōh juhng meih dákhaahn wuǐh seun bēi kéuih tíṃ

f. Lēuhng go láihbaai laak, ngōh juhng meih dákhaahn wuǐh seun bēi kéuih tíṃ.

g. Yingying léuhng go láihbaai laak, ngōh juhng meih dákhaahn wuǐh seun bēi kéuih tíṃ.

d. still haven’t had time to answer his letter

e. I still haven’t had time to answer his letter.

f. It’s been 2 weeks, and I still haven’t had time to answer his letter.

g. It’s already been two weeks, and I still haven’t had time to answer his letter.

4. a. chēuhng tōuh

b. chēuhng tōuh dihnwā

c. dā chēuhng tōuh dihnwā

4. a. ‘long distance’
b. long distance phone call
c. make a long distance phone call
d. make a long distance call and tell him.

e. ought to make a long distance phone call and tell him

f. ought to make a long distance phone call and tell him
g. ought to make a long distance phone call immediately and tell him

h. You ought to make a long distance phone call immediately and tell him.

2. Response Drill:

Ex: T: Ngōh jihgēi heui lō./sihtāu/
   S: Bātyūh sihtāu heui bā láā.

T: I'll go get it myself. /boss/
   S: It would be better for the boss to go instead.


   /māaih/


   /léuhng gihn/
/á dihnbou/
Méihgam. /baak îngî/
bâ lâ.
5. Ngóh séung ngaandi fan gaau. 5. Bâtyûn yîngî heui fan bâ lâ.
/yîngî/
yîsâng. /gàmyaht/

3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Kêuih yêt dâk'hâahn, jauh heui tái hei.
The moment he gets some leisure time, he goes to see a movie. or
As soon as he has some leisure time, he'll go to see a movie. or
As soon as he had some leisure time, he went to see a movie.
2. /yâuh chîn/jài heui ngânhôhng/
2. Kêuih yêt yâuh chîn, jauh jài heui ngânhôhng.
(receive a letter)
5. /gau chîn/jouh sân sâm/
5. Kêuih yêt gau chîn, jauh jouh sân sâm.
(not feel well; i.e. feel sick)
The moment he felt sick, he saw a doctor.

294
4. Expansion Drill.

Ex: T: Ángôi néih tûnh ngôh sái gônjehng go chyûh-fông là.
S: Ángôi néih jîkhâak tûnh ngôh sái gônjehng go chyûh-fông là.

T: Please clean the kitchen.
S: Please clean the kitchen right away.

1. Ángôi néih tûnh ngôh tonghâh tiuh kwânh là.
2. Ángôi néih tûnh ngôh sàanjô go sàuyâmgiâ là.
( sàanjô sàuyâmgiâ = turn off the radio)
Please turn off the radio.
3. Ángôi néih tûnh ngôh heui màih dî bêng fàanlài là.
Please go out for me and buy some cookies and bring them back.

4. Ángôi néih heui wânhâh kêuîh là.
5. Ángôi néih yahpheui tàihâh kêuîh jouh mèôh là.

5. Expansion Drill.

Ex: T: Hôu tîhm jî sihk.
S: Chêuih-fêí hôu tîhm, jî sihk.

T: Only if it's sweet will I eat it, or I won't eat it unless it's sweet.
S: Only if it's sweet will I eat it, or It has to be very sweet before I eat it.

1. Hôu ngâahnfan jî fan.
2. Hôu gônjehng jî yiu.
3. Hôu gênghot jî yâm sêui.

1. Chêuih-fêí hôu ngâahnfan, jî fan.
2. Chêuih-fêí hôu gônjehng, jî yiu.
3. Chêuih-fêí hôu gênghot, jî yâm sêui.
4. Hōu dung ji jeuk lāangsāams.

+ 5. Hōu yiht ji hōi láahnghēi.
   It has to be very hot before
   I turn on the air conditioner.

6. Hōu guih ji fan.

7. Hōu daaih sēng ji tēngdākdōu.

---

6. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: ɐfněfu dōu ɐhmjouh. T: If you don't tell him, he
   won't do it.

   S: Chēuǐfēi fänfu,
   ji jouh.

   S: Only if you order him will he
   do it. (i.e. unless you tell
   him, he won't do it.)

1. ɐhmahn, dōu ɐhgōng.
2. ɐhchéng, dōu ɐhlah̄i.
3. ɐngiu, dōu ɐhheisān.
4. ɐh tá, dōu ɐhpā.
   If you don't spank him, he
   won't take you seriously.
5. ɐhɡōng, dōu ɐhmjídou.
   If he hadn't told me, I
   wouldn't know.
6. ɐhhohk, dōu ɐhsīk.

---

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Yūnghvó hōu pēhng, T: If it's very cheap, I'll buy
   ngh jauh màaih gé. it.

   S: Chēuǐfēi hōu pēhng-- S: It has to be cheap, otherwise
   màih, jauh mà-
   màaih.

   Unless it's cheap, I won't buy it.

1. Yūnghvó hōu leng, ngh jauh
   jūngyi gé.
2. Yūnghvó hōu yih, ngh jauh
   hohk gé.

---

1. Chēuǐfēi hōu leng--màih, jauh màjūngyi.
2. Chēuǐfēi hōu yih--màih, jauh màhohk.

296
3. Yûngwó hòu kânhlihk, ngóh jauh chèng gé.
   3. Chèuihféi hòu kânhlihk--mûnhaih, jauh ènhchêng.
4. Yûngwó hòu chàauh, ngóh jauh tong gé.
   4. Chèuihféi hòu châauh--mûnhaih, jauh ènh tong.
5. Yûngwó hòu yeh, ngóh jauh chôh dikê gé.
   5. Chèuihféi hòu yeh--mûnhaih, jauh ènhchôh dikê.
6. Yûngwó hòu meih, ngóh jauh sihk gé.
   6. Chèuihféi hòu meih--mûnhaih, jauh ènhsihk.

8. Alteration Drill

   Ex: T: Mhphêng, dòu ènhmâaih. T: If it's not cheap, I won't buy it.
   S: Chèuihféi hòu péhng ji mûnhaih.
   S: Only if it's cheap will I buy it.
   or
   It has to be cheap, before I buy it.

1. Mûnhêng, dòu ènhjeuk.
2. Mûnhôu, dòu ènhmâaih.
3. Mûntôuhngoh, dòu ènhsihk.
5. Mûnhlahttaat, dòu ènhwuhn.
6. Mûntîhm, dòu ènhsihk.

9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Chèuihféi kêuih jáu sin lâ. (i.e. Unless he leaves, I'm not going to leave. or He'll have to go first, before I move an inch.)
   1. Chèuihféi kêuih jáu sin lâ.
   he would have to (or will have to) leave first.
2. /sihk/
   2. Chèuihféi kêuih sihk sin lâ.
3. /wán/ 3. Chêuihfêi kêuih wán sin là. She'll have to start looking for it first (before I'll help her).
5. /fânfu/ 5. Chêuihfêi kêuih fânfu sin là.
7. /chîhdou/ 7. Chêuihfêi kêuih chîhdou sin là. He would have to be late for work first (before I have an excuse to fire him.)

a. Do the above exercise again, the teacher giving the right hand column sentences, and the students in turn expanding the sentences with a related clause, for example:

T: Chêuihfêi kêuih chêng sin là.
S: Chêuihfêi kêuih chêng sin là, ngônh jî chêng kêuih.
I'll only invite him if he invites me first.

10. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chêuijhô Méihgwok, néih juhng heuigwo bindouh a? /Yahtbûn/
S: Chêuijhô Méihgwok, ngônh juhng heuigwo Yahtbûn tim.

T: In addition to (or aside from) America, where else have you been? /Japan/
S: In addition to (or aside from) America, I've also been to Japan.

1. Chêuijhô Wôhng Sàang, néih juhng sîk bîngo a? /Wôhng Tàai/
2. Chêuijhô jîy faahn, néih juhng sîk joh meyêh a? /tong sàam/
3. Chêuijhô Gwôngdúngwá, néih juhng sîk gông meyêh wà a? /Gwokyûh/
4. Chêuijhô hûng sîk, néih juhng jîngyi meyêh sîk a? /luhk/
+ /suynlaah tông/
  (tihmseyún yú = sweet and sour fish)
  (suynlaah tông = vinegar-pepper soup)
What else do you want besides sweet and sour fish?

11. Response Drill

Ex: T: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, néih juhg heuigwo bîndouh a?
    S: Chèuihjó Méihgwok, ngóh jauh bîndouh dòu mèih heuigwo laak.

1. Chèuihjó cháau faahn, néih juhg sihhjó mèyh a?

2. Chèuihjó châunglim, néih juhg màihjó mèyh a?

3. Chèuihjó jì bāt, néih juhg wàndou mèyh a?

4. Chèuihjó tái syù, néih juhg jîuôjó mèyh a?

5. Chèuihjó heûi kûiuh douh, néih juhg yiu heui bînseyu a?
  (+ bînseyu = where?)

6. Chèuihjó jyú cháahn jingoih, néih juhg sîk jîu mèyh a?

   Comment: bînseyu and bîndouh are used interchangeably. In
   Hong Kong bîndouh is heard more frequently than bînseyu.
12. Substitution Drill:

1. Chûuhjô yâuhséui jîngoih,
   ngôh yeuhungyeuhng dòu jûngyì.
   Aside from swimming, I like everything.
   or
   With the exception of swimming, I like everything.

2. /laaht yêh/

3. /tâi ayû/

4. /dá jih/

5. /jû fahnh/

6. /Yahtbûn choi/

7. /léuıhhâhng/

13. Expansion Drill

a. wûih seun
b. wûih seun bêi ngôh
c. meih wûih seun bêi ngôh
d. juhng meih wûih seun bêi ngôh
e. kêuih juhng meih wûih seun bêi ngôh
f. daahnhaih kêuih juhng meih wûih seun bêi ngôh
g. ngôh sêjô fung seun bêi kêuih, daahnhaih kêuih juhng meih wûih seun bêi ngôh
h. Ngôh yêt go láihbaai chîhnh
   sêjô fung seun bêi kêuih, daahnhaih kêuih juhng

a. answer a letter
b. answer my letter
c. hasn't answered my letter
d. still hasn't answered my letter.
e. She still hasn't answered my letter.
f. but she still hasn't answered my letter.
g. I wrote a letter to her, but she still hasn't replied.
h. I wrote her a letter a week ago, but she still hasn't replied.
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE  
LESSON 28

meih wuih seun bei ngoh.

14. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngoh yat go laihbaai (ji) 
   chihm sejoe fung seun bei 
   kouih, daahnhaih kouih 
   juhung meih wuih seun bei 
   ngoh.
   I wrote him a letter a week 
   ago, but he still hasn’t 
   answered.

2. /bun go yuht/

3. /sei houh/

4. /louhng go laihbaai/

5. /louhng go gei laihbaai/

6. /louhng go lehng laihbaai/
   (a little more than two 
   weeks)

7. /go gei laihbaai/

1. Ngoh yat go laihbaai (ji) 
   chihm sejoe fung seun bei 
   kouih, daahnhaih kouih 
   juhung meih wuih seun bei 
   ngoh.

2. Ngoh bun go yuht jichihn 
   sejoe fung seun bei kouih, 
   daahnhaih kouih juhung 
   meih wuih seun bei ngoh.

3. Ngoh sei houh jichihn sejoe 
   fung seun bei kouih, 
   daahnhaih kouih juhung 
   meih wuih seun bei ngoh. 
   I wrote him a letter 
   before the 4th of the 
   month, but he still hasn’t 
   answered.

4. Ngoh louhng go laihbaai 
   jichihn sejoe fung seun 
   bei kouih, daahnhaih kouih 
   juhung meih wuih seun bei 
   ngoh.

5. Ngoh louhng go gei laihbaai 
   jichihn sejoe fung seun 
   bei kouih, daahnhaih kouih 
   juhung meih wuih seun bei 
   ngoh.

6. Ngoh louhng go lehng laih-
   baai jichihn sejoe fung 
   seun bei kouih, daahnhaih 
   kouih juhung meih wuih seun 
   bei ngoh. 
   I wrote him a letter more 
   than two weeks ago, but 
   he still hasn’t answered.

7. Ngoh go gei laihbaai jichihn 
   sejoe fung seun bei kouih, 
   daahnhaih kouih juhung meih 
   wuih seun bei ngoh.
15. Combining Drill

S: Ngóh béijó dī chín kēuih tūhng ngóh jāiheui ngānhōhng.

T: I gave him the money.
He put it into the bank for me.

S: The money I gave (him), he put in the bank for me.

1. Kēuih béijó būn syū ngóh tūhng kēuih sōmāaih hāi gwaihtūng.
   (jāi-māaih = put in and close up)
5. Māhmā béijó gàan ūk ngóh tūhng kēuih jōūjó bēi yāhn.

16. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Yáu h chìn, jauh meyh dōu māaihdōu.
S: Jiyiu yáuh chinyin, jauh meyh dōu māaihdakdōu.

T: When you have money, you can buy anything.

S: As long as you have money, you can buy anything.

1. Yáu sīngsaan, jauh bīndou dōu māaihdōu.

1. Jiyiu yáuh sīngsaan, jauh
2. Yáuh wùih seun, jauh géisi dòu heuidák.
   When you get a response, you can go any time.

3. Gau yàhn, jauh géi chëuhng dòu níngdák.
   When there are enough people, you can move it no matter how heavy it is.

4. Yáuhdák sikh, jauh mèyh dòu dák.

5. Yáuhdák jyuh, jauh géichìn yáhung dòu dák.

17. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Néih sàudòu Léih Tàai fùng seun meih a?
   Have you received Mrs. Lee's letter yet?

2. /sàu màusàudòu/

3. /juhng meih sàudòu ...mè?/

4. /géisi/

5. /yáuh mòuh/

18. Expansion Drill:

Ex: 1. T: Kéuih mèyh yuhk /beef/ dòu sikh ge.
   S: Chëuijhó ngành- yuhk, këuih mèyh eats all meats.

ex: 2. T: Kéuih mèyh yuhk /beef/ dòu sikh ge.
   S: With the exception of beef, he eats all kinds of meat except beef.

T: He eats all meats. /beef/
**LESSON 28  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S: Chèuihjó ngáuh-yuhk, kéuih mèyèh yuhk dòu ānhsīhk ge.</th>
<th>S: With the exception of beef, he doesn't eat any meat. or He doesn't eat any meat except beef.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Kèuih mèyèh choi dòu jùngyi. /Yahtbún choi/+/</td>
<td>2. Chèuihjó Yahtbún choi, kéuih mèyèh choi dòu jùngyi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He likes all kinds of liquor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

**Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:**

1) fo = goods
2) lái? = láih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.
3) nīkheuī = nīngheuī
4) āmchüh bo = Not likely!
5) Ján māhfaahn = What a nuisance!
6) A Jyū = servant’s name
7) Siu Nāai = term of address used by servant in the family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family' but it is not now restricted to that meaning.
8) louh = road
9) hōi wūhhāu = open an account

---

304
V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Could you please tell me how to get to the cablegraph office?

2. I got a cablegram from my younger sister yesterday.

3. Oh-oh, I broke the teapot--what'll I do?

4. I'll go get it myself.

5. I think I'll go to bed a little later.

6. Have you gotten a letter from your girl friend recently?

7. It's already been two weeks--she certainly must have received my letter.

8. Mr. Brown asked us for dinner, but I don't want to go.

9. Hey, I can't find the key!

10. Please tell Mrs. Cheung to call me as soon as she gets in.

11. I have to go to the office as soon as I finish breakfast.

12. What kinds of alcoholic beverages do you like?

13. I like all alcoholic beverages except beer.

14. What procedures are required for getting an ID card?

15. I'm illiterate--how can I sign my name?!

B. And he replies:

1. It's just beyond the Mandarin Hotel--do you know where the Mandarin is?

2. What did she say?

3. You'd better buy another one.

4. It's better for the boss to go.

5. You'd better go now, otherwise you'll be tired in the morning.

6. Yes, I got one the day before yesterday, but I haven't had time to answer it yet.

7. Unless she's off on a trip.

8. Unless you go, I'm not going.

9. It doesn't matter, the door isn't locked.

10. All right--does she know your phone number?

11. Do you drive down, or take the bus?

12. I don't like anything but beer.

13. You and I are not a bit alike!

14. I don't know. If you're an American, you'd better go to the American Consulate and ask.

15. So long as you use a chop, it's OK.
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>bētyū̀h .x. bá laak  (or ...bā lā)</td>
<td>PhF: it would be preferable to do X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>bǐnsyu?</td>
<td>QW: where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>chēuihfeí</td>
<td>MA/Cj: unless...; only if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>chēuihjó... (jí ngsoh)</td>
<td>PhF: aside from...; other than...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>chēuŋng tōuh dihnwā</td>
<td>n: long distance phone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>chīm mēng</td>
<td>VO: sign one's name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>dā chēuŋng tōuh dihnwā</td>
<td>VO: make a long distance phone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>dā dihnbou</td>
<td>VO: send a telegram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>dihnbou</td>
<td>n: telegram, ceblegam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>dihnbougukh or dihnbouguhk</td>
<td>n: telegram office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Dīm syun a?</td>
<td>Ph: 'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>fūng</td>
<td>m: for letter, telegram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>gēi</td>
<td>v: to mail, send by mail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>gēi sæun</td>
<td>VO: mail a letter, send a letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>gwahouh</td>
<td>VO: to register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>gwahouhsæun</td>
<td>n: registered letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>gwaltúng</td>
<td>n: drawer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Hāih gām wah lā.</td>
<td>Ph: That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>hōi lāahnghei</td>
<td>VO: turn on the air conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>jōung</td>
<td>CV: take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>ji=ngi</td>
<td>NAdjunct: oneself, myself, himself, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>jikhak</td>
<td>adv: immediately, right away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>jīlyu... , jauh...</td>
<td>PCj: just have to...; then...; as long as you...; then...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>lōh</td>
<td>ss: sen. suf. signifying a bid for sympathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>-mîaîh</td>
<td>VSuf: together; tight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>māh̥fangh</td>
<td>adj/n: trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>mîjîngsåhn</td>
<td>adj: not feel well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>mînsk jīh</td>
<td>Ph: illiterate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>sān sauỹ̠angsi</td>
<td>VO: turn off the radio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30. sàu  v: receive, collect, take in
31. sàu seun  VO: receive a letter
32. sáu juhk  n: procedure(s)
33. siñtám  n: employer, boss
34. só  v: look
35. só mááih  V: lock up, lock tight
36. só sám  n: key
37. Syun la(ak)l  Ph: Never mind! or Forget it!
38. syúnlsaht tóng  Np: vinegar-pepper soup
39. tihmsyuín yú  Np: sweet and sour fish
40. tóujùng  n: chop, seal
41. wúih seun  VO: answer a letter
42. yášt y₁, jauh y₂ la.  PCj: as soon as..., then...
43. yáuhschaai  n: postman
44. yáuhsjínggúk  n: post office
45. yáuhsjíngguhk  n: post office
46. yeuhngyeuhng  mm: everything, every kind of thing
LESSON 29  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung:)

Hôh Sàang

yiú (Person Verb)

make (someone do something,)
cause (someone to do something)

Jèung Sàang, yiú néih dàngjó gam
noih, jànhaih ânhóu yisi lask.

Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible
about making you wait for so long.

Jèung Sàang

Ngânyiu.

faatsàng
ngóhn pa faatsângjó møjéh sîh

That's all right.

Daxnhaih ngóhn ji néih hóusíu
chîndou ge, ngóhn pa faatsângjó
møjéh sîh jô.

But I knew you are very seldom
late, and I was afraid something
had happened.

Hôh Sàang

Haíh a.

johng
-chân
johngchân
bêı

That's right.

ngóhn néuinphânggyâuh bêı chê
johngchân
yîyûn

My girl was injured by a
car

Ngóhn néuinphânggyâuh bêı chê johng-
chân, yahpjo yîyûn a.

hospital

Jèung Sàang

Haíh âhi Géisî a?

Really! When?

Hôh Sàang

fonggûng

leave work, get, off from
work

308
tâuhsën
Tâuhsën ngóhdeih fonggung gójän ja.

Jèung Sâang

amâh

ngâihhîm
Môuh ngâihhîm amâh?

Hôh Sâang

Môuh!

'Nothing special' a response making little of the topic discussed.

chôchô
chôchô yîhwâih hou ngâihhîm

At first I thought it was quite serious.

Môuh! Chôchô ngóh juhng yîhwâih hou ngâihhîm tîm.
sâumî
fû youhk
Sâumî fûjó youhk, yîsâng jauh wah làndák ngûkkîi laak.

Jèung Sâang

Johngchân bîndouh a?

Hôh Sâang

géuk
tyûnh gwât

Johngchân jek géuk, hóuchôi môuh tyûndou gwât ja.

Jèung Sâang

Hái bîndouh johngchân ga?

Hôh Sâang

yûhn
lèih X

far
(distance) from X
lēih ngŏndeih sējihlăuh mōunggēiyûhn
Lēih ngŏndeih sējihlăuh mōuh-gōiyûhn ja.

Jēung Sāang

gahnjyuh
Gahnjyuh Jūnggwok Ngānhŏhng
gōdouh âh?

Hōh Sāang

jīgāan
hái 1 tūhng 2 jīgāan
Eh (nooding his head). Jauh hái
Jūnggwok Ngānhŏhng tūhng
Sūnhahôi Ngānhŏhng jīgāan
lŏu.

Jēung Sāang

ayun

Mŏuh sīh dōu ayun hóuchōi laak.

Hōh Sāang

Ngŏh dōu haih gām wah laak.

B. Recapitulation:

(Mr. Ho arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Cheung!)

Hōh Sāang

Jēung Sāang, yiu néih dăngjŏ
gam noih, jānhaih âhhōu yisi
laak.

Jēung Sāang

Ahgányiu.
Daahnhaîh ngŏh ji néih hōesīu
chihdou ge, ngŏh pa faatsăngjŏ

Mr. Cheung, I feel terrible about making you wait for so long.

That's all right.

But I knew you are very seldom late, and I was afraid some-
méyéh sih jé.

Höh Såang

That's right.

Haïh a.

That's right.

Ngôh néuihpâhngyáuh bēi chē
johngchân, yahpjó yîyún a.

Höh Såang

My girl was hit by a car and
went to the hospital.

Jâung Såang

Really! When?

Tâuhsín ngôhdeih fonggùng gôjân
ja.

Hôn Såang

Just a while ago as we were
leaving work.

Jêung Såang

It wasn't serious, was it?

Mòuh ngâihhím amáh?

Hôn Såang

At first I thought it was
quite serious.

Mòuh! Chôchô ngôh juhng yihwâih
hôu ngâihhím tim.

In the end, after getting
treated with medicine, the
doctor said she could go home.

Sâumâi fujó yeuḥk, yîsâng jauh
wah fàâandâk ūkkéi laak.

Jêung Såang

Where (on the body) did she
get hurt?

Johngchân bîndouh a?

Hôn Såang

She got hurt in the leg--fortu-
nately the bone wasn't broken.

Johngchân jek geuk--hôouchōi mòuh
tyûhndou gwât ja.

Where (in the city) was she
hurt?

Jêung Såang

Lêih ngôhdeih sêjhîlâuh mòuh-
géiyûhn ja.

At a place not far from our
office.

Jêung Såang

Near the Bank of China?

Gahnjyuh Jûnggwok Ngànhnhôhng
gôdouh âh?

Hôn Såang

Eh (nodding his head). Jauh hái

Un-huh (nodding his head).
LESSON 29 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

Jungwook Ngánhnhìng tāng
Seuhngkói Ngánhnhìng jîgāan
lòh.

Jèung Sâang
Mōuh sīh dōu sīyun hōuchōi laak.

Hōh Sâang
Ngōh dōu haik gām wah laak.

II. NOTES

1. S bēi agent V sentence.

The agent of a painful action may be expressed in a co-verb phrase: bēi + agent, 'by agent,' 'suffer agent' (to V). In such sentences the subject of the sentence is that thing or person receiving the harmful action.

S bēi agent V
Ex: Go sailōugō bēi chē johngchān. The child was struck and injured by a car. [The child suffered a car to bump into and injure him]

a. Similarities to English passive construction.
1) As with the English passive, the subject of the bēi X sentence is the receiver rather than the doer of the action.
2) The bēi X phrase is similar to the 'by' X' phrase in English identifying the doer of the action.
b. Dissimilarity to English passive construction.

In English there is a compulsory difference in verb form dependent on whether the subject of the sentence is the doer or receiver of the action of the verb (He hits/He is hit). In Cantonese the form of the verb is the same whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S</th>
<th>(bēi X) V</th>
<th>(O)</th>
<th>S V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ga chē</td>
<td>johngchān go sailōugō.</td>
<td>The car struck the child.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go sailōugō bēi chē johngchān.</td>
<td>The child was struck by the car.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See BC and Drill 3)
2. *yiu* (person verb) = 'make (someone do something)' 'cause (someone to do something)

Example:

1. Yiu neih jing mhou yis bo. I feel bad about making you fix it. (said by guest to hostess who has fixed tea herself in the absence of the cook)

2. Keuih mhuuih yiu ngoh heui ge. He can't make me go.

3. Keuih mouh yiu ngoh heui. He didn't make me go.

4. Ni di yin haih mhhaih yisang yiu neih sink ga? Is the doctor making you take these pills?

(See BC and Drill 10)


*amáh* (or *amá*) has two different uses.

(1) as an interrogative sentence suffix checking on an assumption *amáh?*

Example:

1. Mouh neaih hi amáh? (It) wasn't serious, was it?

2. Neih mhhaih dang ngoh amá? You're not waiting for me, are you?

3. Neih luuk dim ji fong gung amá? It's six o'clock that you get off work, isn't it?

4. Neih juhung meih yauh dihwái amá? You still don't have a phone yet, do you?

The *amá*? question suffix reflects a question in the mind of the speaker as to whether the idea he has about the situation is right.

Compare:

Neih luuk dim ji fong gung ah. You get off at six, don't you. (is sure that he does--the question is merely rhetorical)

Neih luuk dim ji fong gung amá? You get off at six, don't you? (thinks that he does, but checking to make sure)

(See BC)

(2) as a non-interrogative, adds the connotation 'it's obvious that that's why/where/what/who' in a response sentence: *amáh*. **313**
Ex: A. Keuih dìmgaai gamyag tshfàan gung a? How come she's not at work today?
B. Keuih yauh bëng ìma. Because she's sick. (implying nicely, not impatiently, that it's obvious she'd have to be sick not to be at work)

(See Drill 15)

4. hái bëndouh johngchang a? = where (on the map) did you get hurt?
   johngchang bëndouh a? = where (on the body) did you get hurt?
   In English 'Where did you get hurt?' could elicit the answer: 'On my elbow' or 'In the back yard,' but in Chinese the geographic place an action occurred is expressed in a hái phrase preceding the other verb, and the place on the body is expressed as the object of a VO construction.
   Ex: Ngóh hái yauh jinggùk deuminn johngchang.
       I got hit opposite the post office.
   Ngóh johngchang go tâu. I got hit on the head.

5. hái X tûng Y jîgaan = between X and Y
   yauh X dou Y jîgaan = between X and Y
   These two phrases pattern with the two different types of Placeword sentences: (1) the S hái PW sentence, and (2) the PW Subject yauh M-N sentence.

   a. hái X tûng Y jîgaan operates in the predicate in the S hái Placeword pattern.

   Ex: S
   | P
   Sp-M-N )
   or
   Proper name / Subj hái PW
   Jûnggwok Ngânhnhöng hái Mâhtâu tûng Mëihgówk Jâudia jîgaan.
   The Bank of China is between the Pier and the American Hotel.

(See BC and Drill 11)

314
b. يأوihu_(filters) يطع_yuungh operates as the subject in the Placeword yأوihu
M-N pattern.
Ex: S  
\[
\text{P} \\
\text{FW-Subject}  \\
\text{yأوihu M-N}
\]

Yأوihu nأتङ्ग dawn مهइगुळ jأौघim jिगाग्न yأौघ gaan ngातहोङ्ग.

Between the Pier and the American Hotel there's a bank.

(See Drill 22)

The FW-Sub yأوihu M-N sentence type permits हेअ X तूङ्ग y jिगाग्न in
Subject position as the FW-Subject.
Ex: हेअ X तूङ्ग y jिगाग्न yأौघ Between X and Y there's a bank.

gaan ngातहोङ्ग.

But the S हेअ FW sentence type doesn't permit the yأوihu X दूङ्ग y jिगाग्न
pattern.

6. लॅिघ Placeword (distance) from Placeword
a. Distance away from a place is expressed:

X लॅिघ Placeword (yأوihu) adj of distance/distance measure
Ex: 1. जौघim लॅिघ nिदौघ (yأوihu) The hotel is far away
hou yौहn ge. from here.
  2. जौघim लॅिघ nिदौघ (yأوihu) The hotel is about 3 miles
saam मैi गातहोङ्गिम from here.

(See BC and Drill 4)

b. लॅिघ occupies the position of a co-verb in the sentence, but as the
negative and question forms of the sentence attach to the distance
portion and not to the लॅिघ portion, we classify लॅिघ as a
preposition and not a co-verb.

Ex: 1. जौघim लॅिघ nिदौघ mmhaih gei yौहn je. The hotel is not far from
here.
  2. जौघim लॅिघ nिदौघ yौह nियौह n a? Is the hotel far from here?

(See Drill 6)
c. Note that _CATU as an equating verb can be used as the verb of the
predicate, or the center of the predicate can be an adjective or
a nu-m compound of distance.

(See examples under a. above)

7. kāhn and gahn(jyuh), 'near'

a. kāhn, 'near'

kāhn is an adjective which is used in the predicate. It does not
take an object.

Ex: Kēuih ngūkkēi lēih nídough [His house from here very near
hōu kāhn je. merely.]

His house is quite near here.

(See Drill 4)

b. gahn(jyuh), 'near'

gahn(jyuh) is a verb which takes an object. It patterns as a
V in a VO construction.

Ex: Kēuih ngūkkēi gahnjyuh ɣañuhjinggúk. His house is near
the post office.

Kēuih ngūkkēi gahn ɣañgahn ɣañuhjinggúk a? Is his house near
the post office?

Ngahnh—gahn(jyuh) ɣeigöichèuhng. Not near— it's
near the airport.

(See BC and Drill 5)
III. DRILLS

1. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Kâuih mhdakhâhn, sôyîh mâheuidâk.
   He was busy, so he couldn't go.

+ 2. /mhyûfuâk/ (not feel well, not feel comfortable.)

+ 3. /fâatsîu/ (have a fever)

+ 4. /sûngfung/ (have a cold, catch cold)

+ 5. /tàuhtung/ (have a headache)

+ 6. /yâuh behng/ (be sick)

+ 7. /behnjô/ (got sick, get sick)

+ 8. /ditchân/ (fall and hurt yourself, be dropped and get hurt)

1. Kâuih mhdakhâhn, sôyîh mâheuidâk.

2. Kâuih mhyûfuâk, sôyîh mâheuidâk.
   He didn't feel well, so he didn't go.

   He had a fever, so he couldn't go.

   He has a cold, so he can't go.

5. Kâuih tauhtung, sôyîh mâheuidâk.
   She had a headache, so she couldn't go.

   He's sick, so he can't go.

   He's gotten sick, so he can't go.

   She fell and hurt herself, so she can't go.

2. Alteration/Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Kâuih ditchân go sailôugô.
   She dropped the child and hurt him.

S: Hôu sông a, mnhôu ditchân go sailôugô!
   Be careful, don't drop the child and hurt him!

1. Kâuih jingwaihjô go lâanhnghei

1. Hôu sông a, mnhôu jingwaih
2. Kēuih chēchān go néuihyān.  
   He ran over a woman (with his  
   car) and injured her.
+ 3. Ga chē johngchān go nōuijāi.  
   His car bumped into a girl  
   and injured her.
5. Kēuih jinglaahntaajjō gihn  
   chēuhngsāam.
+ 6. Kēuih tung wōngjō tiuh baahk  
   fu.  
   She scorched the white pants  
   [iron-yellowed]

3. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Gō bīu jinglaahnjō.  
   S: Gō bīu bēi yāhn  
   jinglaahnjō.

2. Gō tōuhjēung jinglaahnjō.  
3. Fūng gwaahouhasun jingsāpjō.  
4. Tiuh sōsīh jingwaaikhjō.  
5. Gō gwahtūng jinglaahnjō.  
6. Fūng dihnboj jingchāuahjō.  
   The cablegram got wrinkled.
7. Gō dihnwā ditwaaighjō.  
   The telephone dropped and  
   got out of order.
+ 8. Jēun yeuhkēsūi dālaahnjō.  
   The bottle of [liquid]  
   medicine broke.

T: The watch has been broken.  
   [The watch was broken by  
   someone.]

S: Somebody broke the watch.

2. Gō tōuhjēung bēi yāhn jing-
   laahnjō.  
3. Fūng gwaahouhasun bēi yāhn  
   jingsāpjō.  
4. Tiuh sōsīh bēi yāhn jing-
   waaikhjō.  
5. Gō gwahtūng bēi yāhn  
   jinglaahnjō.  
6. Fūng dihnboj bēi yāhn jing  
   chāuahjō.  
7. Gō dihnwā bēi yāhn ditwaaigh-
   jō.  

8. Jēun yeuhkēsūi bēi yāhn  
   dālaahnjō.
(jèun = bottle having a stopper; [M])
(yeuhkṣeuĩ = liquid medicine)

The bottle of pills spilled. (yeuhkyûn = medicine in pill form)

4. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh hû kâhn jê.
+môu gêi yûhn jê/
S: Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh môu gêi yûhn jê.

T: The American Consulate is quite near here. /not far/
S: The American Consulate is not far from here.

1. Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh môu gêi yûhn jê.
+hû yûhn ga/

2. Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh hû yûhn ga.
+hû kâhn jê/

3. Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh hû kâhn jê.
+dôu gêi yûhn ga/

4. Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh dôu gêi yûhn ga.
+mêhhaîh gêi yûhn jê/

5. Méihgwok Lîhngsihgwûn lèih nîdouh mêhhaîh gêi yûhn jê.
+dôu mûhyûn hû kâhn ga/

+dôu mûhyûndaî yûhn gê/

Comment: Kûnh is an adjective. It doesn't take an object:
Gàan ngâmnhông hû kâhn jê.= The bank is quite near.

319
5. Response Drill

Ex: T: Nhîh gâan sjíhlâuh gahn nhâghnh jung-gwok ngânhnhông a? /yûhjínggûk/
S: Nhâghnh--gahnjyuh yûhjínggûk.
T: Is your office near the Bank of China?
S: No--it's near the post office.

1. Gô gân jáu-gâ nhâghnh
Mei-gwok lîhng-sîngwun a?
/Faâtgwok lîhng-sîngwun/

1. Nhâghnh--gahnjyuh Faâtgwok lîhng-sîngwun.

2. Kêuih gân uk gahn nhâghnh Gâul-lûnh yîyûn a? /feîgî-chêuáng/


3. Gô gân chànsât gahn nhâghnh
Jung-gwok daaih-hoûk a?
/Hûng-gông daaih-hoûk/


4. Gân jáûdím gahn nhâghnh fei-gêî-chêuáng a? /ngânhnhông/


5. Sàam houh bâûj jaaâm gahn nhâghnh ngânhnhông a? /gûngsî/

5. Nhâghnh--gahnjyuh gûngsî.

6. Dihn-bougûk gahn nhâghnh wông
On gûngsî a? /yûhjínggûk/


7. Yahtûûn lîhng-sîngwun gahn
Nhâghnh nêîh ukkêî a?
/Wông Sàng ukkêî/


Comment: gahn(jyuh) is a transitive verb which takes an object (VO):
Kêuih ngûkkêî gahnjyuh ngânhnhông. His home is near the bank.

6. Substitution Drill

Ex: 1. T: Mânhwâh jáûdîm léîh niûcoh yûh gêî yûhn a? /yûhn mûhûn/
S: Mânhwâh jáûdîm léîh niûcoh yûhn mûhûn a?

1. T: How far is Mandarin Hotel from here? /is (it) far?/
S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from here?

2. T: Mânhwâh jáûdîm léîh niûcoh yûhn mûhûn a? /dihn-bougûk/

2. T: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from here?
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

LESSON 29

S: Mânhwâh Jâudim S: Is the Mandarin Hotel far from
lêih dihnbourgûk the telegraph office?
yûhn âhyûhn a?

1. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih dihnbourgûk
yûhn âhyûhn a? /yûuh gêiidô go gâaiaâú/
2. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih dihnbourgûk
yûuh gêiidô go gâaiaâú a?
3. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih dihnbourgûk
yûuh gêiidô go chê jaahm?
4. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih dihnbourgûk
yûuh gêiidô go chê jaahm a?
5. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih yûuhjिंगgûk
/yûuhjînggûk/
6. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih yûuhjînggûk
/yûuhjînggûk/
7. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih Hôuhwâh
yûuh gêiidô go chê jaahm a?
8. Mêihgwok Jâudim lêih Hôuhwâh
yûuh gêiidô go chê jaahm a?
9. Hôuhwâh Heiyûn lêih nîduôh yûuh
geiidô go chê jaahm a?
10. Hôuhwâh Heiyûn lêih nîduôh yûuh
giî yûhn a? /yûhn âhyûhn/
11. Hôuhwâh Heiyûn lêih nîduôh yûuh
giî yûhn a? /yûhn âhyûhn/
12. Hôuhwâh Heiyûn lêih nîduôh yûhn
/âhyûhn a? /kâhn mûkâhn/

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Léuhng mân taai
gwai.
S: Léuhng mân syun
âhsyun gwai a?

T: Two dollars is too expensive.
S: Is two dollars considered
expensive?

1. Chût chek taai gôu.
2. Gwôngdûngwâ taai nàahnhohk.
3. Gâulûhng yîyûn hóu dâaîh.
4. Hêunggông ükjôu syun âhsyun
gwai a?

5. Kêuih ge behn gôu gànyiû.
   His illness is serious.
   Her cook is very hard-working.
7. Kêuih ge jàinêui hóu lêk.

+ 5. Kêuih ge behn syun âhsyun
gànyiû a?
6. Kêuih jûfûan syun âhsyun
kàhnlihk a?
7. Kêuih ge jàinêui syun
âhsyun lêk a?
a. Teacher asks questions and cues students to give affirmative or negative responses, thus:

Neg: \( \underline{\times} \) 毋系喎 Adj.
Aff: \( \underline{\times} \) 毋系答 Adj. 㖞.
or \( \underline{\times} \) 喔 Adj.

8. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun būn ngûk ĝē.

S: Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun būn ngûk ĝē, säumĕi ji kyuṭdihung mhbûn ĝē ĝē.

S: At first I planned to move, but finally I decided not to.

1. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun heui Tōih-wāan ĝē.

2. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun heui lēuih-hânh ĝē.


5. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun sômâaih mŭhn ĝē.


1. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun heui Tōih-wāan ĝē, säumĕi ji kyuṭdihung mhbûn ĝē ĝē.

2. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun heui lēuih-hânh ĝē, säumĕi ji kyuṭdihung mhbûn ĝē ĝē.

3. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun yahp yiŏn ĝē, säumĕi ji kyuṭdihung mhbûn ĝē ĝē.


5. Ngŏh chŏchō dāsyun sômâaih mŭhn ĝē, säumĕi ji kyuṭdihung mhbûn ĝē ĝē.


9. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

1. Nēih tāuhtung yăuh mōuh fāan hokh a?
   Having a headache, did you go to school?

2. /tāi yīsāng/
3. /sihk yeuhk/

4. /fàan gùng/

5. /faat sìu/

3. Ñei h tâuhtung yâuh môuh sihk yeuhk a?

4. Ñei h tâuhtung yâuh môuh fàan gùng a?

5. Ñei h tâuhtung yâuh môuh faat sìu a?

10. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in subject position.

1. Yiu Ñei h dângjó gam noih, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.
   I feel terrible to have made you wait so long.

2. /yuhng gamdò chîn/

3. /hâahn gâm yûhn/

4. /wân gam noih/

5. /gam jòu héisân/

6. /gam chîh fàan ûkkái/

1. Yiu Ñei h dângjó gam noih, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

2. Yiu Ñei h yuhng gamdò chîn, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

3. Yiu Ñei h hâahn gâm yûhn, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

4. Yiu Ñei h wân gam noih, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

5. Yiu Ñei h gam jòu héisân, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

6. Yiu Ñei h gam chîh fàan ûkkái, jânhaih ânhou yisi laak.

11. Response Drill

   Ex: T: Gó gân gûngsî gahn- jyuh bindouh ga? /ngânhông/heiûn/
   S: Haï ngânmaânhng tûnhg S: It's between the bank and the heiûn jîgåan jî.
   T: What place is the department store near? /bank/movie theatre/


323
LESSON 29  CANTONENSE BASIC COURSE

4. Meihgwock Jaudim gahnjuh bin-douh ga? /Meihgwock Lehm-siengwun/Jungswok Ngahnhohng/
4. Hai Meihgwock Lehm-siengwun
tuhng Jungswok Ngahnhohng jigaaan je.

5. Mahnwah Jaudim gahnjuh bin-douh ga? /Tinsing Mantaah/
Seuhnghoi Ngahnhohng/
5. Hai Tinsing Mantaah
tuhng Seuhnghoi Ngahnhohng jigaaan je.

12. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute the cues in object position.

+ 1. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun ji-gaan, yauh mouh basi jaahm a?
From the ferry [pier] to the movie house is there a bus stop between?
yauh x dou x jigaan =
(between X and X)

2. /gaisih/

3. /jaugha/

4. /ngahnhohng/

5. /yiynu/

6. /che jaahm/

2. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun jigaan yauh mouh gaisih a?

3. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun jigaan yauh mouh jaugha a?

4. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun jigaan yauh mouh nganh-hohng a?

5. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun jigaan yauh mouh yiynu a?

6. Yauh mantaah dou heiyun jigaan yauh mouh che jaahm a?

13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Neih wan ngoh jouh mat a?

S: Tauhsin neih wan ngoh jouh mat a?

1. Haih mnhahih neih wan ngoh laih a?
Were you looking for me?

S: What were you looking for me about a little while ago?

1. Tauhsin haih mnhahih neih wan ngoh laih a?
2. Bīngō dā dīhswā làīh a?
   (Who phoned? or
   Who's on the phone?)
   [dālāiḥ = call in]

   2. Tàuhsin bīngō dā dīhswā
      làīh a?

   + 3. Nēih wāh tāухtung, yīhā gōu-
      fāan meih a?
      (return to good health,
      get well)
      You said you had a headache,
      are you back to normal now?

   3. Tàuhsin nēih wāh tāухtung,
      yīhā gōuфāan meih a?

   4. Nēih wāh faatsiu, yīhā gōu-
      fāan meih a?

   4. Tàuhsin nēih wāh faatsiu,
      yīhā gōuфāan meih a?

   5. Nēih wāh behngjō, yīhā gōu-
      fāan meih a?

   5. Tàuhsin nēih wāh behngjō,
      yīhā gōuфāan meih a?

   6. Nēih wāh yāuh behng, yīhā
      gōuфāan meih a?

   6. Tàuhsin nēih wāh yāuh behng,
      yīhā gōuфāan meih a?

14. Conversation Drill

   Ex: 1. A: Heui Hōuhwāh Hei-
       yūn yūnh mē-
       yūnh a? /shake/
   B: Ìnyūhn-- hōu
       kahn jē.
   B: Not far--it's quite near.

   A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-
       douh a? /Hoover Rest-
       aurant/
   B: Gahnjyuh Hōuhwāh
       Jáugā/
   B: It's near the Hoover Restaurant.

   2. A: Heui Méigwok Jáu-
       dim yūnh ìnyūhn
       a? /nod/
   B: Ñōu yūnh gal
   B: Quite far.

   A: Gahn(jyuh) bīn-
       douh a? /Méigwok Līhng-
       sīhgwūn/
   B: Gahnjyuh Méigwok
       Līhngsīhgwūn.
   B: It's near the American Con-
       sulate.

   1. A. ......yāuhjīnγgūk.....?
      /shake/
   1. A. Heui yāuhjīnγgūk yūnh
      ìnyūhn a?
2. A. ....Gauluhng Yiynn....? /nod/  2. A. Heui Gàuluhng Yiynn yúnn-
  ēhyùnn a?
  B. ............  B. Hóu yúnn ga!
  A. ............?  A. Gahn(jyuh) bǐndouh a?
  B. ............  B. Ēigēichèuuhng a?
  3. A. ....Hàunggông Daaihhohk....?  3. A. Heui Hâunggông Daaihhohk
 /shake/ yúnn ēhyùnn a?
  B. ............  B. Ēhyùnn, hóu káhn jē.
  A. ............?  A. Gahn(jyuh) bǐndouh a?
  B. ............  B. Gahnjyuh sàam hóuh bāsi jaahm jē.
  ēhyùnn a?
  B. ............  B. Ēhyùnn, hóu káhn jē.
  A. ............?  A. Gahn(jyuh) bǐndouh a?
  B. ............  B. Gahnjyuh yàuhjìnggǔk jē.
  5. A. ....Wìng Ėn Gângsī....?  5. A. Heui Wìng Ėn Gângsī
 /shake/ yúnn ēhyùnn a?
  B. ............  B. Ēhyùnn, hóu káhn jē.
  A. ............?  A. Gahn(jyuh) bǐndouh a?
  B. ............  B. Gahnjyuh Wìng Ėn Ngânn-hônhng jē.
 /shake/ yúnn ēhyùnn a?
  B. ............  B. Ēhyùnn, hóu káhn jē.
  A. ............?  A. Gahn(jyuh) bǐndouh a?
  B. ............  B. Gahnjyuh Tînsìng Màhtâuh jē.
15. Question and Answer Drill

Ex: T: Yänwaih sëungfûng, kéuih mhlâihdâk. S1: Dîmgâai kéuih mhlâih a?
S2: Kéuih sëungfûng â ma. (or: â mäh)
T: She has a cold, so she can't come.
S1: Why isn't she coming?
S2: It's because she has a cold, that's why.

â ma or a mäh = 'that's why' in a response sentence which gives explanation of why something occurred â ma adds the connotation (cheerfully without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious.

1. Yänwaih lohkyûh, kéuih âheui yûuhsèui laak.
   1. A. Dîmgâai kéuih âheui yûuhsèui a?
      B. Lohkyûh â ma.

2. Yänwaih yûu behng, kéuih mhsâandâk gûng.
   2. A. Dîmgâai kéuih mhsâan gûng a?
      B. Kéuih yûu behng â ma.

3. Yänwaih mûuh chûn, kéuih mhtaidâk yûlsâng.
   3. A. Dîmgâai kéuih mhtâi yûlsâng a?
      B. Kéuih mûuh chûn â ma.

4. Yänwaih mhsûk chûm mèng, kéuih yiu yuuhng tôuhjeung.
   4. A. Dîmgâai kéuih yuuhng tôuhjeung a?
      B. Kéuih mhsûk chûm mèng â ma.

5. Gwai gwotâuh sôyîh âhsûung máaih.
   5. A. Dîmgâai âhsûung máaih a?
      B. Gwai gwotâuh â ma.

   6. A. Dîmgâai yiu hâahng louh a?
      B. Ga chê waihjô â ma.

7. Shgau sîhgaan, sôyîh yiu chôh dîksi.
   7. A. Dîmgâai yiu chôh dîksi a?
      B. Shgau sîhgaan â ma.
16. Expansion-Translation Drill

Ex: 1. T: Kèuih behngjó gèi yah. /already well/
S: Kèuih behngjó gèi yah. /already well/
T: Hè's been sick for a few days, but he's OK now.
S: Hè's been sick for a few days, and is still sick.

2. T: Kèuih behngjó gèi yah. /not yet/
S: Kèuih behngjó gèi yah. /not yet/
T: Hè's been sick for a few days--is he well yet?
S: Hè's been sick a few days--is he well yet?

1. Nèih tâuhtungjó sèhng go láih-baai. /already well/
2. Ngònh faatsiujó léuhng sàam yah. /not yet/
3. Kèuih mèhyúufunkjó gèi yah. /well yet?/
4. Kèuih taaítái sèungfungjó sèhng go láihbaai. /well yet?/
5. Kèuih go jài behngjó sèhng bun go yuht. /not yet/
6. Kèuih sìhtáu zhjingsěhnjó sèhng yah. /already well/
7. Ngònh agò sìhkjó sèhng go láihbaai yeuhk. /not yet/

1. Nèih tâuhtungjó sèhng go láihbaai, yihng hòufáamsaa laak.
2. Ngònh faatsiujó léuhng sàam yah, juhng meih hòufáan.
3. Kèuih mèhyúufunkjó gèi yah, yihng hòufáan meih a?
4. Kèuih taaítái sèungfungjó sèhng go láihbaai, yihng hòufáan meih a?
5. Kèuih go jài behngjó sèhng bun go yuht, juhng meih hòufáan.
6. Kèuih sìhtáu zhjingsěhnjó sèhng yah, yihng hòufáamsaa laak.
7. Ngònh agò sìhkjó sèhng go láihbaai yeuhk, juhng meih hòufáan.
IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING

(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:

1) chihn gii yaht = a few days ago
2) tâu = head
3) joongmaaih = hit
4) tung = hurt
5) yeuhk = medicine
   hoi di yeuhk = write a prescription
6) nāp = pill, M for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.
7) Hōu wah. = 'You're welcome'
8) Taaijī Douh = Prince Road
9) Wōdālōuh Douh = Waterloo Road
10) ji ma = that's all
11) Yāu sâm. = It's kind of you to inquire
12) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
13) tāi dōu âhtái nēih = won't even come see you
14) Yāu sâm. = It's kind of you to inquire.
15) daih yaht = the next day
16) ìhhaih jauh lāihjô nīdouh lōi = Wasn't it that I came here!
   i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)
17) douh = degree (of temperature)
18) chēut yūn = get out of the hospital
19) Sīu yisī jē. = It's just a little something. Polite response
to thanks for a gift.
20) wānmaaih = get together with

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. Is the American Consulate far from here?
2. Where is the telegraph office?

B. And he replies:

1. It's very near. (pointing:)
   There! it's there.
2. I'm not sure (ìhhchingchô)--
   maybe it's near the post office.

4. Is there a restaurant between here and the Star Ferry pier? 4. Yes, plenty of them. What kind of food do you want to eat?

5. Why didn't Miss Chan come today? 5. Because she has a cold.

6. What's the matter? Do you have a headache? 6. I think I have a fever.

7. He didn't come to work today because he wasn't feeling well. 7. Oh, so that's why—I thought he had gone on a trip.

8. I hear one of the students has been sick for several days. 8. Yes, there was one who was sick for a few days, but he's already well.

9. I'm feeling very well. 9. What? Didn't you tell me just a little while ago that you were very headache-y?

10. When you have a headache, do you take a pill? (sihk) 10. Sometimes I do and sometimes not.

11. When Miss Ma first studied Cantonese she spoke very haltingly. 11. Yes, but at the end she spoke very fluently.

12. Did you hear that Mr. Cheung was hit by a car? 12. Is that so? Did he go into the hospital?

13. This watch sells for US$50. Would that be considered expensive? 13. $50 perhaps wouldn't be considered expensive.

14. I hear you're planning to move. 14. At first we planned to move, but finally we decided not to.

15. Would you please say that last sentence again. 15. I said "Speak louder."

Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 29

1.  Mike (or maah?)  ss: 'isn't that right?' sen. quest. suf. with the force of checking an assumption

2.  Kea (or maah.)  ss: that (obvious reason) is why.

3.  behng  n: illness

330
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. behngjó</td>
<td>VP: got sick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. béi</td>
<td>CoV: introduces the agent of an action, 'by ___'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. -chàn</td>
<td>VSuf: verb suf. injure, hurt, damage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. chōchō</td>
<td>MA: at first, in the beginning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. dītchàn</td>
<td>v: fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. faatsäng</td>
<td>v: happen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. faatslu</td>
<td>VO: have a fever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. fanggóng</td>
<td>VO: leave work, get off from work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. fû yauh</td>
<td>VO: treat with medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. gahn(jyuh) Pw</td>
<td>v: near (followed by a placename)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. geuk</td>
<td>n: leg, foot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. gwāt</td>
<td>n: bone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. hái X tūhng Y jīgāan</td>
<td>PhP: between X and Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. houfāan</td>
<td>v: get well, return to good health</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. jën [go]</td>
<td>N/M: bottle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. jīgāan</td>
<td>BP: between</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. johng</td>
<td>v: bump into</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. johngchàn</td>
<td>v: injure by bumping [bump-injure]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. kām</td>
<td>adj: near</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. lēih X</td>
<td>Prep: (distance) from X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. máhsyuñfuhk</td>
<td>adj: not feel well; i.e., feel sick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. néuihjái</td>
<td>n: girl, young woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. ngāihím</td>
<td>Aj: dangerous; danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. sāumēi</td>
<td>MA: finally, in the end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. sèungfûng</td>
<td>VO: have a cold, catch a cold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. syun</td>
<td>v: is considered; can be considered...; counted as...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. tàuhsín</td>
<td>MA: just a while ago</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. tàuhtung</td>
<td>v/n: have a headache</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. tong wôhngjó</td>
<td>VP: scorched [iron-yellowed]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. tŷūhn</td>
<td>v: break (of bones and sticklike objects)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. yáuh behng</td>
<td>VO: be sick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36. yáuh X dou Y jīgāan</td>
<td>PhP: between X and Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>yeuhk</td>
<td>n: medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>yeuhkséui</td>
<td>n: [liquid]medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>yeuhkyún</td>
<td>n: pills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>yīyún</td>
<td>n: hospital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>yiu</td>
<td>v: make, cause (someone to do something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>yūhn</td>
<td>adj: far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I. BASIC CONVERSATION

A. Buildup:

(Younger brother and elder sister discuss an approaching typhoon)

**Sailou**

*fung*
yuht làih yuht Adj
yuht làih yuht daaih

*Wah,* dī *fung* yuht làih yuht
daaih *tim!*

Dīm chēut gāai a?

**Gājē**

*fungkāuh*
sāam houh *fungkāuh*
gwa sāam houh *fungkāuh*

Yīhsing gwajō sāam houh *fungkāuh*
ge lo bo--

Nēih juhng séung chēut gāai ăh!

- yihsuehng

*ńgh* houh yihsuehng

*jyun* *fungkāuh*

Yūngwō yāt *jyun* *ńgh* houh yihsuehng,
waahkje jauh móuh chō móuh syūh
ge laak.

**Sailou**

Haih a.
gimihm
bái máktāuh gimihm

*wind*
getting more and more Adj
getting bigger and bigger

Wow-- the wind is getting stronger
all the time!

How can I go out?

**typhoon signal**

*typhoon signal #3*

hang up the #3 typhoon signal

They've already put up the Number
3 typhoon signal, for heaven's
sake-- (protesting good
naturally that her younger
brother shouldn't go out under
such circumstances.

You still plan to go out?

above ... more than ...
(follows a number ex-
pression)

above the number five
(signal), higher than the
number 5 (signal)

change the typhoon signal

If it once goes higher than
Number 5, then maybe there
won't be any buses or ferries.

That's right.

meet
meet at the ferry [pier]
yeuk
yeukhóu

ji
lóu ng dín yátgógwát ji
lóu ng dín bun
Daanhaai ghógh tóu ng Jéung Siu-jé
yeukhóu lóu hng dín yátgó gwát
ji lóu ng dín bun hái máhtáuh
ginmihn.

Yihgá goi dín a?
Sailóu

jáangdī

Jáangdī lóu ng dín la.
Sailóu

gói
dái hyáht
gói dái hyáht
Nóh díngái áhá díhnwá bói
kéuih, giu kéuih gói dái hyáht
nó?

hóeIk
Sailóu

HóeIk kéuih ngükkéi móuh
díhnwá--
túngjí
móuh baahnfaat

Móuh baahnfaat túngjí kéuih.

Gájō

dáfúng

make an appointment
agree on the time and/or
place for an appointment
between
between 2:15 and 2:30
But I made an appointment to
meet Miss Cheung at the ferry
between 2:15 and 2:30

What time is it now?

almost, lacks a little
(precedes number phrase)
It's almost 2 o'clock.

change, alter
another day, another time
change it to another day

Why don't you phone her and
tell her to change it to
another day?

unfortunately; it is un-
fortunate (+ sentence)
Unfortunately her house doesn't
have a phone--

communicate with
"There's no way;" 'Can't
do anything about it'

There's no way to communicate
with her.

have a typhoon [hit-wind]
yihgā dāgān fūng

gū

ngōh gū kéuih ēhchēutlāih
daaihkōi or daaihkōi
Yihgā dāgān fūng, ngōh gū Jēung
Siujē daaihkōi dōu ēhchēutlāih
ge laak.

(The phone rings:)

Seiölō
A, daaihkōi haih kéuih dālāih
laak.

Gājē
Gām juhng hōu la--néih jauh
ēhšāi chēuthuei lā.
yīk
yāuh yīk
deui, ēuiyu
Gām ge tinheu chēuthuei deui néih
móuh yīk ga.

B. Recapitulation:
(Younger brother and elder sister
discuss an approaching typhoon)

Seiölō
Wah, dī fūng yeuh lut lāih yuht
daaih tīm!
Dīm chūt gāai a?

Gājē
Yihgīng gwajō sāam hōuh fūngkāuh
ge lo bo--

there's a typhoon going on
now
guess, conjecture, hazard
a guess
I bet she won't come out
probably
There's a typhoon going on now
and I bet Miss Cheung probably
won't even come out.

Oh, that's probably her calling
now.

That's good--then you won't
have to go out.
benefit, profit
beneficial, good for you,
profitable
towards
Going out in such weather isn't
good for you.

Wow--the wind is getting
stronger all the time!
How can I go out?

They've already put up the
Number 3 typhoon signal--
(as if to suggest that her
younger brother shouldn't go
out)
Néih juhng séung chēut gāi àh?
Yūngwó yāt jyun uetooth houh
yēhseuhng, waahekjé jauh
móuh chē móuh syūhn ge laak.

Sailóu

Haïh a.
Daanhnhaïh ngōh tūhng Jēung
Sīujé yeukhōu lēuhng dīm yūt
go gwàit ji lēuhng dīm bun
hái māhtàuh ginsihn.

Gājé

Yīngā gōi dīm a?

Sailóu
Jīangdī lēuhng dīm la.

Gājé
Néih dīmgāai āhā dihnwā bèi
kēuih, giū kēuih gōi daihyacht
nē?

Sailóu
Hōsîk kēuih ῥükki móuh dihnwā—
Móuh baahnfaat tūngjī kēuih.

Gājé
Yīngā dāgān fūng, ngōh gū Jēung
Sīujé daaikhóí dōu āmhchēut-
lāih ge laak.

(The phone rings:)
Sailóu
A, daaikhóí haih kēuih dālāih
laak.

Gājé
Gām juhng hōu lā—nēih jauh
ēhsāi chēutheui la.

You still plan to go out?
If it once goes higher than
Number 5, then maybe there
won't be any buses or ferries.

That's right.
But I made an appointment to
meet Miss Cheung at the ferry
between 2:15 and 2:30.

What time is it now?
It's almost 2 o'clock.

Why don't you phone her and tell
her to change it to another
day?

Unfortunately her house doesn't
have a phone.
There's no way to communicate
with her.

Since there's a typhoon going
on now, I bet Miss Cheung
probably won't even go out.

Oh, that's probably her calling
now.

That's good—then you won't
have to go out.
II. NOTES

1. **yuht, more and more**

   There are several patterns formed with the double **yuht**:
   a. **yuht Adjective** = 'getting more and more Adjective'

   Ex: 1. Dī fung yuht láih yuht daaih tim! The wind is getting bigger and bigger! (i.e., stronger and stronger)

   2. Kēuih yuht làih yuht lek. He's getting smarter all the time.

   3. Kēuih sê jih yuht làih yuht lek. His writing is better and better all the time.

   (See BC and Drill 1)

   b. **yuht Verb yuht Adjective** = the more (or the longer) he Verb, the more Adjective it becomes.

   Ex: Kēuih yuht gông yuht lauhleih. The more (or the longer) he talks the more fluent he gets.

   (See Drill 2)

   c. **yuht Adjective _1 yuht Adjective _2** = the more (or the longer) Adjective _1 the more Adjective _2.

   Ex: Yuht faai yuht hou. The sooner (or the quicker) the better.

2. **yeuk**, 'request an appointment,' 'make an appointment'

   yeuk is a performance verb, basically meaning 'to request an appointment.'

   Ex: Ngōn sōung yeuk go sīhgaan. I want to make an appointment [ask for a time]. (said in making doctor's appointment)

   yeuk enters into performance-achievement compounds with **hōu**, 'satisfactory,' forming yeukhōu, 'ask for and get, i.e., set, an appointment.'

   Ex: Ngōn tūng kēuih yeukhōu hāi māntauh gīnmīn. I arranged with her to meet at the pier.

   (See BC)
3. deui + Obj Adj = towards \{ 'Obj is Adj'; i.e., 'is Adj towards Obj.' \}

\{ about for with \}

\{ about for with \}

deui + Obj is a prepositional phrase which comes before the adjective it forms a larger phrase with. In English equivalent sentences, the prepositional phrase follows the adjective: 'good for Obj,' 'harmful to Obj,' 'satisfied with Obj,' 'clear about Obj,' etc.

Ex: S \quad deui + Obj Adj. \quad S \quad is Adj prep + Obj

Yâuhséui deui néih hòu yáuh yīk ga. Swimming is good for you.

(See BC and Drill 7)

The deui Obj pattern is a device for placing the object of the adjective before the adjective in the sentence. With some adjectives the object can either follow the adjective directly or precede it in a deui phrase. An example is:

S \quad P
S \quad (deui + Obj Adj (Obj)

1. Kéuih m̀chíngchó nǐ gíhn sìh bo. \{ He's not clear about \}
2. Kéuih deui nǐ gíhn sìh m̀chíngchó bo. \{ this matter. \}

With other adjectives the deui device is compulsory—there is no other way to phrase the sentence. Examples are:

1. Gàmyaht chèuthèui deui něih mòhyīk ga. Going out today is not good for you.
2. Néih deui kéuih m̀nhóu ge. You're not nice to him.

The deui + Object phrase occupies the same pre-verbal sentence position as the Co-verb + Obj phrase, but deui as a preposition differs from co-verbs in not taking a negative prefix.

Compare a negative co-verb sentence with a negative deui sentence:

Kéuih m̀nhúmg ngóh heui. \quad He's not going with me.
Kéuih deui ngóh m̀nhóu ga. \quad He's not nice to me.
4. **lihn**: as preposition = 'including ___'; 'and ___'; 'even ___'
   **lihn**: as Verb = 'to include'

   **lihn** is a word that belongs to more than one grammatical category. It is primarily a preposition, but also is used as a verb.

   a. **lihn** as a preposition

   1) **lihn(maaih)** = 'including'

      **lihn(maaih)** + Obj preceding the body of a sentence = 'including Obj.'

      Ex: **Lihn(maaih) keuih, ngohdeih yauh sahp go yahn.** Including her, there are 10 of us.

      (See Drill 4.4.b)

   2) **lihn(maaih)** = 'and'

      In another pattern, **lihn(maaih)** joins two nouns in subject position with the meaning 'and.'

      Ex: **Di syu lihn bat hahbahlaahng yiu yahgei man.** The books and pencils together cost twenty-some dollars.

      (See Drill 4.4)

   3) **lihn** = 'even'

      **lihn** can be translated as 'even' in negative sentences of the pattern:

      ![Translation Pattern](attachment:image)

      This pattern is a rearrangement of the SVO order of a negative sentence for emphasis:

      ![Rearranged Pattern](attachment:image)

      Examples below give first the normal SVO sentence, then the rearranged sentence order of the **lihn X dou mhV** pattern:

      1. **Ngoh mouh chin tai yisang.** I don't have any money to see a doctor.

         **Lihn tai yisang ngoh dou mouh chin.**

         [Even see doctor I don't have money.] i.e., I don't even have money to see the doctor. (I'm that hard up)

      (See Drill 11)
2. Ngóh mêsìk gòng yát
guei Yíngmánh.
Lîhn yát guei Yíngmánh
gnoh dòu mêsìk gong.
I can't speak one sentence
of English.
I can't speak even one
sentence of English.

(See Drill 11)

b. Lîhn as a verb.

Lîhn = 'include'

Ex: a. Lîhn-mânh(màaih) típsí a? Does that include the tip?
    b. Lîhn-màaih ge la.
        or
    Lîhn a. Yes, it does.
    c. Àkhânhn. No, it doesn't.

5. ge lo bo = sen.suf ge/ga 'that's the way it is' + sen.suf lo bo
   for good-natured protest.

Ex: 1. Yìhing gwa[jó] sàam houh
    fungkauh ge lo bol
    They've already raised the #3 typhoon
    signal. (response to addressee's
    announcement that he's going out
    into the typhoon. Implication is:
    They've already put up the signal,
    that's a fact; and you shouldn't
    do as you intend)

2. Ngóh sìhkjó yeu hk ge
    lo bo.

3. Sa[h]p dím ge lo bol
    Ten o'clock! (you told me you were
    going out at ten-- you'd better get
    going instead of sitting there)

(See BC and Drill 12)

6. ....jë, ....dòu...
   'Even though....., still.....'
   'Since only....., still.....'

   This is a double clause pattern, with the first clause a subordinate
   clause of concession and the second the principal clause. The jë
   indicates that the concession is thought to be a small one.

Ex: Neih gòi lêuhng díp bun jë,
    ngoh dòu haïngommmchit
    ge bo. Since you're only changing it to 2:30,
    I still can't make it. or If you
    only changed it to 2:30, I still
    couldn't make it.

(See Drill 14)
III. DRILLS

1. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih hâu làahn.
   S: Kêuih yuht làih yuht làahn.

T: He's lazy.
   S: He's getting lazier and lazier all the time. i.e., He's getting increasingly lazy.

1. Kêuih hâu kännhlihk.
   He's very hard-working.

2. Tînheî hâu yîht.
3. Ükjîu hâu gwai.
4. Kêuih ge Gwôngdŭngwâ hâu lek.
5. Kêuih hâu yâuhchîn.

2. Substitution Drill

Ex: T: Yuht gông yuht faai.
     /làuhi/leih/
   S: Yuht gông yuht làuhi/leih.

T: The more he talks the faster it gets. /fluent/
   S: The more he talks, the more fluent it gets.

1. Yuht chôh yuht dung. /guih/
2. Yuht sihk yuht hóu meih.
   /tōuhngôh/ The more you eat the better it tastes.

4. Yuht gông yuht dâaihsêng.
5. Yuht yâm yuht gônghot.
   /hóu meih/ 5. Yuht yâm yuht hóu meih.
   /ngâahnfən/ The longer I read the fuzzier it seems.

   /ngâahnfən/ The longer I read the sleepier I get.
3. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngôh gú kéuih yâtdihng mâhlâih.
   I guess he's not coming.

2. Ngôh yîhwâîh.

3. Ngôh wâh kéuih yâtdihng mâhlâih.

4. Ngôh gôkđâk kéuih yâtdihng mâhlâih.

5. Ngôh pa kéuih yâtdihng mâhlâih

6. Ngôh têngginwâh kéuih yâtdihng mâhlâih

4. Expansion Drill

1. a. gâu dim jì ñgh dim.
   b. jiûjóu gâu dim jì hahjau ñgh dim.
   c. Mûih yâht jiûjóu gâu dim jì hahjau ñgh dim.
   d. Mûih yâht jiûjóu gâu dim jì hahjau ñgh dim dôu hâi sêjihlauh.

2. a. fai.
   b. hohk fai.
   c. bêî hohk fai.
   d. âhsâi bêî hohk fai.
   e. sáî âhsâi bêî hohk fai a?
   f. Hohk Gvôngdûngwâ, sáî âhsâi bêî hohk fai a?
   g. Hài Mêihwok Lîhngsêihgwûn hohk Gvôngdûngwâ, sáî âhsâi bêî hohk fai a?

3. a. Bûnlâih heui Tôihwâan.

2. a. 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock.
   b. 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.
   c. Every day from 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.
   d. (I'm) at the office everyday from 9 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon.

2. a. fee, fare, expenses.
   b. school fees, tuition.
   c. pay tuition.
   d. don't need to pay tuition.
   e. do you have to pay tuition?
   f. Do you have to pay tuition to study Cantonese?
   g. Do you have to pay tuition to study Cantonese at the American Consulate?

3. a. Originally, (we) were going to Taiwan.
b. Bûnloîh dáisyun heui Tôihwăn
b. Originally, (we) planned
to go to Taiwan.
c. Ngôndeih bûnloîh dáisyun
heui Tôihwăn.
c. We originally planned to
go to Taiwan.
d. Ngôndeih chôchô bûnloîh
dáisyun heui Tôihwăn.
d. We originally, in the
beginning, planned to
go to Taiwan.
e. Ngôndeih chôchô bûnloîh
dáisyun heui Tôihwăn,
daanhaih yihgă mânhvidăk.
e. We originally, in the
beginning, planned to
go to Taiwan, but now
we can't go.

Comment: Bûnloîh 'originally,' carries the implication that
the outcome was different from original intention:
'originally planned X, however Y instead.'

5. a. including the electricity
payment.

+ 4. a. lihn(mâaih) dihnfai.
b. lihn(mâaih) dihnfai yiu
bêi gëi chïnh a?

b. how much is it including
electricity?

c. sëufai lihn(mâaih) dihn-
fai yiu bêi gëi chïnh a?
(sëufai =
water fee)
d. how much do you have to
pay for water and
electricity?

d. sëufai lihn(mâaih) dihn-
fai hahmbahlaahng yiu
bêi gëi chïnh a?

d. how much do you have to
pay altogether, for
water and electricity?

e. Mûih go yuht sëufai lihn-
mâaih) dihnfai hahmbahlaahng
yiu bêi gëi chïnh a?

e. How much a month do you
pay for water and
electricity together?

5. a. yêt houhi jî dâu móuh.
b. lihn yêt houhi jî dâu móuh.
c. ngôn lihn yêt houhi jî dâu
móuh.
d. Ngôn jînháih lihn yêt houhi
jî dâumóuh.
e. Nêih âñjî åh? Ngôn jînháih
lihn yêt houhi jî dâu móuh
ga.

6. a. dâng
b. dihndâng

6. a. light, lamp
b. electric light
5. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Neih \ánhaih wah, yiu chéut gaa\i gë?  
    S: Neih yauh wah yiu chéut gaa\i?  

1. Neih \ánhaih wah, sōungfùng gë?  
2. Neih \ánhaih wah, gám\i yahh   
   hahjau \áhsái ngöh läi\h gë?  
3. Neih \ánhaih wah, yìh\h gë?  
4. Neih \ánhaih wah, goi tìngyaih   
   gë?  
5. Neih \ánhaih wah, yeu/káhd\ou   
   këuih gë?  
6. Neih \ánhaih wah, móu t\hngjë   
   këuih gë?  
7. Neih \ánhaih wah, yauh bahn-   
   faat gë?  
8. Neih \ánhaih wah, dihnd\ëng   
   waaijë gë?  
9. Neih \ánhaih wah, jàngdë   
   chât dim gë?  

T: Didn't you say you had to go   
    out? (you see that he's still   
    here.)  
S: Didn't you say you had to go   
    out? (i.e., you said...but   
    it's not so--what's up?)
6. Transformation Drill

Ex: T: Kâuih deui nǐ gihn sih, m̀hعظم̀hœ bo. T: She's not very clear about this.

S: Kâuih deui nǐ gihn sih ching m̀hعظم̀hœ a? S: Is she clear about this? (i.e., does she understand how it works?)

1. Ǹeih deui kêuih m̀h̀hóu. You're not nice to him.
2. Kêuih deui nǐ gihn sih, yàtɗi dòu m̀hfuhjaak.
3. Kêuih deui dà jih yàtɗi cheui- m̀hèmes̀h dòu mòuh. (She doesn’t have the slightest interest in typing.)
   deui X yàuah cheuimes̀h be interested in X.
4. Yàuhs̀euí deui ǹeih hòu yàuah yìk ga.
5. Yàmjàu deui ǹeih mòuh yìk ga.
6. Tài syù deui ǹeih ge behng m̀nhòu ga.

7. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kêuih m̀hjûngyi dà jih ge. T: She doesn’t like to type.

S: Kêuih deui dà jih, yàtɗi dòu m̀hjûngyi. S: About typing—she doesn’t like it a bit.

1. Kêuih m̀hpa dà fùng ge.
2. Kêuih m̀hpa m̀h̀hà ge.
3. Kêuih m̀hjà nǐ gihn sih ge.
4. Kêuih m̀hfuhjaak jàiǹeui ge hohk fai ge.
5. Kêuih m̀hȁlih tàilóu̍hò ge.

1. Kêuih deui dà fùng, yàtɗi dòu m̀hpa.
2. Kêuih deui m̀h̀hà, yàtɗi dòu m̀hpa.
3. Kêuih deui nǐ gihn sih, yàtɗi dòu m̀hjà.
4. Kêuih deui jàiǹeui ge hohk fai, yàtɗi dòu m̀hfuhjaak.
5. Kêuih deui tàilóu̍hò, yàtɗi dòu m̀hȁlih.

8. Response Drill

Ex: T: Kēuīh múih go yuht yiu bēi sei sahp man sēui fai. /$50/
   + S: mējī, yiu bēi ēng-
     sahp mān ga.

1. Kēuīh múih go yuht yiu bēi baat sahp mān hohk fai. /$100/
2. Kēuīh múih yahnt yiu bēi ēng go bung ngāhnhīn cē fai. /$7.50/
3. Kēuīh múih yahnt yiu bēi sei hōu-hī syūn fai. /$50/
4. Kēuīh múih go yuht yiu bēi baak ēng mān dīhn fai. /$170/
5. Kēuīh múih sāam go yuht yiu bēi baat sahp mān sēui fai. /more than $100/
6. mān múih go yuht yiu bēi baak ēng mān yeuhk fai. /$210/

S: Not just ($40) -- it's $50.

T: His water bill is $40 a month.

1. mējī, yiu bēi yāt baak mān
   ga.
2. mējī, yiu bēi chāt go bung
   ngāhnhīn ga.
3. mējī, yiu bēi ēng hōu-hī ga.
4. mējī, yiu bēi baak chāt
   mān ga.
5. mējī, yiu bēi baak ēng mān
   ga.
6. mējī, yiu bēi yīh baak yāt
   mān ga.

9. Expansion Drill: __ jì __ dōu

Ex: T: Mōuh sówaih ēg.
     /sahp mān/yīh sahp
     mān/
   S: Sahp mān jì yīh sahp
   S: Anything between $10 and $20
     mān dōu mōu̍h só-
     waih ēg.
     is OK.

T: It doesn't make any difference.

/$10/$20/

1. Ngōŋ ēndōk̓hän̓h bo.
   /chāt dīm/sahp dīm/
2. Ngōũ hái Jūŋmān̓h dāihihk
   gau syū. /1958 nīhn/1966/

1. Chāt dīm jì sahp dīm ngōũ
   dōu ēndōk̓hän̓h ēg.
2. Yāt gau ēng baat nīhn jì
   yāt gau lu̍hk lu̍hk ngōũ
   dōu hái Jūŋmān̓h dāihihk
   gau syū ēg.

346
/gauhnin/yihgā/
4. Kāhamāhn jì gàmjìu ngōh dōu mōuh sīh faahn.
/kāhamāhn/gāmjìu/
5. Chāt yuht jì sahp yuht ngōh dōu meih gingwo kāuīh gē.
I didn't see him from July to October.
/chāt yuht/sâhp yuht/
I haven't seen him.

10. Expansion Drill: Expand with V-ðakchit, 'time enough to V__,' or mHv-ðakchit, 'not enough time to V__,' according to the pattern set by the example sentences.

Ex: 1. T: Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu yeh jē. /māih/
S: Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu yeh jē, māih-ðakchit gē.
T: It's not very late now.
S: It's not very late now--there's time to buy it.

2. T: Yihgā gam yeh laak. /māih/
S: Yihgā gam yeh laak, ìnhmaîh-ðakchit ge laak.
T: It's so late now--there's not time to buy it.

1. Yihgā gam ngaan laak. /gōn/
2. Yihgā hōu jōu. /jīng/
3. Yihgā gam chih. /jouh/
4. Yihgā gam yeh laak. /dā/
5. Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu yeh jē. /sāi/
6. Yihgā hōu ngaan laak. /heuī/
7. Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu chih jē. /dā/
1. Yihgā gam ngaan laak, ình-ðakchit ge la.
2. Yihgā hōu jōu, jīngdākchit gē.
3. Yihgā gam chih, ìnhjouhdākchit ge la.
4. Yihgā gam yeh laak, ìnhdākchit ge la.
5. Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu yeh jē, sāidākchit gē.
6. Yihgā hōu ngaan laak, ình-heuidākchit ge la.
7. Yihgā ìnhhaih hōu chih jē, dādākchit gē.
11. Alteration Drill

Ex: T: Kauih dâk yêt go gûngyâhn.  
    S: Kauih lîhn yêt go gûngyâhn dôu mûuh.  

T: She has only one servant.  
S: Not even one servant does she have, or she doesn’t even have one servant.

1. Kauih dâk yêt giihn sän sâm.  
2. Kauih dâk yêt go pânggyâuh.  
5. Kauih dâk yêt jek bûi.

1. Kauih lîhn yêt giihn sän sâm dôu mûuh.  
2. Kauih lîhn yêt go pânggyâuh dôu mûuh.  
3. Kauih lîhn yêt gauh fàangáan dôu mûuh.  
5. Kauih lîhn yêt jek bûi dôu mûuh.

12. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Ngôn dâmjô laak.  
    S: Ngôn yîhîng dâmjô ge lo bo.  

T: I tossed it out.  
S: I already tossed it out. (protesting, but friendly)

1. Jyunjô châthouh fûngkâuh laak.  
2. Ngôn jáau fàan chîn bêî kêuîh laak.  
5. Ngôn fûnfujô kêuîh laak.  

1. Yîhîng jyunjô châthouh fûngkâuh ge lo bo.  
2. Ngôn yîhîng jáau fàan chîn bêî kêuîh ge lo bo.  
3. Kêuîh yîhîng sîhkjô yeuîk ge lo bo.  
4. Ngôn yîhîng tûngjîjô kêuîh ge lo bo.  
5. Ngôn yîhîng fûnfujô kêuîh ge lo bo.  
6. Ngôn yîhîng wûihjô seun bêî kêuîh ge lo bo.
13. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Bāsi maahn gwotāuh. / diksi/
S: Bāsi maahn gwotāuh, bātyūh chōh diksi bā laak.

T: The bus is much too slow. / taxi/
S: The bus is much too slow—we'd better take a taxi.

1. Hauh ge yiht gwotāuh. / bohk ge/
2. Yauhsēui dang gwotāuh. / tāi hēi/
3. Tōihwān yūhn gwotāuh. / Gwōngjāu/
4. Syūn laaht tōng laaht gwotāuh. / yu yu tōng/
   order fish soup
5. Kēisēui dung gwotāuh. / gafē/
6. Nāahmgūngyāhn (ge yāhngūng) gwai gwotāuh. / chēng
   nēuihngūngyāhn/

14. Expansion Drill

Ex: T: Nēih dāng ngōh jē, ...
S: Nēih dāng ngōh jē, ngōh dōu haih gōn-
   ōhchit ge bo.

T: Even though you would wait
   for me,...
S: Even though you would wait
   for me, I still can't make
   it. (wouldn't have time to
   do it.)

1. Nēih gōi lōuhng dim bun jē,...
   Even if you would change it
to 2:30...
2. Nēih tingyaht ji yiu jē,...
   Even though you don't need
   it until tomorrow...
3. Nēih gō bāan fēigēi ōh dim
   bun ji hōi jē,...
4. Kēuihdeih gāmmāahn ji lāih
   jē,...

Even if you would wait for me,...
Even though you would wait
for me, I still can't make it. (wouldn't have time to
do it.)
Even if you would change it
to 2:30...
Even though you don't need
it until tomorrow...
Even if you would change it
to 2:30...
5. Kėuih kāhmyaht tungjī ngŏnh je,...

5. Kėuih kāhmyaht tungjī ngŏnh je, ngŏh dŏu haih gŏn-ĕmchit ge bo.

15. Expansion Drill: Expand with sèuiyihn..., daahnhaihn...

Ex: T: Něih wah mŏuh ngăih-him jē, ngŏh dŏu haih pa ge.
    T: (Although) you say there's no danger, I'm (still) afraid.
    S: Sèuiyihn něih wah mŏuh ngăih-him jē, daahnhaihn ngŏh dŏu haih pa ge.
    S: Although you say there's no danger, I'm still afraid.

1. Dihsaihn waihjŏ jē, něih hōyĭh teng sāuyāmgei ā.

2. Yiū bēi yāt chīn mān jē, ngŏh dŏu gau chīn ē.
   Even though I had to spend $1000, I still have some money.


4. Jyunjō chāt houh fūngkāuh, ngŏh juhng yiū fāan gūng.

5. Kėuih yīhsing gītjō fān, kėuih juhng yauh hōudō néuihpāng-yāuh.


16. Substitution Drill: Repeat the first sentence after the teacher, then substitute as directed.

1. Ngŏh nĭpāai ēnhāi ngūkkēi.

2. /tăuheiñ/

3. /ngāamngāas/

4. /hŏu dō sih dŏu/

1. Ngŏh nĭpāai ēnhāi ngūkkēi.

2. Ngŏh tăuheiñ ēnhāi ngūkkēi.

3. Ngŏh ngāamngāas ēnhāi ngūkkēi.

5. /sihsin dou/
5. Ngôh sihsin doû ânhài ngûkkêi.

6. /yuhsin/

7. /hou siu/
7. Ngôh hóu sû ânhài ngûkkêi.

8. /gojân(sinh)/
8. Ngôh gojân(sinh) ânhài ngûkkêi.
(at that time)

IV. CONVERSATIONS FOR LISTENING
(On tape. Refer to wordlist below as you listen.)

Unfamiliar terms, in order of occurrence:
1) gôichèuhng = fêigôichèuhng = airport
2) gôi = fêigôi
3) chèuhng = M for wind
4) hônghùng sûngsî = airlane company
5) (ng)ûkîjû = landlord, landlady
6) woh = that's what he said.
7) sâm fông = 3 bedrooms
8) lêunh têng = 2 sitting places--i.e., living room and dining room. (Lêunh têng = haaktêng + faahntêng)
9) dihnàngdáam = light bulb
10) ji ma = that's all
11) sêuidinhfai = water and electricity fees
12) nhvûìh sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't- take-expensive]
13) fôngbhînh = convenient
14) bêujéun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
15) sâmângyi = commercial business
16) pêai = send
17) yáuh hîngchèui = to be interested in
18) dàân sâmângyi = some business [dàân 'list,' M for sâmângyi]
19) jâm = discuss
20) Dûng Nàahn A = Southeast Asia
21) Yuhtnàahn = Vietnam
22) Mânhôîha = Malay
23) geiâvûi = opportunity

351
LESSON 30  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

V. SAY IT IN CANTONESE:

A. You say to the person sitting next to you:

1. That child is getting lazier and lazier.
2. The more you speak Cantonese the more fluent you become.
3. Didn't you say you were going to bed? How come you're still up?
4. Where are you meeting Miss Ma?
5. His illness is getting more and more dangerous.

6. How much tuition do you pay for Cantonese Lessons?
7. I hear Mrs. Cheung made an appointment to go to Mrs. Chan's to play mahjong.
8. Does the rent include water and electricity?
9. His wife is over 30.

10. Miss Wong doesn't have a phone--how will I get in touch with her?
11. I don't know anything about playing mahjong.
12. Even if you taught me, I'd still be stupid.
13. There's a typhoon coming.
14. Let's meet at the Hong Kong University library after you get off from work.
15. Is Mr. Lau responsible for this matter?

B. And he replies:

1. That's what I say too.
2. The more I talk the worse it is.
3. I went to bed but I couldn't get to sleep.
4. At the library.
5. Unfortunately he doesn't have the money to see a doctor.

6. We don't have to pay tuition.
7. She originally planned to go to Mrs. Chan's, but in the end she went to Mrs. Lau's for dinner.
8. It includes the water but not electricity.
9. Not just (over 30) -- she's over 40!

10. There's nothing you can do.
11. I'll teach you, OK?
12. You're too modest.
13. Is that so? Have they put up the typhoon signal?
14. I have a terrible headache today and I'm not going to go to work.
15. No, he isn't.
Vocabulary Checklist for Lesson 30

1. būnlôih
   MA: originally
2. daaihkôi or daaihkoi
   MA: probably
3. dâ fûng
   VO: have a typhoon [hit-wind]
4. dâihyaht
   Ph: another day, another time (reduced from daih yih yaht)
5. deui, deuiyû
   prep: towards, for, in regard to
6. deui...yâuh cheuimeih
   Ph: be interested in
7. dîhmâng
   n: electric light, electric lamp
8. dîhnfai
   n: electricity expense
9. fai
   n: fees, expenses
10. fûng
    n: wind
11. fûngkâuħ
    n: typhoon signal
12. ge lo bo!
    ss: ge/za 'that's the way it is' + ss, lobo for good natured protest
13. gînhîhm
    VO: meet [see-face]
14. gôi
    v: change, alter
15. gû
    v: guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess
16. hôîk
    MA: unfortunately
17. jâan
    M: M for light or lamp
18. jângdî
    adv: almost, lacks a little
19. A ji B
    Prep: between A and B, from A to B
20. lîhm (mâsîh)
    cv: including
21. lîhm...dôu mû V
    PhP: not even, even
22. mûjhî
    Ph: more than; not just...
23. Môuh baahnfaat.
    Ph: 'There's no way;' 'can't do anything about it;' 'it can't be helped'
24. Nôih ñbhhaih wah...?
    Ph: Didn't you say...?
25. Nêih yauh wah...?
    Ph: You said...(but it's not so; what's up?)
26. sôûfai
    n: water expenses
27. tüngjî
    v: communicate (with)
28. Wâih
    Ex: Exclamation of awe
29. yâuh yîk
    VO: benefit
30. yeuk
    v: make an appointment
31. yeukhôu
    v: agree on the time and/or place for an appointment
32. $X$ yihseuhng
   above $X$, more than $X$ (follows nu-M expression)

33. ytk
    n: benefit, profit

34. yuht lâih yuht. $\text{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}$
    Ph: getting more and more $\text{\textbullet\textbullet\textbullet}$

35. yuht...yuht....
    Ph: the more....the more....
Lesson Sixteen

1. Two friends discuss what they did last Saturday:
   A: Nêih seuhng gō laihbaa luhk heui bîndouh wàan a?
   B: Tòuhng ngôh tsaat'îai heui yauhseui. Nêih nê?
   A: Lâihbaa luhk ngôh dòu seung heui yauhseui gê, daahnhaih ngôh
       nêuipânggyâuh wah mîheui. Sôyîh ngôhdeih heuijô dà móhng kâuô.
   B: Hâi bîndouh dâ a?
   A: Hâi Bouwahn Douh kâuwhcheuhng. Nêih hâi gôdouh dágwo mîh a?
   B: Tîngyaht ngôh âkâdhàahn. Dâihyaht sîn lâ.

   1) wàan = amuse oneself, general verb for leisure time
       activity
   2) sôyîh = therefore
   3) dà móhng kâuô = play tennis
   4) Bouwahn Douh = Bowen Road
   5) kâuwh chêuhng = tennis court
   6) dâih yaht = dâih (yîh) yaht = another day

2. Discussing a trip to the Philippines:
   A: Nêih kâmhyâht heuijô bîndouh a? Ngôh dâ dihnwá seung wân nêih heui
       sîh ngaa. Nêih bêsyû wah nêih heuijô Mâhneihlêâi, heui gôdouh
       yauh mîyêh sîh a?
   B: O. Gûngs'l yauh dî sîn yiu ngôh heui Fêileuhtbàn. Hâi gô bîhn
       mâmihjô leuhng baak gihn Fêileuhtbàn ñeutsâam.
   A: Nêih hâi gôbihn yauh mîh heui wân Wôhng Bou-jîng a?
APPENDIX 1 CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

B: Mouh. Ngoh hou seung hei wän keuih a, daahnhaih dou mhdâkhaahn.
    Hai goudou ngoh jihnghaih maaihjô di yêh bêi ngoh taaitâai
tûnhg sailoughô ja.
A: Maaihjô di meyêh bêi keuihdeih a? Yauh haigh maaih géi gih
    feileuhtbân sëutsâam a?
B: Mhaigh, ngoh tûnhg ngoh taaitâa maaihjô go sâudôi, géi leng gé.
    Keuih hou jûngyi a. Yauh maaihjô go bô bêi go jai--maaihjô
    go gungjai bêi go néui.
A: O, gâm jauh hou là. Weî! Dâng jahn yâtchâih sihk ngaan a? Ngoh
    têngjinwa Daaigh Douh Jung yauh gân chânsat géi hou ge bo.
B: Hôu a, Gêidim a? Hái bîndouh dâng a?
A: Sahpyih dim daahp sâam là, hou ma? Jauh hái néih gûngsî làuuhhah
    gîmmin là.
B: Hâi hâm wah là. Sahpyih dim daahp sâam ngoh hái goudouh dâng néih.
  1) beisyû = secretary
  2) Mâmneihlàai = Manila
  3) Feileuhtbân = Philippines
  4) gungjai = doll
  5) Wei = Hey!; Say!; exclamation used to attract someone's
      attention
  6) yâtchâih = together
  7) gîmmih = meet
  8) Haigh gâm wah là. = We'll do it the way you say.

3. Two women friends meet on the street downtown:
   Hôh Tâai : Jousâhn Léih Tâai, néih nîpâai heui bîndouh làih a?
   Léih Tâai: Mouh heui bîndouh a. Ngoh nîpâai dou hái ükkei jouh sâam--
             hou mhdâkhaahn.
   Hôh Tâai : Haigh laak. Néih di jâméiui yíhgâ dim a?
   Léih Tâai: Gei hou. Keuihdeih Kâhnyaht heuijô Gâulûnhg ngoh sâhmâ
            douh. A! Hôh Tâai, néih tingyaht dâk mhdâkhaahnh heui
            Châm Tâai goudouh dâ mânjeuk a?
            1) Mouh heui bîndouh = Haven't gone anywhere

356
Lesson Seventeen

1. An American and Cantonese in Hong Kong talk about travel in America:
   A: Tengginzah néih hahgo láihbaai heui Méihgwok, hah aiheah a?
   B: Móuh cho, ngóh dáyún yahlukh hough heui, jíkhai láihbaai séi.
   A: Haih mē? Nóih yáuh móuh heugwó Méihgwok a?
   B: Jáuh, yát-gáu-lukh-ńgh ningún heuilái.
   A: Já Méihgwok heugwó bíní deihfong a?
   B: Ngóh heugwó Sáamfàahn séih túhng Wáhsingdeunh.
   A: Nóih yáuh móuh chàntchik hái gó léuhng dát deihfong a?
   B: Jáuh, gó léuhng dát deihfong, ngóh dóú yáuh chàntchik hái douh.
   A: Doujó Wáhsingdeunh, jígán yi láih ngóh douh chóh a.
   B: Hóu aak.

2. Telephone conversation about traveling:
   A: Weí, mëgôi néih giu Wéng Säang teng dihnmá.
   B: Hóu, mëgôi däng jahn.
   C: Wáí, bín wái a?
   A: Ngóh sing Chàhn.
   C: Ah! Chàhn Säang, yáuh mátyèh séi a?
A: Móuh, ngóh sêung mahnhâh néih, ji âhji Léih Gwông-lûhung Sînsâang géisih fânheui Méihgwok jë?
C: O! Kéuih hah go lâihbaaiyih fânheui, jîkhaith nî go yuht sahp baat houh.
A: Gâm, néih ji âhji kóuih fânheui Méihgwok bîndouh a?
C: Ngóh mîchingché bo, têngginwah kéuih fânheui Wâhseihngdeuhn.
A: Haih mî! Wông Sàang, néih dásyun géisih tûhung Wông Tâiái heui Sàamfânâhnsîh taam kéuih mâmâ a?
C: Ngóhdeih dásyun hahgo yuht heui.
A: Gâm, néihdeih daai âhdaai dî jînîeu heui a?
C: Ngóhdeih hahchi jî daai kóuihdeih heui.
A: Haih lô. Néih dî jînîeu haih mâmâ dôu hái Méihgwok chêutsai ga?
C: Haih, kóuihdeih dôu haih hái gódouh chêutsai ge.
A: Ngóh heuigwô Méihgwok hóu dô chi, daanhhaih Sàamfânâhnsîh tûhung Wâhseihngdeuhn ngóh jühng méei heuigwô. Néihdeih fânâhndouheui jigenyu bêi go deihji ngôh a?
C: Hóu sak. Ngóh yihgâ gông bêi néih têng sin lá.
A: Hóu, dâng ngóh lô jî bêt làih sin.
   1) Móuh = Nothing special
   2) jî = (not until) then
   3) go deihji = here: your address

3. Talking about a trip to Singapore:
A: Lóûh Wông, hóu noih móuh gin. Heui bîndouh làih a?
B: O. Ngóh heuijó Singgâbô, ngâamngâam seuhng go lâihbaai jî fânâlhî.
A: Haih mî? Néih géisih heui ga?
B: Ngóh seuhng go yuht yihsaehp houh heui ge.
A: Néih yáu hóu dôu daai néih taaitâai tûnghmâyih dî sailôugô heui a?
B: Jiinhghaiah tûhung ngóh taaitâai heui. Dî sailôugô heuijó Tôihwään jyuh bêi ngóh taaitâai ngûkkêi, kóuihdeih kâhmyakt ngaamngâam jî fânâlhî.
   1) Lóûh Wông = 'Old Wongs'—Lóûh + surname is used as form of address to a man by good friends. (The tone of the surname changes from low falling tone to high rising tone.)
   2) Singgâbô = Singapore
   3) ngâamngâam = just
   4) jî = (only) then, (not until) then
   5) tûnghmâyih = tûhung
   6) Tôihwään = Taiwan
Lesson Eighteen

1. Street scene: two women gossip about recent events:

Wöhg Täai: Jëung Täai, heui bëndou h a?
Jëung Täai: Ngôh heui ngaanhông lô chîn. Nêih nê?
Wöhg Täai: Ngôh heui făngung. Tôngginwah nêih hahgô laâibailuhh yiu bûn ūk, hain ânhheui a?
Wöhg Täai: Nêih hâi Hêunggông jyu h jô mûh goînô jô. Jouh mâtyôh yiu bûn a?
Jëung Täai: Mûuh, ngôh dî jaînëui hâi Daaihluhh chütiô.latest, âhngau deihfông jyu.
Wöhg Täai: O. Nêih dî jaînëui hâi Gwôngjâu chütiô.làîh më?
Yîhông chütiëi Hêunggông jyu, dasyun heui Mêihgwok làuhhoř. Nêih dî jaînëui yauh dasyun chüteui a?
Wöhg Täai: Yâuh. Daanhhaïng ngôh jìdô bî go jài heui jê. Nêih dî jaînëui heui dou Mêihgwok haih ânhhaïng hêî chânhîk douh jyu a?
Jëung Täai: Hài, ngôh háimông këuîhiëi heui Wáhsihgdeuñu. Gâm, jauh hôyîn jyu hai chânhîk âkôi laak.
Wöhg Täai: Ngôh yîhchînhn dôu yauh chânhîk hâi Sàmôfhnhnëi, yîhông bûjô beu Tîhwaâm hâi Tônhbâk jyu. Tôngginwah gôduh hôûhôu jyu jë, nêih séung âhâsëóng bûn fàânheui a?
Jëung Täai: Ngôh juhâng meih kyuûthiông. Yûûgwô yauh chîn, jauh bûn fàânheui.

1) Jouh mâtyôh = How come?
2) Mûuh = 'Nothing special' A response making light of topic discussed.
Lesson Nineteen

1. A Hong Kong resident tells a new American resident about H.K. money exchange.

Hongkongite: Jeung Saang, kyut dihngjó géi heui máaih yéh meih a?
2. A telephone inquiry:

A: Wáí.
B: Siám Híng Gúngsí àh. Ángói chéng Wóhng Sing-Gwóng Sînsâang têng dihnwá.
A: Yihgú júhn meih sëuhng báán. Ángói néih bún go júngtâuh joi dá láih lá.
B: How, ángói.
(After half hour he calls again)
C: Wáí, Siám Híng Gúngsí.
B: Ángói chéng Wóhng Sing-Gwóng Sînsâang têng dihnwá.
C: Wóhng Siáng heuijó Yahtbún bo. Bín wáí wán kéuih a?
B: C. Ngóh sing Jâung. Kéuih gëisih fânñáih a?
C: Wah míhdihng ga.
B: Hahgo yuht kéuih dàahkóì fânñáih meih a?
C: Hahgo yuht yâtdihng fânñáih ge la. Yáuh mëyéh síh a?
B: Néih háih mîhái këuih ge bëisyû a?
C: Háih a.
1) sëuhng báán = start work
2) dàahkóì = probably
3) bëisyû = secretary
3. Talking with a friend on the telephone:

A: Wéi.

B: Wéi. Chèhn Waih-jühng ah? Néih sikhjó máahn faahn meih? Heui ñhheui tāi hei a?


B: Ngôh tāidôu boují wah Hôuh Wâh Heiyün chëut hei ñhcho bo. Néih yingh joi joun lēuñg go jüngtân guŋfo juhng gôndákchit ga. Ngôh sin heui máaih fei. Gâudîmîng hâi heiyün mûnhâu dâng néih là?


B: Gâm ah. Hâh chî sîn la! Hâih laak—Ngôh go dáfôôi ngámngâam máaihjó yät go lâihbaai, kâhmyaht jauh ñhîginjó. Nhjî yâuh móuh lauhdâi hâi néih ûkkîi nê? Néih yâuh móuh tāidôu a?


1) a mah? = 'isn't that right?' (being pretty sure it is) cf. French 'n'est ce pas
2) guŋfo = lessons, homework
3) gôndákchit = can make it in time; there will be time to do it
4) fei = ticket
5) -yûnh = finish a) sihkyûnh = finish eating
       b) duhkyûnh = finish studying
6) gônâhchit = can't make it in time
7) ngámngâam = just
8) lauhdâi = leave behind
9) hônâhng = probably
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

APPENDIX I

C: Haih a, Hái néih gään föngh jeung tói douh a máh.
A: Wái, Lóuh Wong--hái douh a. Ngóh tingyaht níngfáan běi néih á?
B: Hóu, òngóisai. Gám, néih mímheui tái hei là ma?
A: Mímheui là.
C: Wái-Jíng, hói faahn là. Mínhóu góng gám dò là.
A: Lóuh Wong, haïh gám sin là, tingyaht gin là.
B: Hóu, tingyaht gin. Mínhóu ònggíidák níngfáan go dáfógoi běi ngóh cò.
A: Dák là. Tingyaht gin là.

1) föngh = room
2) a máh = sen. suf. for obviousness (see also L16, CL3 á ma)
3) Lóuh Wong = 'Old Wong' term of address used as form of address to a man by good friends.
4) hói faahn = 'Dinner is ready'
5) Haïh gám sin là = 'That's all for now'

4. Talking about renting a house and buying furniture:
Wóhng Táai: Ténggínwah néih yiu wán úk. Wándóu meih a?
Wóhng Táai: Géi láu a?
Hóh Slújé: Sàam láu. Ngóh tükng néih heui táiháh á?

(They arrive at the house)
Wóhng Táai: A! Mí gään úk hóu òmcho bo! Yát go yuht géi chíh jòu a?
Hóh Slújé: Yát chín mán, néih wàh gwai òmghwái dì a?
Wóhng Táai: Haïh gasseuhngbái là. Gám, néih dáyún géísh bún láih a?
Hóh Slújé: Yìhké juhnng meih jìdou. Mí gään úk mòyóh dòu mòuh, dàng
gnóh máaijó dì gài, yìnhnáu jì bùndak gá.
Wóhng Táai: Nàggam laak, ngóh yáuh go chànhíchk haïh maaij gài gé,
néih sùng mícìng heuí gòdouh táiháh nè?
Hóh Slújé: Hóu aak! Yìuhgwó néih yìhké dákhàahm, jauh tükng ngóh
yàcháih heuí là!
Wóhng Táai: Ngóh heui jì ga chè làih, néih jauh hái nìdouh dáng
gnóh là!
Hóh Slújé: Jànháih òmghóisai là.
Wóhng Táai: Míhsi haakhei.

(They drive to the store)
Wóhng Táai: A! dòu laak. Ngóhdeih hái nìdouh paaak chè sin, yìnhnáu
hàahng gwó heuí là.

1) mòyóh dòu mòuh = doesn't have anything
Lesson Twenty

1. Going to the airport:
   A: Chôngmahn néih, yáuh nǐdouh dím neui feigēi chêuæng a?
   B: Aiye, hóu deuihjuh laak, néih māchéngchò bo. Yānwah néih hái
       Pêunggóng gō bihn jyu hē gé, néih ánhayi géi sik Gāuluunn gō bīh
       dī looh gā.
   A: Gām a, néih ji māhji nī tìuh louh yāuh mōuh bāsi gwo gē né?
   B: Mwi..., nījōgān dōu tāi mēdōu yāuh chōjaahm, waahkjē mōu hāak.
   A: Haih gām, dāng néih wàndōu bāsi daap gōjān, néih pāhngyāuh chōh
gō bāan feigēi dōu yihgīng hōijō la.
   B: Yūnhlēih néih haih neui sung gēi ga? Gām, néih chōh dīksī haih la.
   A: Gām, néih āhæng gwo sēsiu neui giu dīksī lā. Nhōgısaaí bo.
   B: Hōu wah.
      1) louh = road
      2) gwo = pass by
      3) sung gēi = see (someone) off on a plane
      4) Hōu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. At the train station:
   A: Yī, yīnggā sīnji daahp gāam jō, dīmāai bāan fōchē yihgīng hōijō
ge la? Néih go biu mōuh cho a? A, Sīnsāang, chōngmahn daahp bun
   hōi gō bāan fōchē doujō meih a?
   B: Sahp dīm bun gō bāan chē ánhayi yahyayt dōu hōi gā. Jihnghayh
   āihnbaailuhh tūhng liiḥbasaiyät ji yāuh ge ja.
A: Haih bo. Ngôh dôu mûgeidâk tim. Chêngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap gêi houh bâsî a?

B: Ngôh dôu mûhaih gêî chîngôh bo, néih heui bâsî jaa hâm gôbihn mahn-hâm lä.

A: Hôu, mûgoi.

(A goes to bus stop)

A: Chêngmahn heui Sàtihn yiu daap gêi houh bâsî a?

C: Saahp gâu houh a là.

A: Hah yât bâan bâsî daahp gêî hôi a?

C: Daahp bun jauh hôi ge là.

A: Hôu, mûgoi. 0--Heui Sàtihn ge chê gêî nôi hôi yât bâan ga?

C: Bun go jûngtâuh yât bâan.

A: Mûgoisai.

1) Sàtihn = Shatin, a village in the New Territories of Hong Kong

3. Two overseas Chinese students in Taiwan discuss going to Hong Kong:

Jêung Sàng: Mâh Sîujê, néih gêisîh heui Hëunggông a?

Mâh Sîujê : Mî go läîhbaaiyâht, jikhâi saahp houh.

Jêung Sàng: Gâm, néih dásyûn hâm Hëunggông jyu gêî nôi a?

Mâh Sîujê : Yät go läîhbaai gâmseuhngâ là.


Mâh Sîujê : O, néih gêisî jâu a?

Jêung Sàng: Ngôh hah go läîhbaaiyîh jâu, fàandouheui Hëunggông ngôh dâ dînhwâ wân néih ë.

Mâh Sîujê : Hôu aak, néih yiu dàai ngôh heui dît hôu wàan ge deihfông hâanhghâm jî dák ge bo.

Jêung Sàng: Dák là. Mâh, ngôh wàndou néih jînhauh, sin dàai néih heui chôû laamchê, mûhngheui Sàndông tâihâ Hëunggông ge fûnggîn, yihnhaup tûnh néih heui hâanhghâm gûngâi a, màiîhhaîh yêh a. Gâm, hôu mûhhou a?

Mâh Sîujê : Hôu, bâtgxo ngôh jûnh mûng xuo hôi hâanhghâm, néih sîk mûhek lôuh a?

1) fàandouheui = arrive back

2) hôu wàan ge deihfông = fun places, amusing places

3) Mâh = used to attract attention. cf. English 'Listen'....

4) fûnggîn = scenery

5) lôuh = road

a) sîk lôuh = know the road; know your way around
Lesson Twenty-one

1. Two women discuss taking their children swimming:

Léih Táai: Chành Táai, jòusähn, gêmyahg gam dakháähn a?

Léih Táai: Eh...gêmyahg géi yiht bo. Nêih ngâamngâam hâi Tôïhwâân fâânlâïh. Tôïhwâân yâu nhôouh gam yiht a?
Chành Táai: Dôu haih yâgêsung gam yiht. Gêmyahg gam yiht, nôgn hôu sôung hâi hoïtaan yâuhsâui.

Léih Táai: Haih a! Gâm yïht hêui yâûhsâui jeui hôu ge laak. Nôgn gêmyâh dôu dakhâähn sahp dîm jûng nôgn jà ga chê tûhng dî sailóugô láih jïp nêihdeih yêtchâïh hêui a? Hôu mêmhôu a?

Chành Táai: Ên, hêui bîndouh nê?
Lóîh Táai: Hêui Chîn Sëui Wàan lâ, hôu mêmhôu a?


Chành Táai: Hôu, joïgin.
Léih Táai: Joïgon.

1) hôi tâan = seaside
2) Chîn Sëui Wàan = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay]
2. Two friends discuss where to go swimming:
   A: Gâmyaht hóu yiht la.
   B: Haìh a, Gâmyaht yihtgwo kâhmymaht hóudó.
   A: Heui mhmheui Chinséui Wään yáuhseui a?
   B: Ñhdák a, Ngôh yu fâangüng. Tingyaht láihbaailuhk, áhseái fâangüng.
       Tingyaht heui a.
   A: Tingyaht ngôh ñhdâmkaahm. Láihbaai a.
   B: Hóu lâ. Daahhahîh ngôh wah Chinséui Wään möuh Chekchyûh gam hóu bo.
   A: Ngôh wah lâuhng dou hóu yáuyeuhng gam hóu, Daap bâsi heui Chek-
      chyûh taai noih, sóyih dou hah heui Chinséui Wään fînbihn dí.
   1) Chinséui Wään = Repulse Bay [Shallow Water Bay] a beach on the South
      Shore of Hong Kong island.
   2) Chekchyûh = Stanley, a village and beach on the southeastern
      tip of Hong Kong island.
   3) taai = too
   4) fînbihn = convenient

3. Two friends talk about the marriage of a 3rd friend:
   A: Nêih ji ähji a, Lôuh Léih gitjôfân la bo.
   B: Haìh mê! Thùng bîngo a?
   A: Sing Wôhng ge--gâmnnîh saahpgâu seui ja.
   B: Mâyên wá? Mât Lôuh Léih daâih kêuih sêhng yihsehp seui ahh!
   A: Haìh a, Haìh kêuiah hohksâang lâih gâ. Hái hohkhaauh hain jeui
      leng jeui lêk gâ.
   B: O, Ngôh juhung yihwáiîh nêih wah kêuih Lôuhdauh hâi Hèunggông hain
      jeui yáuh chîn ge tîm.
   A: Aâ--ânhhâi--bâtâwo kêuîhaîh dôu hóu yáuh chîn gâ.
   B: Wâh hâaiai, Wai, kêuih Lôuhdauh juhung yáuh möuh dâihyiîh go nêui gâ?
      Ha, Ha....
   1) Lôuh Léih = 'Old Lee'--Lôuh + surname is used as form of
      address to a man by good friends.
   2) mât = exclamation of surprise, Compare English 'Why' in
      'Why he's a full 20 years older than she!'
   3) sêhng yihsehp seui = a full 20 years
   4) Lôuhdauh = father, equivalent to 'The Old Man'
   5) yáuh chîn = rich, wealthy
   6) Wâh...hâaiai = exclamation of awe and astonishment.

367
Lesson Twenty-two

1. Mr. Cheung compliments his foreign friend Mr. Lee on his Cantonese:

Jëung Sàang: Lêih Sàang, néih dí Gwóngdúngwá gôngdák êhcho bo.
Hohkjó géi neih la?


Jëung Sàang: O! Néih taaítái dóu hohk Gwóngdúngwá âh!


Jëung Sàang: Néih jànhaïh tai hím la. Néih gôngdák géi hou à.

2. Two friends at the swimming pool:

Jëung Sàang: Néih yauhdák gam lê̄k, haih âhhaih sinih dóu làih yâûh-séui ge?

Chàn Sàang : Âhhaih sîheih dóu yàûh, ngóh bîndouh yàûh gam dò síhgaan a? Bâ̄tgwo ngóh duhk sîuhohk gûján jauh hou jûngyi yâuhseui ge la. Néih yauhdák dóu âhcho à!

Jëung Sàang: Ngóh âhâh gé.

Chàn Sàang : Wà̄! Yinging sahpyihn dîm làh, ngóhdeih sèuñhugehi sîhk ngaanjau sîn, hou ma?

Jëung Sàang: Hóu a!

1) sîuhohk = elementary school
2) sîhk ngaanjau = sîhk ngaan = 'eat lunch'

3. Mr. Lee is driving his car with Mr. Wong as passenger:

Wôhng: Néih jâ chê jàâdák âhcho bo.


Wôhng: Néih agó haih âhhaih nîpái hêisâu hohk chê a?


Wôhng: Rohkdák dîc a?

Lêih : Mâhmâdái là.

Wôhng: Néih yàûh sôëh gaauhàh kêuíhdeih a?


4. Miss Chan and Miss Ma talk about their younger sisters' progress in school:

Chàn Sîu-yîng: Néih sàisûî duhk syû meih a?
Mâ̄ Ngà̄n-gwân : Gàmnîn ngà̄mghàm hêisâu duhk.
Chàn Sîu-yîng: Duhkdák lê̄k âhlék a?
Lesson Twenty-three

1. Hotel, hotel guest and room boy

R: Sinsàng yáuנ mēyēh fānfu a?
G: Nhōi nǐng dō gēi go sàumgá làih ā. Ngṓh yāuň dō gēi gihm sām yiu Ꝿuwa.
R: O, yiu gēi dō go a?
G: Sēi go gau laak.
R: Hōu, jauh lō làih.

(He returns with the clothes hangers)
R: Đī sàumgá hái douh, Juhng yáuň mēyēh fānfu a?
G: Hāi la, Chisō móu̍h chijī, yauň mōu̍h mōūghān tīm.
R: Chijī ngō̍h yātjān nīng làih lā. Mōūghān yiu dō dīhmá bēi sia̍hão mābōu̍h giū keuihđēi̍h suŋlāi̍h. Hū tāng ngō̍h gāmjū tēng keuihđēi̍h sān daai̍h mōūghān yīhghīng yūn̄g sāai̍h. Yiu ngaan dī jī yāu̍h.
G: Yīngā yīnĝing hahjau̍h laak. Yādia̍ng yāu̍h ge la.

1) sia̍hão mābōu̍h = laundry department

2. Husband and wife:

Husband: Tingjiù māsái jīng jōuchān bēi ngṓh sink laak.

 Wife : Dīngâi a?

Husband: Yān̄wāi̍h gāmjū sinking jōuchān jī fāu̍n gūng, sōnâ̍nchit daap bāi.

 Wife : Gāmjū, ngṓh hō̍yīh tingjiù jōu̍dī hāisăn jīng bēi néi̍h sink ga.

Husband: Māsái la. Nēi̍h fān-ngaândī lā.

 Wife : Nhōgânyiu. Nēi̍h sèung gēi dīm sink a?

Husband: Jōu̍h gāmjū būn go jīngtāu̍h jauh dōk laak.

 Wife : Hōu lā. A, hōu yeh ge la, néi̍h fān meih a?

Husband: Ngṓh jūng meih chūnglēuhng. Nēi̍h fān sīn lā.

1) fān ngaândī = sleep late, i.e., get up later (than usual)

2) chūnglēuhng = take a bath, take a shower
3. Two women discuss servant problems:

Léi Táai: Yi, Chành Táai, mät yiu néih jìhgi lai lai tong sääm a? Go gṳngyáhn nê?

Chành Táai: Aih, âhhôu gòng la. A sei chîhnyaht ji wah ngôb ji, këuih yiu fään Daaíhluhk taam gäjì, kàhmâyht heuijô la.

Léi Táai: Gâm dim dák ga? Néih dimgiài âhgiu këuih dâng néih wàndôu yahn ji heui a?

Chành Táai: Ngôh dôu haih gâm wah ge laak. Daahnhaik këuih yâtâiâng yiu kàhmâyht jauh heui, Juhng wah jeui jôu yiu hahgo yuhjt ji fàándâklâiìh tîm bo.

Léi Táai: Aiya, néih jìhgiî yât go yân dim jouhdâk gâm dô yéh ga?

Chành Táai: Yât go yuhjt jë, âhgànyîu gé.


Chành Táai: Khaik gé, yiu jouh jauh jauh ge jë...Chòhhâhk yám bûi chèn sin là.

Léi Táai: Khái hâakheî la. Ngôh jauh jâu ge laaak.

1) mät = here: dimgiài
2) jìhgiî = yourself
3) Gâm dim dák ga? = That way, how (is it) OK? i.e., How could that be? How could you allow such...
4) yeuhng yeuhng = everything

4. Elder brother, younger sister and servant:

Elder brother: Luhk jë, ngôh gihn sêutsâam hôu lâahttaat. Ângôi néih tühng ngôh sâijô këuih là.

Luhk jë: O, néih gôn mbôngjyuh yiu ga?

Elder brother: Yiu a, ngôh tinggiu jauh yiu jeuk fàân hohk ge la.

Younger sister: A, Luhk jë, ngôh yâuh tiuh kwàhn dôu yiu sâi. Ângôi néih yatchâiìh lô heui å.

1) Luhk jë = The family's name for the servant. The Luhk part is taken from one of the 3 characters in her name (maybe Luhk Siuyìng or Chành Ngâh-luhk) and the jë part means 'elder sister'.

2) gôn = in a hurry; gôn mbôngjyuh? = Are you in a hurry?
Lesson Twenty-four

1. Prospective tenant and landlady:

Prospective tenant: Nêihdeih nîdouh haih 'mhiay haih yâuh deihfông jîu a?

Prospective tenant: Hôu, 'mgoi.
Landlady : Nî gaan syûfông tûnh gô gaan seuihông dôu haih jîu ge. Nêih táihâh ngâam 'mngâam?

Prospective tenant: Ma, gaan syûfông dôu géi daaih, go seuihông yahp-bînh juhng yâuh chisô. Géi hóu a. Nêih yiu géi chînh go yuh tê?

Landlady : Sei boak mân jê. Daahnhaih yiu săi bêi léuung go yuh tê jîu bo.

Prospective tenant: 'Mhângniu. Ngôh sêung táihâh go chûhfông—báí bindouh a?
Landlady : Chêng yahpheui là...Ngôhdeih chûhfông hóu gôn-jehng ge.

Prospective tenant: Mêm, 'mcho a, nêihdeih yâuh dînhwâ ga?

Prospective tenant: Gâm, dôu géi fôngbînh. Ngôh gâmåahn daai ngôh sinsåang làih táihâh sîn là.

1) gwolâih nîbînh = come over here
2) fôngbînh = convenient

2. Mother and daughter discuss broken teapot:

Mother : Siu Mînh, mät jîung tôigâm dô sêui yanj ge? Dôuséjô mîyôh a?

1) mät + sentence = How come...?
3. Talk between a young lady and a household servant:

Siuje: A sei, mongoi nei tung ngoh chung wu yih chahn laih la.
Ngoh hai kohlau nidouh a.

A sei: Hou a. Siuje, juhung yauh seyeh fanfu nei?

Siuje: A, juhung yauh. Mongoi nei seungheui ngoh guan fong lo tiuh
baak kwahn heui tong a. Ngoh leuhng dim bun yiu chouh gaai.
Faaidi boi mhaaih jauh gomnhchit ge la.

A sei: Dak laak. Yinga sinji leuhng dim. Yatdinh gondakchit bei nei
ge. Aiyai! Bingi douse dii ngauhnaih hai deihh a? Gam laah hentai.

Siuje: Ngoh dou sinji a. Faai dii yahpheui lio faai bou laih maatj
kuh la.

A sei: Siuje, houchih wuiah lohk yuuh bo. Dangjan chouh gaaai goidak
duai joh a.

Siuje: Hou. Hais laak--dangjahn Chahn Taaai dai dihnwa laih, nei wai
kuh ji, ngoh gomnaah mhaahkhaah heui kouh ngukkai,
yanhai ngoh yauh di gayiyu sih yiu jouh.

A sei: Jidou laak.

Siuje: Aiyai! Yinging leuhng dim yat go gwai laak, ngoh yiu wuun saam
la. Tiuh kwahn tonghou nei a?

A sei: Tonghou laak. Naih, tongdak leng mahleng a?

Siuje: Anyeh! Ngoh yiu faaidi wuun ji dakh laak. Mongoi nei tung ngoh
ning ndi syu sauthuei jai hai ga cho douh sin. Go savdou
dou yatcraihi lo heui la.

A sei: Dak la.

1) ngoh guan fong = my room
2) mhaaih = if not, otherwise
3) sinji = only
4) gondakchit = there's enough time or You can make it or
If you hurry you'll make it.
5) deihha = floor
6) goidak = remember
Lesson Twenty-five

1. Talking about how to keep awake:
   A: Dímáai gâmjiu gam mòuh jingəän a?
   B: Káhmmáahn yìhtgwotáuh, fanánjeuhk, sóiyí gâmjiu hou ngáahnfan.
   A: Gâm, wān dī dungdungáí ge yēh yāmhháh lā. Ngōh sihsih ngáahnfan
doū jỳngyí yām dung ge yēh ga.
   B: Yáuh mèyéh dung yēh hou yām a?
   A: Yām būi dung bējau lā.
   B: Nhāk! Yām jùng ngáahnfan tím!
   A: Heisêu lā.
   B: Ngōh ji pa yām heisêu ge laak, yān jō gookdāk hou gōnghot gō.
   A: Dung gafě yātdihng ngāam nēih laak.
   B: Wā, hōu, ngōh gōi jỳngyí gafě ge. Nēih dōu yām būi lā.
   A: Hōu aak!
   B: Gâm, dāng ngōh dā dìhnwá giu lāuhhah sung sēuñgláih sīn.

2. Two friends discuss Szechwanese food:
   A: Nēih haih ānhhaih sihsih dōu chèutheui aihk Sēichyün choi gā?
   B: Haih a. Jouh māt a?
   A: Mōuh, nī lēuhng yāht ngōh yiu chēng haak, Sēung sihnh Sēichyün
      choi je. Yāuh mèyéh hou sihk ge, gaaíshuhháh lā.
   B: Aiya! Ngōh ānhīk dī choi mēng ge bo.
   A: Gâm, nēih dī mā giu choi a?
   B: Ngōh sihsih dōu haih tūhng pāhngyāuh yātchāih heui gō. Chichi
dōuhain kēuih giu mèyéh ngōh jahū sihk mèyéh ge je.
   A: Gâm, nēih yāt yeuñng dōu ánggeidāk mē?
   B: Ngōh jihnghhaih geidāk yāuh go tōng syūnshyündí, laahšlātshdí,
giujuh syūnlaakht tōng, yahu yëuhng yū thitshimdí, syūnshyündí,
hōuhùsihk ge, giujuh tōhngchou yū. Daìhyihdí choi ngōh jahū
sihk ānsik gōng laak.
   1) Sēichyün = Szechwan
   2) Jouh māt a? = here: Why do you ask?
   3) Mōuh = Nothing special
   4) Chichi = every time
   5) Syūnlaakht tōng = pungent pepper soup
   6) Tōhngchou yū = sweet and sour fish

373
APPENDIX 1  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

A: Gâm, néih tûnh ngôh mahnâh néih gô go pâôngyáuh â.
B: Dâk, ngôh tingyaht fàanlâih wah néih jì lâ.

Lesson Twenty-six

1. Mrs. Wong and Mrs. Lee discuss Mrs. Lee's new job:
Wông Tâai: Têngginwah yuûn gâan ngânhôhng bêî hou gôu sâmêsui chêng néih bôl Hâih mânhâih â?
Wông Tâai: Gâm, néih heuijô fàângûng, bîngo tûnh néih chau di sailôügo a?
Lêih Tâai: Sôyin ngôh yiu wân yânh lâîh tûnh ngôh chau kêuïhdeiuh. Néih hô ênhôyín gaaísihg go bêî ngôh â?
Wông Tâai: Ngôh yiu mahnâh ngôh go gûngyâhn sinji dàk. Néih dàsyun bêî gêî chîn yânhgûng a?
Lêih Tâai: Yûngwó wàndôu go yânh yauh gônjânhg yauh kànhnîhk ge, jauh dôîî chên dôu môu hôiwâh ge.
Wông Tâai: Yîngâ chêng gûngyâhn, jiaû dôu yiu sâàs baak lênhng mân ge la.
Wông Tâai: Ngôh tûnh néih mahn òô gêî go yânh lâ.
Lêih Tâai: Gâm, ênhôi néih sin bô!
Wông Tâai: Mhôái haakhei.

1) chau = to take care (of children)
   a) chaujêî = baby amah

2. Mrs. Cheung calls the air conditioner repair company:
A: Hêunggông Lânhghei Gùngâî a?
B: Hâih a, mêmôh sêî né?
A: Ngôh òkkôi go lânhghei gêî wâstjô. Ngôh chihnâht yîngîng såîwô dîhnaî giu néih gûngâî wân yânh lâîh tûnh ngôh jîng ge la.
Dîngâî gâm yah tujing mêm thêî ge la?
B: Yauh gâm ge sêî mô? Chênh mahn néih hâm bîndouh ge?
A: Ngôh nídouh hâm Dàih Douh Jûng yît jàst houh, yih lâu sig Wông ge.
B: Gâm, néih go lânhgheigêî wâstjô mêmôh a?
A: Go lânhghei gêî hôijô hou noih dôu òôdêk lânhg lôh.
B: Hôu lâ, ngôh yûtjân giu yânh heui lâ.
A: Faaîlâ lâ, nîpâî giy yiht, môu lânhghei hou nâahn fandêk jeuhk ge.

374
Lesson Twenty-seven

1. Two friends discuss buying Japanese goods:

A: Dīngáisí néih gas jùngyi máih Yāhtbūn yēh ga?

B: Yānswài Yāhtbūn yēh jourdāk tīnhg lōihlōu ge chā āhdāk gēidō, daahnahih jauh pēnhg hōu dō lā.

1) chā āhdāk gēi dō = chā āhdāk gēi dō = about the same; just a little bit less good, [lacking not very much]
A: Séuiyihn haih jingdák leng jë, daahnhaïh ŋhtúnhng gé. Yahtbún yêh, yuhng môuhgêinoih jauh laahn ge la.

B: Ángindák ãi! Kêihsaht yâuhsh dî yahtbún yêh juhng hou tim. Fâân-jîng yauh dî yêh yuhng môuh géi noih jauh yiu wuhn sân ge laak. Maaïh löihlôtu ge yuuhgdou gauh dôu meih laahn, dâmjô këuih yauh mânhou, mnháh yauh mnhôvtái, hou náahn gé.

A: Nêih gongdák dôu géi ngâm, daahnhaïh deui ngôh làih gông, ngôh jauh maah bündëih yêh dôu nhmâaïh Yahtbún ge laak.

B: Hâ, nêih go yâhn jànhaih ãi!

1) Ángindák ãi = Not necessarily!
2) Fâân-jîng = anyway, besides,...
3) Nêih go yâhn jànhaih ãi = You really are something!

2. Talking about the importance of male children:

Jêung Táai: Êông Táai chinhnyaat sângjô go neui bo. Nêih ji mnhji a?
Lêih Slujé: Haih më? Nêih yîhôg gông ngôh ji ji ja. Gâm, këuih yât-dîng hou hoihâm gé la?

Jêung Táai: Houcîhâh wah mânhaih bo. Kêûnideih gôdouh dî yâhn hou hêimônhng sâng go jài ga, yîhôg sângjô go neui, scoih këuihdeih mânhaih géi jëngyî lôh.

Lêih Slujé: Kêihsaht jînhèui yâuh mât fanhînt a? Dôuhaih jîhgoi ge sailôugô jë.

Jêung Táai: Lêih Slujé, nêih meih gitfên jauh mnhji ge laak. Dëuiyû Jûnggwokyâm laih gông, dôsu kôu yîhwôih môuh jài haih hou daaïh giinh mëh ga.

Lêih Slujé: Ngôh dôu jîdou. Daahnhaîh Êông Táai nî go bâjtjôw haih dâih yât go sailôugô jë. Nháai gâm mîyêh ga?

Jêung Táai: Môuh cho. Bâjtjôw yûhwô daïh yât go jauh haih jài jauh hou hûdô la më.

Lêih Slujé: Mat nêih dôu yâuh gâm ge sëungfaat ge më?


1) sângjô = gave birth (to)
2) hoihâm = happy
3) jîhgoi ge = one's own, your own, etc.
4) Nháai gâm mîyêh ga? = No need to make such a big thing of it?
5) sëungfaat = idea, concept
6) A Jêung = Mrs. Jêung's husband
7) hou chîh = similar to A similar to E
   (A Jêung is similar to Êông Táai and the others that way in not liking girls.)
Lesson Twenty-eight

1. Delivering goods to the wrong address:
   Jëung Táai: Mâtyêu sîh a?
   Fógei: Sung fo làih a.
   Jëung Táai: Bîndouh ga?
   Fógei: Wînhông Gungôl ge.
   Fógei: Bîngo mäaj dôu hou la. Haïh sê néihdeih nîdouh său ge, ngôgôi néih chîm mông sàujô kîouh la.
   Jëung Táai: Yûuh sôu hê saih mëyêh làih ga?
   Fógei: Ñhî bo. Ngôh mîhâik Yîngmân ga, néih jîhgei nîkheui tâi hah la.
   Fógei: Gâm, néih său mîsaug sa? Bêijô chîn gûlôh bo.
   Jëung Táai: Yûhgô màhaïng ngôndeih màaih gê, bêijô chîn dôu màhaïh ngôndeih său gâ. Bîtyûh néih dêng ngôh dâ ñhûwâ bêî ngôh sînsaang mahnhôh saih màhaïh kêuî mi n gê?
   Fógei: Hôu la, hôu la, Ñhôgôi néih fàsîdî la. Ngôh juhng yiu heui hóu dô deihfông ga.
   Jëung Táai: Ñhôgôi dêng yâtjahn a.
   Fógei: Jân mânhfàahn!

   1) fo = goods
   2) làih? = làih + rising intonation for surprise and doubt.
   3) nîkheui = ningheui
   4) Ñhîchîh bo = Not likely!
   5) Jân mânhfàahn = What a nuisance!

2. Servant talks to housewife about opening a bank account:
   A Jû: Siu-Nâaî a, néih gëeih heui ngànhñhông tühngmàaïh ngôh heui, dák mîhîk a?
   1) A Jû = servant's name
   2) Siu Nâaî = term of address used by servant in the
family addressing the housewife. The term basically means 'wife of a son of the head of the family but it is not now restricted to that meaning.

Siu-Nǎai: Heui ngànhnhông néih dòu  åhsík louh mē?
A Jyù : Louh jauh sǐk gē, bāt̂ĝwo ngōh  åhjì jài chin yahpheui yiu mēyēh sāu̍h jë.
A Jyù : Aiya—Siu Nǎai, néih dòu  åhhaah jāi ngōh åhsík jīh ge lāngōh méng dōu åhsík chīm gā!
Siu Nǎai: Gām, yu̍hng tōu̍hjēung dōu dāk gē jō.
A Jyù : Tōu̍hjêung dōu dāk åh? Gām, ngōh yāuh a.
Siu Nǎai: Néih sōung gēisìh heui a?
A Jyù : Mōuh sōwaih gē. Dākhāahn ji heui dōu  åhchīh gā.
Siu Nǎai: Bātiūh hahjau sīhkyūn fah̄h ji heui lā. Ngànhnhông săam dim ji sāan mūn gā.
A Jyù : Hōu aak. Gām, ngōh heui jyū fah̄h sīn la bo.

1) louh = road
2) hōi wuhhāu = open an account

Lesson Twenty-nine

1. A visit to the doctor:
Lēih sīujē : Chāhn Yīsā̍ng.
Chāhn Yīsā̍ng: Xī, Lēih Sīujē, māt sīh a?
Lēih Sīujē : Ngōh chīn gēi yaht hái chyūhfont dītchān, go tāuh jōnhgmāaih go syutgwaih douh, hōuchōi mōuh māt sīh. Sāanhkáih ni lēu̍hng yaht ngōh gōkda̍k hōu tāuhthung, sōyīh ngōh lāih tāihâh jē.
Chāhn Yīsā̍ng: Mmm, néih yīnchīn yāuh mōuh gāmyōng tōnggwō gā?
Chāhn Yīsā̍ng: Nīpáai fangkōhō ma?
  1) chīn gēi yaht = a few days ago
  2) tāuh = head
  3) jōnhgmāaih = hit
  4) tung = hurt

378
Chân Yīsāng: Fandāk m̀hōu dòu wûi̍h tâuhng ga. Gwoheui go bihn, ngôh tûhng néih tâihāh lā.

Lài̍h Sīu̍hō : Hōu.

(The doctor finishes examining the patient:)

Lài̍h Sīu̍hō : Dīm a, Yīsāng?

Chân Yīsāng: Môuh mē̍t sīh ge, êng gau fan ge jē. Ngôh hōi dī yeuhk bêí néih lâ, nàh, mûih sâahn siuh yāt nāp ji fan, néih jâuh wûi̍h hîu hîu fan ge laak, yûngâo gwo lâuhng sàaw yâh juhng mîh hîu, jâuh joi lâi̍h tâi lâ.

Lài̍h Sīu̍hō : Hōu, êngōiśaai lā, Chân Yīsāng.

Chân Yīsāng: Hōu wah.

1) yeuhk = medicine
   hōi dī yeuhk = write a prescription
2) nāp = pill. W for pill, grain of rice, grain of sand, etc.
3) Hōu wah = 'You're welcome'

2. Young lady goes to the hospital to visit her injured friend:

A: Sīnsâang, chêng mānh Gâulûhng Yīyûn hâi bîndouh a?
B: Gâulûhng Yīyûn âh. Nê, jâuh hâi Taaijī Dōu̍h tûhng Wǒdâlōuh Dōu̍h jîgâsin.
A: Yâuh nîdou hëui kânh ênhânh a?
B: O-Lài̍h nîdouh mòuh gëí yûnh jê. Nê, gahnjyuh dâihyih go chê jâahm gōdouh jâuh hâih laak.
A: Êngōiśaai.

(She arrives at her friend's room in the hospital:)
A: A, Siú-fông, mûih mèyûh sîh lâ ma?
C: Môuh, bêí chē johngchân ji ma. Hōu hîudô la. Yûuh sâm.
A: Johngchân bîndouh a?
C: Nê, johngchân jek geuk lôh.
A: Aiyânh. Hâi bîndouh johngchân a?
C: Jâuh hâi ngôh gûngâi gâkâlêih.
A: Hahchì chêut gâai siüsâm dī lâ.
C: Jîdou lâ.

1) Taaijī Dōu̍h = Prince Road
2) Wǒdâlōuh Dōu̍h = Waterloo Road
3) ji ma = that's all
4) Yâuh sâm = It's a kind of you to inquire
APPENDIX 1  CANTONESE BASIC COURSE


C: C, êngô̄i. Mm. Dî gãitông hou leng a.
A: Hah a, ngô̄h dahanjô sêng yaht ga la.

C: Ha. Gâm, ngô̄h hahchi yiu bêî chê juhng dô gêî chî jî dák.
A: Hê, hahchi ngô̄h tàî dôu mhtái néîh a. Hôu laak, ngô̄h yihgâ yiu faang laak. Tingyaht jî lâih taam néîh la.

C: Hôu, êngô̄isaai. Tingyaht geidák joi daai gãitông làih bêî ngô̄h yâm a?
A: Hôu la. Hôu la. Joigin:
  1) dahn = steam (a method of cooking)
  2) tàî dôub mhtái néîh = won't even come see you

3. Miss Lee visits a fellow worker, Mr. Lau, in the hospital:

A: Lâuh sâang, dîmb a?
B: O--léîh Slujô. Hôu dî la. Yâuh sâm. Néîh dîmb jî ngô̄h jyuâ hâi yîyuân ga?
A: Hah Lôuh Jëung gông bêî ngô̄h têng ge. Daahnhaih kéuih wâh dôu mûjî néîh haih mëyêh bêngs. Mëyêh sîh a?
B: Eh, Chôcô̄ jihnhah yâuh dî sêngfung tûnhmgâaih ëhshyûfuhk. Ngô̄h yâuh mûw hêui tàî yissâng. Dâih yah jauh faat siu la. Sâmeei--
   mûnhaih jauh làih jô nidouh lô!
A: Gêî dô douh yiht a?
B: Kânhyâht juhng haih sa'angâu douh a.
A: Aiyah. Mât gâm gànyiu a. Yisâng dîm wâh a?
B: Gâmâyâht hou houdô la. Tâuhsin yisâng joi bëijô dî yëukhseüi tûnh yëuhkyûn ngô̄h sîhk. Kéuih wâh gwo lûuhng yaht jauh hûyîh chëyt yîn.

B: Néîh juhng gâm haakhei. Jânhaih dôjehsaai.
A: Siu yisi jê. Ngô̄h dôu yiu jau la. Dâng néîh chëutjô yûn, ngô̄hdeih
   1) Yâuh sâm = It's kind of you to inquire.
   2) daih yaht = the next day
   3) êhhaîh jauh làihjô nidouh lô! = Wasn't it that I came here! i.e., Didn't I just wind up here! (exasperated)

   4) douh = degree (of temperature)
   5) chëut yûn = get out of the hospital
   6) Siu yisi jê. = It's just a little something. Polite response to thanks for a gift.

380
Lesson Thirty

1. An overdue plane:

Sailou: Fung dingbou haih amhain saimui daamulaih ga?


Sailou: Gām, ngōndeih ānhji gēisih heui jip gēi ge lo bo.

Agō: Lihh kēuih jīngēi dōu ānhji gēisih ji yauh fēigēi hōi, ngōndeih jauh dīm jī ā?

Sailou: Gām, nēih ēuih wūih ānhūih joi dā dingbou fāandulaih a?

Agō: Dāahnkōi wūih gē. Chēuih fēi gōnāhchit lā.

Sailou: Ai, ngōh jānhaih pā Yahbūn nī chēuhng fūng wūih yuhnt dā yuhnt dāahn tīm bo.

Agō: Dōu ānhąnju ēi, Jidō haih Yahbūn jyu dō gēi yuht jē. Yauh āhsai bei jāudim chin gē.

Sailou: Mēt jyuuh gējichēuhng jáudim āhsai bei chin ge mē?

Agō: Haih a, hōninghūng gūngēi fuhjaak ge mā.

Sailou: Haih ān? Hōsih dāfung ānhchūtđakheui hànhng gāai ānhaih gēi hōu ge bo.

1) gējichēuhng = fēigēi gējichēuhng = airport
2) gēi = fēigēi
3) chēuhng = M for wind
4) hōninghūng gūngēi = airline company

2. Renting a house:

A: Chānh Tāi, nōih ānhaih wah gāmyaht heui tāi ūk gē? Diqăai juhng ānhuei a?

B: Haih a. Ngōh būnloih tūng ūkjiyū yuexhōu gāmju sahm dīm gijinwēn gē, dāahnhaih ngāammīām keuih ēi yāhā tūngji ngōh wah hahjau ji dākhāhnh woh. Sōyīh hahjau jī heui lā.

(That afternoon:)


1) ūkjiyū = landlord, landlady
2) woh = that's what he said.
Chàhn : Ngòi.


Chàhn : Mak. Yi, jàan dihndâng waihjó gé.


Chàhn : Yât go yuht géi chîn jîu a?

Landlord: Luhk baak mân jô. Hâu pêhn ge la.

Chàhn : Lihn âhlîhn mêih séuidînhfai a?

Landlord: Lihnâmjîh séuijîfai, daahnhhîh âhlîhn dihnfai. Chàhn Táai gokdàk dîm a?

Chàhn : Deihfông dòu géi hóu, bâtgwo ükjóu gwai dî la.


Chàhn : Péhngdî âhndàk ânh?

Landlord: Môuh baahnfàat la, yîhnging haih jeui pêhn ge la.

Chàhn : Gàm, ngôh fànhheui mahnhân ngôh ñinsâang eîn lâ. Ngòiisaái.

Landlord: Nhái haihkei.

1) sàam fông = 3 bedrooms
2) lêuhng tëng = 2 sitting places  3. i.e., living room and dining room, (Lêuhng tëng = haaktêng + faahntêng)
3) dihndângdàam = light bulb
4) jì ma = that's all
5) séuidînhfai = water and electricity fees
6) Nhùúih sàu gwai = I wouldn't take too much from you [wouldn't-take-expensive]
7) fôngbihn = convenient

3. Mr. Brown tells his friend Mr. Cheung about his Cantonese course and his plans for an upcoming trip:

A: Jùông Sàang. Hóu noih môuh gin bo. Gói hóu ma?

B: Yi. Máit Bâau Sàang néih sìík gông Gwôngdûngwá ga?


B: Haîh ñéii. Gôngdûk gâm blùjûun gé. Haîh laâk--Bâau Sàang, néih dînhgâái wûihn hohk Gwôngdûngwá ga?

A: Óh. Yiîhng nôôdehng gûngî hóudô sàangyí yìu gông Gwôngdûngwá jì

1) blûjûun = standard, i.e., here: speaks like a Cantonese person
2) sàangyí = commercial business
A: Hauk. Sòyih gungsi paaï ngòh heui hohk.
B: Hokyô gëi noth a?
A: Luhk go yuht.
B: Gâm, néih gokdák hohk Gwôngdungwâ nàahn mìnàahn a?
A: Mòwûih a, Ngòh deui Gwôngdungwâ hòu yáuh hingcheui, Bâtgo hêisau hohk gòjân, ngòh lihn yat yih saam jàngdë dou gòng mhchûtláiëh. Daahkoi hokyôㄌ hùnh gò jùh, jauh hòu hòu dô la.
B: Hài. Bâa Sâang yîngá têng néih gông dë Gwôngdungwâ yuht làih yuht làuhlêïh.
B: Hâih laak--hah go làihevbâi néih dák mûdákhaah a? Lûuh dâan sâangyî ngòh sëung yeuk néih chëutláiëh jâmhâh.
B: Ô. Gâm fâai âh. Heui dë mûyôh deihfông a?
A: Yuhntnàah Nûnggâbô, Mâhlôïha dôu yiu heui--Bûnloîh seuhng go yuht jauh yiu heui ge la, daahnheih ngòh ngâmngâam hohkgân Gwôngdung-wâ. Sòyih yîngá ji heui.
B: Gâm, jauh ngâmsaaai la. Hài go bihn néih jauh yàuh houdô gëiwûih gòng Gwôngdungwâ ga.
A: Mhêsái haakhei.
1) paaï = send
2) yáuh hingcheui = to be interested in
3) dâan sâangyî = some business [dâan = 'list,' M for sâangyî]
4) jâm = discuss
5) Dûng Nàahm A = Southeast Asia
6) Yuhntnàahs = VietNam
7) Mâhlôïha = Malay
8) gëiwûih = opportunity
GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers to the left of the period refer to lesson numbers, and those to the right, to page numbers.

a, suffix to members of series in parallel construction, 19.72
addresses, larger units preceding smaller, 17.27
Adj, measurable, 21.128-30
amāh? (varīma), interrogative sen. suf. checking on an assumption: 'isn't it?'; 29.313
amāh, sen. suf. for obviousness, 29.313, 327
Aux. verbs, wūh, 'likely to', 24.199
bētyūh... bē laak, 'it would be better to.....', 28.290
běi, 'by', 29.312
běi, 'compared to', in comparison pattern, 21.126-127
bēugeau, comparatively, in comparison pattern, 21.127
būnloh, 'originally', 30.343
chœuinhēi, 'unless,' 'only if', 28.269-90
chœuinhō... (ji ngoih), ...... 'with the exception of.....', 28.1-2, 28.288-89
chūh, 'is similar to, resembles,' 27.265
comparison patterns, adjectives, 21.126-28; verbs, 22.152-153
daah, 'big', used in reference to years of age, 21.130
daih - M, contraction of daihyih M, 16.9
daaihyih M, another (additional) M, 16.9
-dēk, Vsuf. 'can', 20.97; with performance-achievement Verb: V-dēk-achievement, 'can perform achieve', 23.174-76; in VO phrase: V-dēk-0, 'can VO', 23.176
-dēk-, in manner patterns, 22.150; manner pattern used in adjectival time phrases with jōu, ngaan, yeh: V-dēk-jōu = eat/ate early, 23.177
dates, 17.27-29; larger units preceding smaller, 17.27; days of the week, 17.27; question-word formulas for dates, 17.29; pēi yuht? and bān yuht?, 'what month?', 17.31; chart for sections of the day, 23.177
deu, 'towards, about, for, with', 'in regard to', in deu Obj Adj phrase, 30.338
dim?, 'how', in manner patterns, 22.151
dimūng, hour, as post-verb time spent word, 20.101
dōso, 'most'; 'mostly', as noun modifier, 27.267; as adverb, 27.268
duplicated adjectives, Adj-adj-dēi, a little bit Adj.', 25.223
duplicated M for Tw, 'Each and every', 20.99-100
duplicated Measures for indiv. Nouns, 'every N', 27.267; 27.275
faaid, 'quickly', in pre-verb and post-verb position, 24.200
frequency words, 21.130

384
gâm, 'such', as independent unit, 'such things', 'in such a way', 26.246; 'this way', 26.246; as modifier of verb this way, 26.246; as modifier of noun, 'this kind of N', 26.246; substituting for Vp gâm jêu, 'do/did it thus', 26.249-50; compared with gâm, 'so', 26.247

gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316; compared with kahn, near, 29.316

V-gâm, 'V is going on', V.suf, calling attention to action in progress, 26.245; position in directional verb compounds, 26.245

gê lo bo, sen.suf ge/ge, 'that's the way it is', + sen.suf lo bo for good-natured protest, 30.340

gê, as. ge + rising intonation connotes impatience, 19.86

gêi?, which number (i.e., how much/many?) and compared with âei, 'several', 18.53; before measurable adjectives, 21.126

gôjehn, when..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as tw, 18.48

Gôngji, 'Hong Kong money', grammatically a noun, 19.86

-gwo, in comparison pattern: Âîgwo, 'more Âî then', 21.126-27; in comp. pattern for Verbs VdÂî Âîgwo ngôh, 22.152

Gwo, another (as replacement), in V-gwo(nu.) M pattern, 24.201

hêi, from, interchangeable with yäuh, 'from', 17.38

hêi simdouh V - ge, 19.72-73; not basically a past reference form, 19.73

-hauh, var of: jîauh), after #4 of time, 20.18

-hôu, V.suf. indicating satisfactory conclusion of performance, 19.74

Hôu choi...jê, 'At least it's lucky...', 24.200; 24.214

Hôu V (0) (la), an imperative form: 'do V', 'hadn't you better V?', 25.224-25

jêi, 'put, place', 24.199-200

...jêi, ...ôau..., 'Even though...', still.....', 30.340

jeui-, jeui Adj = superlative degree, 21.128

jêng, 'take', in jêng 0, V-complement pattern, 28.291; compared with Mandarin mà construction, 28.291

jîfân, 'between', 29.314-15

ji (var.sinji) '(only) then', 19.72

ji-, ji Adj = superlative degree, 21.128

jîlung, before..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of tw phrase: Nu-M jîlung, 18.48

jîluh, after..., subordinate conjunction, 18.47; as part of tw phrase: Nu.M. jîluh, 18.48

...jî ngôh, 'outside of', 'aside from...', 26.3; 25.247

jîyiu..., jîu..., 'just have to..., then.....', 26.288

jîngêuh, energy; feel well, belongs to two word classes: M and Adj., 25.225

jîng, 'fix,' 'make', as first element in performance-achievement verb compound, 24.203

jînliu, every morning, 23.178

-ô, verb suf. in time spent sentences of past reference, 18.49; V.suf in imperative sentences, 'V-ô = 'get V done', 23.176

jo, as adj suffix, and result of a process, 24.201

jîng, in comparison pattern, 21.128
káhn, 'near', 29.316; compared with gahn(jyuh), near, 29.316

kèihsaht, 'But actually....', 27.268

lā, sen.suf. for uncertainty; la for change + raised intonation for uncertainty, 17.29

la, as in time spent sentence of past reference, indicating 'up to now', 18.49-50

la, sen.suf. in imperative sen, indicating friendly advice, 24.200

làih, 'for the purpose of' 24.202; 24.211

làih, VP suffix, contradicting stimulus sentence assertion of action performed, 16.8

làih, sen.suf. in past reference sentences: Movement Verb Phrase + làih = return from having been away, 16.8; 26.253

láihsaaj, 'week', as 'Sunday', 17.28

lèih, 'distance from', 29.315

lîh(máah), 'including', 'and', 'even'; 'to include', 30.339-40

lo bo, sen.suf. connotes good-natured protest 27.268

lòh, as: making a bid for sympathy, 25.224

máh, as variant of yîhghô máh, 'otherwise' (qv), 25.225

èhtîng, 'not alike', not used as Main Verb in affirmative, 27.269

máahmáah, 'every evening', 23.178


Manner patterns, 22.150-53

Mead, 'not yet', in sentences of future reference, 19.71

mèih...jîchih, interchangeable with jîchih clause without mèih, 18.48

Méihgān, 'American money', grammatically a Noun, 19.86

Mûuh sówah ge, 'Whatever you say.', 28.247-48

Movable Adverbs, 18.46

múih, 'every', 'each', 20.99

(ng)aan, 'late (in the daytime)', 23.177

noun modification, SV modifier to SP-M-N in direct modification, 20.103

noun types, the VO-ge construction, 'one who VOas for an occupation', 26.247

number-measure expressions, with fractions, partials, and approximate numbers, 20.97-98

numbers, fractions, 20.97-99; serial numbers as approximate numbers, 20.98-99; approximate numbers: sânhô baakghâi, etc., 20.99

Paired Conjunctions, chêuifèi....

jauh.... 'Must.... in order that....', 'unless.... then....', 23.3; chêuifèi.... ji.... 'Must.... in order that....', 'unless.... then....', 23.3; chêuifèi...

yîhghô máh,... 'must.... otherwise.... 23.3; chêuifèi....

jång,... 28.288; chêuifèi....

jauh.... 28.286-89; jîyîu....

jauh.... 28.288; sàuhifèi....

dàahnshô,... 25.223; yînghô,...

sòp,... 20.97; yàt....

jauh.... 3386
'Passive', construction in Cantonese, 29.312

Possessive modification, saimúi w/without ge/M, mui w/with ge/M, 22.154

Pronoun, pronoun object required in imperative y-10, 23.176

Question-words used as non-questions 25.225-27

Questions negatively phrased, responses to, 16.9; ordinary denial, 16.17; spirited denial, 16.17.
sai, 'small', used in reference to years of age, 21.130

saahng, as approximate number, 20.99

Sentence suffixes: (see individual entries) amáh?, 29.313; amáh, 29.313; ge lo bo, 30.340; ge, 19.88; la, 17.29; la, 'up to now', 18.49-50; la, 'friendly advice', 24.200; laáh, 'contradictory', 16.8; laáh, 'return', 16.8; 26.253; lo bo, 27.268; lóh, 25.224; tim, 25.234

Sentence type, past reference with Tw focus: Tw V-ge, 17.35

Sentence type, Time-spent sentences: past reference with y-10 or V-geo, 18.49-50; sentence position relative to other post verbal expressions, 18.50-51

Sentence type, time-since sentences 18.51

séuyinh..., daahninh... 'although ..., still...', 25.225

séung, 'think of', past reference verb forms, 16.11

séung, 'wish to', past reference verb forms, 16.10

sínjí (var:jí), '(only) then', 19.72

sóyíh, see yánwáih, sóyíh.
specifiea, míih, 20.99

superlative degree, 21.128

taai, 'excessively', 'too', 22.153

tia, sen.suf., indicates speaker taken by surprise, 25.274

Timewords, 17.29

tühlng, 'to be alike, similar', not used as V in affirmative, 27.269

Verb suffixes, role in Cantonese, 16.5-7; role in Cantonese and English compared, 16.7

Verb suffixes, (see individual entries) -dáx, -gán, -tá, -yán

Verbs, Class 1 verbs: partial distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.4

Verbs, Class 2 verbs: no distinction between past and non-past forms, 16.5

Verbs, Past reference: uninflected verb to express general activity, 16.6

Verbs, role of verb suffixes in Cantonese, 16.6

Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past affirmative forms, 19.69

Verb forms for talking about the past negative forms: saoh V and meih Y, 19.70
Verbs, verb forms for talking about the past, choice questions yáuh möuh V?, and V-10, etc. meih, 19.70

Verbs, V-ge pattern, not necessarily a past reference form, 19.86

Verbs, miV, as 'not willing to V' 20.101-02

Verbs, absence of active-passive distinction: 22.151; 23.176; 29.312


VO-ge, 'one who does VO as occupation', 26.247

wúih, 'likely to', 24.199; in sentences of past probability, 24.199; compared with Mandarin huí, 24.199

yánwaih..., gúih..., 'Because...', therefore, 20.97

yáhnyánh, 'everybody', 27.267

yáh, omission before Measure in a múih phrase, 20.99

yáh..., 'aau... ', 'as soon as... , then... ', 28.290-91

yáuh 'have', in pivotal construction with personal subject: S yáuh SYO, 23.178; as equating verb in Timespend sentence, 20.102-03; equating verb in measurable adjective sentence, 21.110; 'to have' 'there is', as equating verb in a lèih, 'distance from' sentence, 29.316

yáuhI, 'some', 27.266

yáuhI..., yáuhI.... 'some.... others.... ', 27.266

yeh, 'late (in the evening)', 23.177

yeuk, 'request, make, an appointment', 30.337

yihchihm, 'previously', 18.48

yihhauh, 'afterwards' 18.48

yih moy, same as ji moy, (qv), 26.247

yihwaih, 'to be under the impression', 25.223

yínghong, (var: bông), 'English pound (sterling)', grammatically a Measure, 19.86

yiu, 'require,' as 'cause or make (someone do something)', 20.102; 20.105; 29.313

yungwó ànhhaih, 'otherwise; if not' 25.225

-áuh, Vauq indicating finishing an action, 26.245

yuh.., yuh... 'more and more.... ', 30.357
CANTONese BASIC COURSE

CUMULATIVE VOCABULARY LIST
LESSONS 16-30

Entries are arranged in alphabetical order by syllable, with h indicating lower register disregarded alphabetically. When words having the same syllable but different tones are listed, the sequence of tone listing is: high level, mid level, low level, high falling, low falling, high rising, low rising. Numbers in the right hand column refer to the lesson in which the item first appears, thus:

18 = Lesson 18 Basic Conversation
18.1 = Lesson 18, Drill 1
29N = Lesson 29, Notes

Items which appear for the first time in the Notes are listed again when appearing for the first time in the main body of the text. Measures for the nouns follow the noun entries in brackets. In this volume ng is listed separately from n as an initial consonant.

A

a 呀 sufix to members of series in parallel construction 19

ama? (or amah?) 呀嗎 ss. isn't that right? interrogative sen. suf., checking an assumption 29

ama (or amah) 呀嗎 ss. for obviousness, in response sentence explaining why/where/when/what/who, ama adds the connotation (cheerfully, without impatience) that the whole thing is pretty obvious. 29.15

am 咪 fitting, suitable, that's fine! (var. pro: ngam) 19

amam 咪咗 just, only a moment ago (var. pro: ngeamngam) 22

aan 昨晚 late (in the day) (var. pro: ngean) 23.9

aanjaun 當晚 around noon; morning (var. pro: ngeanjaun) 23.1

aanjaun sahpyih dim 昨晚十二點 12 noon (var. pro: ngeanjaun-) 23N2

B

baalega 巴士 bus 20.1

baan 班 flight, trip, voyage Measure 20

baaltyuht 八月 August 17N

Baaihlaak! 弊嘞 exclamation of annoyance (var: Baahlok!) 24

389
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bātyihp</td>
<td>bā tínp</td>
<td>to graduate</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bātyīn, bā leak (or lā)</td>
<td>bā tīn, bā lēk</td>
<td>it would be preferable to do X</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běi</td>
<td>bēi</td>
<td>introduces the agent of an action, 'by'</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X běi Y</td>
<td>X bī y</td>
<td>X in comparison to Y; X compared to Y</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běifān</td>
<td>běifān</td>
<td>give back</td>
<td>18.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běigau</td>
<td>běigâu</td>
<td>in comparison, comparatively</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běing</td>
<td>běing</td>
<td>illness</td>
<td>29.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běngjō</td>
<td>běngjō</td>
<td>got sick</td>
<td>29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn-</td>
<td>bīn-</td>
<td>any (one, place, etc.); whatever (one, place, etc.)</td>
<td>25.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīndouh</td>
<td>bīndōu</td>
<td>anywhere; wherever</td>
<td>25.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīngo</td>
<td>bīngo</td>
<td>anyone; whoever</td>
<td>25.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn nǐm?</td>
<td>bīn nǐm</td>
<td>which year?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn nǐm, bīn yuht, bīn yah?</td>
<td>bīn nǐm, bīn juht, bīn yah</td>
<td>what date?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn yuht?</td>
<td>bīn juht</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>28.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn yah?</td>
<td>bīn yah</td>
<td>what day?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bīn yuht?</td>
<td>bīn juht</td>
<td>what month?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bō [go]</td>
<td>bō</td>
<td>ball</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bohk</td>
<td>bohk</td>
<td>thin (in thickness, as of cloth)</td>
<td>27.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bou j [jōng]</td>
<td>bou j</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>19.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būi-dip [tou]</td>
<td>būi-dīp</td>
<td>tea set</td>
<td>19.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bun yeh sahpyih dim</td>
<td>bün yeh sahpyih dim</td>
<td>twelve midnight</td>
<td>23N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būn</td>
<td>būn</td>
<td>move</td>
<td>18.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būn (n outbound)</td>
<td>būn (n)k</td>
<td>move house</td>
<td>18.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būnšīh</td>
<td>būnšīh</td>
<td>originally</td>
<td>30.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būndehwā</td>
<td>būndehwā</td>
<td>local language</td>
<td>27.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CH**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chànhdō</td>
<td>chānhdō</td>
<td>more or less, approximately</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chàauh</td>
<td>chāou</td>
<td>wrinkled</td>
<td>23.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎnchāx</td>
<td>chānxāx</td>
<td>relative(s)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-chǎn</td>
<td>-chān</td>
<td>injure, hurt, damage</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chētjuht</td>
<td>cheh tjuht</td>
<td>July</td>
<td>17N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chēk</td>
<td>chek</td>
<td>foot (measurement)</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANTONESE BASIC COURSE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chäng</td>
<td>請</td>
<td>invite, request</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chängdōu</td>
<td>請到</td>
<td>invite and have the invitation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>accepted; re servants, to hire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>them; re dinner guests, to have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>them accept your invitation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chäng gùngyàhn</td>
<td>請工人</td>
<td>hire servants</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chäng hāsék</td>
<td>請客</td>
<td>have a dinner party</td>
<td>16.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chäng sīh faahn,</td>
<td>請食飯</td>
<td>invite someone for dinner</td>
<td>16.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chäng yāhn sīh faahn</td>
<td>請人食飯</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheuimeih</td>
<td>趣味</td>
<td>see: yāuh cheuimeih</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deui x yāuh cheuimeih</td>
<td>對趣味</td>
<td>be interested in x</td>
<td>30.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chèuihxī̀i</td>
<td>除非</td>
<td>unless; only if</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chèuihjō... (ji ngōih)</td>
<td>除外</td>
<td>aside from...; other than...;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in addition to</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéung [go]</td>
<td>窗</td>
<td>window</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéunglim [tōm; faai]</td>
<td>窗簾</td>
<td>curtain</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[tou] set; [go]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chèuhng tōuh āiunwā [go]</td>
<td>長途電話</td>
<td>long distance phone call</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāut</td>
<td>M. for movie, a film</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāutznīn</td>
<td>出年</td>
<td>next year</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāutsaai</td>
<td>出世</td>
<td>to be born</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chīji [jëung]</td>
<td>廁紙</td>
<td>toilet paper</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[gyūn]</td>
<td>roll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[daahp]</td>
<td>stack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chìsō [go]</td>
<td>廁所</td>
<td>toilet</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhih</td>
<td>達</td>
<td>late (for an appointment), tardy</td>
<td>23.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhīn</td>
<td>似</td>
<td>is similar to; resembles</td>
<td>27; 27.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhīm mëng [go]</td>
<td>萬名</td>
<td>sign one’s name</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-chhīm</td>
<td>......ago (following a Nu-M of time)</td>
<td>22.17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhīmjīu</td>
<td>前朝</td>
<td>day before yesterday in the morning</td>
<td>23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhīmśāhm</td>
<td>前晚</td>
<td>night before last</td>
<td>23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhīmyahk</td>
<td>前日</td>
<td>day before yesterday</td>
<td>23.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chōchō</td>
<td>初初</td>
<td>at first, in the beginning</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chōn + vehicle</td>
<td>車</td>
<td>travel by (vehicle), go by (vehicle)</td>
<td>20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhōng [jëung]</td>
<td>床</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>24.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhōng chàh</td>
<td>冲茶</td>
<td>make tea</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chhūngliuhugfōng</td>
<td>冲凉房</td>
<td>bathroom; i.e., room for bathing</td>
<td>24.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūhng</td>
<td>重</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chyùhfóng [go]</td>
<td>厨房</td>
<td>kithoen</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chyun</td>
<td>厘</td>
<td>inch</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá</td>
<td>打</td>
<td>hit; to type (follow form of dá jih, [hit-words], i.e. to type</td>
<td>26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá bō</td>
<td>打波</td>
<td>play ball</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá chàuhng tōuh dilmwá</td>
<td>打长途电话</td>
<td>make a long distance call</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá dihmbou</td>
<td>打电报</td>
<td>send a telegram</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá fôgái [go]</td>
<td>打火机</td>
<td>(cigarette) lighter</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá fúng</td>
<td>打風</td>
<td>have a typhoon [hit-wind]</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá jēn</td>
<td>打字</td>
<td>to type (on the typewriter) [hit-words]</td>
<td>26.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dájìhégá [go][ga]</td>
<td>打字机</td>
<td>typewriter</td>
<td>26.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dál séih</td>
<td>打理</td>
<td>take care of, attend to</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá máhjéuk</td>
<td>打麻将</td>
<td>play mahjong</td>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá páai</td>
<td>打牌</td>
<td>play mahjong</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dá sàyun</td>
<td>打算</td>
<td>plan on, plan to</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daai</td>
<td>带</td>
<td>wear, as of watches, hats, things on top</td>
<td>24.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daaih</td>
<td>大</td>
<td>in ref. to age: older (in comparison sentences); how old? (in wëen)</td>
<td>21.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daaihhohk [gaan]</td>
<td>大學</td>
<td>university</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daaihkoi or daaihkoi</td>
<td>大概</td>
<td>probably</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daaihluk</td>
<td>大陸</td>
<td>continent; term used to refer to mainland China</td>
<td>18.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daaihyàhm [go]</td>
<td>大人</td>
<td>adults</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāan [jiwung]</td>
<td>单</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daap</td>
<td>搭</td>
<td>travel by (vehicle), take (vehicle); catch (vehicle)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daat</td>
<td>接</td>
<td>Measure for a place</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daihdí</td>
<td>第的</td>
<td>others, reduced form of daihyih dí, 'other ones,' 'others'</td>
<td>16N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daihyahht</td>
<td>第日</td>
<td>another day, another time (reduced form from daihyih yaht)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daihyih (+M)</td>
<td>第二</td>
<td>another..., other, others (boundword bound to following Measure)</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daihyih dí</td>
<td>第二的</td>
<td>others, other Ns [daihyih + M]</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANTONSE BACw. COURSE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dæk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>得</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'can,' 'able to' verb suf. indicating physical ability; hauidæk = can go; haamg dæk = is able to walk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y-dæk-hóu Aii</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>得好</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dæk in this pattern is a grammatical word coming between verb and following verbal complement which tells the manner in which the verb is done or what the result of the verb is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dâkgwokyânh [go]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>德國人</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dâkhânh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>得閒</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free, at leisure, not busy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dâkmâhn (also: -mân)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>德文</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German (language)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dâm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>地方</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deihfông [daat] or deihfông</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>地址</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deihji [go]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>對於</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towards, for, in regard to Obj</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deui X lâih gông</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>對...嶙嶙</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaking for X, from the point of view of X, in regard to X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deui X yâuh cheuimeih</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>對...有趣味</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be interested in X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dâksai [ga]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>的士</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>點</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any manner, whatever manner, however</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X dim?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>點</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how about X?, what's X like?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimjâai?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>點解</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dimjüng</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>點鐘</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dim syun a?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>點算呀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 'How can we handle this?' or 'What'll I do?' or 'What's to be done?'
<p>| 28                                                   |
| dihmboù [fùng]                                      |
| 電報                                              |
| telegram, cablegram                                |
| 28.1                                                |
| dihmboùguk or dihmboùghk [gaàn]                    |
| 電報局                                             |
| telegram office                                    |
| 28.1                                                |
| dihnâng [jáan or ji]                                |
| 電燈                                              |
| electric light, electric lamp                       |
| 30.4                                                |
| dihnsai                                        |
| 電費                                              |
| electricity expenses                               |
| 30.4                                                |
| dihnsih [ga]                                      |
| 電視                                              |
| television                                        |
| 16.6                                                |
| dihnsihgï [ga]                                   |
| 電視機                                             |
| TV set                                            |
| 26.5                                                |
| dip [jëk] [go]                                      |
| 鍋                                                |
| plate                                            |
| 19                                                   |
| dit                                          |
| 跌                                                |
| drop                                             |
| 24                                                   |
| ditchân                                         |
| 跌親                                              |
| fall and hurt yourself; be dropped and get hurt    |
| 29.1                                                |
| ditlaahn                                         |
| 跌慣                                              |
| drop and break                                    |
| 24                                                   |
| 393                                                |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dòsou</td>
<td>mòshù</td>
<td>mostly, for the most part; the majority</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōu</td>
<td>dōu</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>26.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>douh</td>
<td>mòshù</td>
<td>M for doors</td>
<td>24.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nu.m-dōu</td>
<td>xùmù</td>
<td>approximately nu.m (suf. to nu.m. expression)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōusé</td>
<td>dōusé</td>
<td>spill</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhk daaihhohk</td>
<td>duhk daaihhohk</td>
<td>study at a university, attend a university</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duhk syu</td>
<td>duhk syu</td>
<td>to study, to go to school</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dung</td>
<td>dung</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faai</td>
<td>faai</td>
<td>piece; M for dishcloth</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faaidj</td>
<td>faaidj</td>
<td>hurry and..., ....right away</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faahtōng [go]</td>
<td>faahtōng [go]</td>
<td>dining room</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāangān [gauh]</td>
<td>fāangān [gauh]</td>
<td>soap</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānheui</td>
<td>fānheui</td>
<td>go back, return (there)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faatsēng</td>
<td>faatsēng</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faatsiu</td>
<td>faatsiu</td>
<td>have a fever</td>
<td>29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faatgwokyāhn [go]</td>
<td>Faatgwokyāhn [go]</td>
<td>Frenchman</td>
<td>27.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faatgwokyāhn (also: -mān)</td>
<td>Faatgwokyāhn (also: -mān)</td>
<td>French (language)</td>
<td>27.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fai</td>
<td>fai</td>
<td>fees, expense</td>
<td>30.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fan</td>
<td>fan</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fan(gaau)</td>
<td>fan(gaau)</td>
<td>go to bed, sleep</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fanljeuk</td>
<td>fanljeuk</td>
<td>can't get to sleep</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fanljeuk</td>
<td>fanljeuk</td>
<td>get to sleep, fall asleep</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān</td>
<td>fān</td>
<td>divide, divide up</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānbiht</td>
<td>fānbiht</td>
<td>difference</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānʃu</td>
<td>fānʃu</td>
<td>instructions</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēiɡēi [ga]</td>
<td>fēiɡēi [ga]</td>
<td>airplane</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēiɡēi chēung [go]</td>
<td>fēiɡēi chēung [go]</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td>20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōchē [ga]</td>
<td>fōchē [ga]</td>
<td>train</td>
<td>20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōnggung</td>
<td>fōnggung</td>
<td>leave work, get off from work</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fong sān lai!</td>
<td>Fong sān lai!</td>
<td>Don't worry!</td>
<td>26N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōng [gaan]</td>
<td>fōng [gaan]</td>
<td>room</td>
<td>24.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

394
fuhjaak  負貴  take responsibility for, is
          responsible for  26
fù yauhk  掺药  treat with medicine  29
fù       強 [bitter]  29.1
fung     M. for telegram  28.1
          M. for letters, telegrams  26.3
fŭng     wind  30
fungkâuh typhoon signal  30

ɡäjû    elder sister  18
gäsi [tou] [di]  furniture  19
gâyâhn [di]  members of the immediate family  20
gaa siuhaem [fûng] letter of recommendation  26
gâuchî  this time  24.12
gâmjîu  this morning  23.1
gâmáahm  to-night  23.3
gâmën  this year  17.3
gâmyaht  today  16
gâmyaht hahjau  this afternoon  23.3
gâmyaht (ng)aanjau  this morning; today around noon  23.3
gám  in such a way; this way, that way;  26
     as Y, reduced form of gám jouh,
     'do/did it this way,' restricted
     to use in affirmative only
...gám    that kind of thing, such things  19
gahn (jyuhi) near (followed by a placeword object)  29
gân  from (as in to learn from someone,
     i.e., learn following someone as model)  22
     Vsuf calling attention to fact that
     performance is in process  26
gânyiu  important, serious  22.2
gauh   M. for soap  23.5
gauhmin  last year  17.3
gâumhgaû  from time to time  26.12
gâuyhnt  September  17n
géi-  any (number)  25.5
gai   to mail  28.1

395
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>geidim</td>
<td>gei deim</td>
<td>whatever hour, any hour, any time</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gei seun</td>
<td>gei soun</td>
<td>mail a letter, send a letter</td>
<td>28.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gei (do)hoh</td>
<td>gei (do)hoh</td>
<td>what day of the month?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gei noi</td>
<td>gei nei</td>
<td>how long (time)?</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gei (or -sih)</td>
<td>gei (or -sih)</td>
<td>whenever; anytime</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geiyuht</td>
<td>gei yuht</td>
<td>what month?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genghot</td>
<td>genghot</td>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>25.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwok [hek]</td>
<td>gwok [hek]</td>
<td>leg, foot</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gin</td>
<td>gin</td>
<td>meet, see</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gin mihn</td>
<td>gin mihn</td>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gitfan</td>
<td>gitfan</td>
<td>get married</td>
<td>18.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giuseng</td>
<td>giuseng</td>
<td>wake someone up</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gogo laihbaai</td>
<td>gogo lai hbaai</td>
<td>every week</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gogo ruht</td>
<td>gogo ruht</td>
<td>every month</td>
<td>20.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gojan (sih)</td>
<td>gojan (sih)</td>
<td>at that time</td>
<td>30.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP gojan (or gojahn)</td>
<td>VP gojan (or gojahn)</td>
<td>When VP, At the time that VP</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goi</td>
<td>goi</td>
<td>change, alter</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>godak</td>
<td>godak</td>
<td>feel, consider, realize</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonjehng</td>
<td>gonjehng</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gon hohit</td>
<td>gon hohit</td>
<td>can't make it in time, not have time [hurry-not make it]</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gongji</td>
<td>gongji</td>
<td>Hong Kong money</td>
<td>19.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gong yahn</td>
<td>gong yahn</td>
<td>[say-things], i.e. to talk</td>
<td>22.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gou</td>
<td>gou</td>
<td>tall</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gu</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>guess, conjecture, bet, hazard a guess</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guih</td>
<td>guih</td>
<td>tired</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gung</td>
<td>gung</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gungfu</td>
<td>gungfu</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwa</td>
<td>gwa</td>
<td>hang up</td>
<td>23.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwahtung [go]</td>
<td>gwahtung [go]</td>
<td>drawer</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwat [gau]</td>
<td>gwat [gau]</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwahouh</td>
<td>gwahouh</td>
<td>to register</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwahouh sun [fung]</td>
<td>gwahouh sun [fung]</td>
<td>registered letter</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwahou</td>
<td>gwahou</td>
<td>hang up</td>
<td>23.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gwo</td>
<td>-gwo</td>
<td>used to form the comparative: Adjective-er than, more Adjective than</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

396
### Cantonese Basic Course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y-gwo M</td>
<td>do another M (as replacement for the original one)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwo hói</td>
<td>cross the harbour [cross the seal] in Hong Kong, the expression used to refer to crossing the harbour from the Hong Kong side to the Kowloon side, and vice versa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwojung la</td>
<td>'You praise me too much! said in response to a compliment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj-gwotlah</td>
<td>too Adj, excessively Adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwóngjau</td>
<td>Canton, city of Canton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hañosi</td>
<td>next time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hahgo láihbaai</td>
<td>next week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hahgo juht</td>
<td>next month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanjau</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hanhyat M</td>
<td>the next M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haaktōng [go]</td>
<td>living room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háamb</td>
<td>salty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háamb gung</td>
<td>runs (of watches)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háamb louh</td>
<td>windowshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háamb louh</td>
<td>go on foot [walk-road]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haih gám wah la.</td>
<td>That's the way! [Be (it) as (you) say,]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hai X tūmgh Y</td>
<td>jīdang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hahmbaalāhng</td>
<td>altogether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hahmshahm</td>
<td>the day after tomorrow night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hahbryat</td>
<td>the day after tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háah</td>
<td>thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hei [choot]</td>
<td>movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heilum [gāun]</td>
<td>movie theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>héisohng</td>
<td>to hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>héisán</td>
<td>get up (from bed) [raise-body]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>héisāu</td>
<td>begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hia</td>
<td>modest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

397
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hingdaih</td>
<td>兄弟</td>
<td>elder and younger brothers</td>
<td>22N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hui</td>
<td>可惜</td>
<td>unfortunately, it is unfortunate (+ sen)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hokkfei</td>
<td>載費</td>
<td>tuition</td>
<td>30.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj</td>
<td>開</td>
<td>start off, set out, (for vehicles)</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj (che)</td>
<td>開始</td>
<td>drive (a car)</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hojchih</td>
<td>開始</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>22N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj laahnghei</td>
<td>開冷氣門</td>
<td>turn on the air conditioner</td>
<td>28.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj muhn</td>
<td>開門</td>
<td>open the door(s)</td>
<td>24.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tw hoj muhn</td>
<td>'open at X time' (expresses the opening time of a store)</td>
<td>25.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj sauyungai</td>
<td>開收音機</td>
<td>turn on the radio</td>
<td>27.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoj</td>
<td>海</td>
<td>sea</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-houh</td>
<td></td>
<td>day of the month [number]</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yat houh</td>
<td>一號</td>
<td>the first</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yih houh</td>
<td>二號</td>
<td>the 2d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saam houh, etc.</td>
<td>三號</td>
<td>the 3d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houh Wah Hei Yun</td>
<td>豪華戲院</td>
<td>Hoover Theatre</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hou</td>
<td></td>
<td>bring to satisfactory conclusion</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou + Verb phrase + la</td>
<td>'It would be a good idea to ...'</td>
<td>a form used in making a suggestion</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou chih</td>
<td>好似</td>
<td>it seems, it looks like, probably, very likely</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houchoi</td>
<td>好彩</td>
<td>luckily, 'Thank goodness'</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hou choi X jie</td>
<td>好彩嘅</td>
<td>It's lucky that X, at least.</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houdoshi (dou)</td>
<td>好多時</td>
<td>very often</td>
<td>21.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houfahn</td>
<td>好返</td>
<td>get well, return to good health</td>
<td>29.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hou noih mouh gin.</td>
<td>好耐有見</td>
<td>'Long time no see'.</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houseng</td>
<td>好</td>
<td>'Be careful.' 'Mind (you don't...)'</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>housiu</td>
<td>好少</td>
<td>rarely, seldom</td>
<td>21.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houtai</td>
<td>好睇</td>
<td>nice-looking, pretty (not said in reference to people)</td>
<td>21.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hou wuih V</td>
<td>好會</td>
<td>does a good job of V-ing, is good at V-ing</td>
<td>22.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huing</td>
<td>紅</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaa faaaji</td>
<td>擷筷子</td>
<td>use chopsticks [clasp-chopsticks]</td>
<td>17.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaan</td>
<td>相</td>
<td>M, for light or lamp</td>
<td>30.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joongdi</td>
<td>挹的</td>
<td>almost, lacks a little</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

398
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jai  擠 put, place 24
jān je  真 true; the truth 27
jeui Adj 最 used to form the superlative: most 21.13
Adj, Adj-est
jéun [go]  瓶 bottle 29.3
jéung  張 張 M for table, newspaper 19.12; 26.8
jeung  取 take 28
jīgāan  至 between 29
ji Adj 至 used to form the superlative: Adj-est 21
most Adj
Tw ji Tw  至 TW to TW, TW until TW; between TW and TW 26; 30
ji  至 finally, (not until) then, (only) then; 19
(variant of sin ji)
...ji dāk ...至得 ...that'll do it. ..., only then will 24
the requirements be satisfied
jidō  至多 at most, the most 18.7
jīgān(yiu) 至緊要 be sure to, by all means do 17
jīsīu  至少 at least, the least 18
jīh [go]  字 written word, written figure word 22
used for Chinese ideographs
jīgēi  自己 'of' grammatical word joining 26
modifying structure preceding
it to head structure following it.
...jì... ...之... before____ (combines with preceding 18
VP or N, length-of-time expression)

nu, time N jîchīn  之前 之前 22.17
____ jīsu  之後 之前
____ jīsa  之前
...ji ngoih  之内 aside from..., outside (of).... 26
jīsu  妹妹 elder and younger sisters 22N
jīryu... jauh... 祇要... 就... just have to..., then...; as long 28
as you...
ji khaak  即刻 immediately, right away 28
ji khaih  即係 that is, in other words, that is 17
to say
jiung haih____ 淨係 just, merely, only ____ 16
jīngsàum 精神 energy 25

399
CANTONESE BASIC COURSE

jing  make, fix 19
jing chān  make, cook (Western) meals 19.1
jing chē  repair cars 19.15
jinghóu  fix satisfactorily 19
jingfān  fix back to original shape 23.11
jiu jiu  every morning 23.13
jiūjū  morning 23
-jó  verb suf. in time spent phrase indicating past reference 18

Jouh māt?  How come? 24.11
jhomg  bump into 29
jhomgchǎn  injure by bumping 29
jóu or jóu  rent 19
jóu  early 23
jóu bou [jèung]  morning paper 24.9
jíngtāuh  hour 18.2
julmg  even 21
julmg Adj dī  even more Adj, even Adj-er 21
jyú  to cook 19.1
jyú faahm  cook Chinese style food 19.1
jyúfsan [go]  a person who works as a cook in a private home (usually a woman) 26
jyúeißhk  cooking 26

K

kāhmxahm  last night 23.2
kāhmyaht  yesterday 16
kāhmyaht hahjau  yesterday afternoon 23.2
kāhmyaht jiu  yesterday morning 23.2
kāhmyaht (ng)aanjau  yesterday noon 23.2
kāhmlik  industrious 22.18
kāhm  near 29.4
kāhlāu [go]  veranda, terrace 24
kēihsaht  in actuality, in truth, 'but actually' (leads off a response sentence which disagrees with the statement or assumption of the stimulus sentence) 27

400
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Pinyin (PW)</th>
<th>Cantonese Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kinggái</td>
<td>倾偈</td>
<td>have a chat, talk casually</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyutdihung</td>
<td>决定</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laahmokī</td>
<td>[ga]</td>
<td>cable car. in HK: the Peak Tram</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làam</td>
<td>藍</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>25.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laahn</td>
<td>破烂</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laahmjó</td>
<td>破咗</td>
<td>has become spoiled, rotten (of perishables)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láahn</td>
<td>懶</td>
<td>lazy, idle</td>
<td>22.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láahngsī(gēi) [go, ga]</td>
<td>冷氣</td>
<td>air conditioner</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láahn⏰m</td>
<td>冷天</td>
<td>winter</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laaht</td>
<td>辣</td>
<td>peppery</td>
<td>25.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laahttaat</td>
<td>辣辣辣</td>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>23.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làih</td>
<td>to, in order to, for the purpose of</td>
<td>24.10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lāih</td>
<td>嘢</td>
<td>VPasuf in response sen adding connotation of 'that's what happened, not the thing you thought'</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lāih</td>
<td>嘢</td>
<td>VPasuf in sen. of past reference suffixed to heui phrases, indicates that person has returned from where he went</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láih</td>
<td>向</td>
<td>Come visit (place)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaai [ga]</td>
<td>禮拜</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaai</td>
<td>禮拜</td>
<td>Sunday [lit: week]</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaai gēi?</td>
<td>禮拜幾</td>
<td>what day of the week?</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaaiiuhk</td>
<td>禮拜六</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaaiţgh</td>
<td>禮拜五</td>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaaisam</td>
<td>禮拜三</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaasei</td>
<td>禮拜四</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaasiyah</td>
<td>禮拜二</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaasiyēt</td>
<td>禮拜六</td>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láihbaasiyih</td>
<td>禮拜二</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lauh</td>
<td>漏</td>
<td>leak</td>
<td>22.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lauhdāi</td>
<td>漏</td>
<td>leave/left (something) behind</td>
<td>24.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làuhhok</td>
<td>留學</td>
<td>study abroad</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làuhleih</td>
<td>流利</td>
<td>fluent in speech, fluently</td>
<td>22.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēih X</td>
<td>離</td>
<td>distance from X</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēk</td>
<td>lek</td>
<td>smart, brilliant</td>
<td>21.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēuinhľang</td>
<td>leuihhłang</td>
<td>excursion</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leuhmjeuhm</td>
<td>leuhmjeuhm</td>
<td>clumsy, awkward, stupid</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēuhm</td>
<td>leuhm</td>
<td>one journey, referring to bus, train, trams</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lēuhmng</td>
<td>leuhmng</td>
<td>cool</td>
<td>21.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lhn</td>
<td>lhn</td>
<td>to include</td>
<td>30N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lhn...dōu</td>
<td>lhn...du</td>
<td>not even</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lhn(māaih)</td>
<td>lhn(māaih)</td>
<td>including</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>līhmngsīhwūm</td>
<td>līhmngsihwūm</td>
<td>consulate</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lōbol</td>
<td>lōbol</td>
<td>sen.suf. with connotation of good-natured protest that addresses is wrong in doing or saying whatever it is he is doing/saying.</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lōn</td>
<td>lōn</td>
<td>sen.suf. signifying a bid for sympathy</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lōhkyūh</td>
<td>lōhkyūh</td>
<td>to rain (down-rain)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>louh</td>
<td>louh</td>
<td>road</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luhk</td>
<td>luhk</td>
<td>green</td>
<td>25.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luhkkyuht</td>
<td>luhkkyuht</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>17N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhdmākhāhn</td>
<td>âhdmākhāhn</td>
<td>busy</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhmbl</td>
<td>âhmbl</td>
<td>otherwise, if not</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhjî</td>
<td>âhjî</td>
<td>more than, not just</td>
<td>30.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhjingsāhn</td>
<td>âhjingsāhn</td>
<td>not feel well, not have energy</td>
<td>28.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhsālk jih</td>
<td>âhsālk jih</td>
<td>illiterate</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhsyūřūhk</td>
<td>âhsyūřūhk</td>
<td>not feel well, i.e., feel sick</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âhtūng</td>
<td>âhtūng</td>
<td>not alike; used as V in negative and question forms, but not in affirmative</td>
<td>27; 27.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māhnľām</td>
<td>māhnľām</td>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māmmādēi</td>
<td>māmmādēi</td>
<td>middling, sloppy, indifferent, so-so, just scrapes by</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-māaih</td>
<td>-māaih</td>
<td>together, tight; sōmāaih-locked up</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maahm</td>
<td>maahm</td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māahmfāshn</td>
<td>māahmfāshn</td>
<td>supper</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>晚晚</td>
<td>wán wán</td>
<td>every evening</td>
<td>23.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>擦</td>
<td>màat</td>
<td>wipe, polish; wet-mop</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>間</td>
<td>māhn</td>
<td>to smell</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乜嘢</td>
<td>měiyéh</td>
<td>anything; everything; whatever</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>乜味</td>
<td>meih</td>
<td>smell, odor, fragrance</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>未...之前</td>
<td>meih <em>VP</em> jīchīn</td>
<td>before... (combines with enclosed verb phrase to express 'before (thus and so)')</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>毛巾</td>
<td>mōuhgān [tluh]</td>
<td>towels</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Móuh</td>
<td>没有</td>
<td>'Nothing special;' 'Nothing much.' A response making light of the topic under discussion.</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Móuh baahnfaat.</td>
<td>有方法</td>
<td>'There's nothing (you've) can do.' 'It can't be helped.'</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōuhgáinioih</td>
<td>有幾耐</td>
<td>a short period [not long]</td>
<td>18.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Móuh sóáiw ge.</td>
<td>有所謂喺</td>
<td>'Any way is OK with me.' 'O complaints.'</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>每</td>
<td>mǔih</td>
<td>younger sister</td>
<td>22.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>每門</td>
<td>mǔhn [douh]</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>24.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>男人</td>
<td>náahm</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>21.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>難</td>
<td>náahmyán [go]</td>
<td>difficult to learn</td>
<td>21.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>難學</td>
<td>náahnhohk</td>
<td>difficult to learn</td>
<td>21.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>你唔係話</td>
<td>Néih <em>māhbiāi wah...?</em></td>
<td>Didn't you say...?</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>你又話</td>
<td>Néih yauh wah...?_</td>
<td>You said...(but it's not so; what's up)?</td>
<td>30.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>女仔</td>
<td>náuihjaí [go]</td>
<td>girl, young woman</td>
<td>29.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>女人</td>
<td>náuihyán [go]</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td>27.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>今個禮拜</td>
<td>ní go láihbaai</td>
<td>this week</td>
<td>17.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>今個月</td>
<td>ní go yuht</td>
<td>this month</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>吹</td>
<td>nípái</td>
<td>lately, recently; these few days</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>年</td>
<td>níhn</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>年年</td>
<td>nihnmnh</td>
<td>every year</td>
<td>20.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>耐</td>
<td>noih</td>
<td>long (time)</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NG</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ũghyuht</td>
<td>五月</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)am</td>
<td>嘅</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fitting, suitable (var. of ġam)</td>
<td>17N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ng)am la(ak)</td>
<td>嘅喇</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That's fine, Splendid (var: ġam la(ak))</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)am(ng)am</td>
<td>嘅喺</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just, only a moment ago (var. of ġam ġam)</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)aan</td>
<td>晝</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late (in the day) (var: ġan)</td>
<td>23.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)aanjau</td>
<td>晝畫</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around noon, morning (var: ġanjau)</td>
<td>23.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)aanjau sahgyidım</td>
<td>晝畫十點</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twelve noon</td>
<td>23N2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngāahrfan</td>
<td>眼酣</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleepy</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngāiḥhm</td>
<td>危險</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous, danger</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngōngōdēi</td>
<td>餓餓地</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bit hungry</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngoih</td>
<td>外</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ng)ūkjōu, (ng)ūkjōu</td>
<td>廠租</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house rent (var: ūkjōu, ūkjōu)</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>O</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oumún</td>
<td>澳門</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macau</td>
<td>18.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>P</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>怕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frightened of, be afraid of</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>S</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sāangá [go]</td>
<td>衫架</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coat hanger</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāamfahnsih</td>
<td>三藩市</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāamsei</td>
<td>三四</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three or four</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sāamyuht</td>
<td>三月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>17N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàan</td>
<td>門</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close, shut</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sàandòng</td>
<td>山頂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Peak</td>
<td>20.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàan mūnh</td>
<td>門</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close the door(s)</td>
<td>24.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tw sàan mūnh</td>
<td>門門</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'close the doors (of a store) at TIME,' expresses closing time of a store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàan sàuyāmōgi</td>
<td>門收音機</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn off the radio</td>
<td>28.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāang</td>
<td>生</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw, underdone (of cooked things); green (of fruits)</td>
<td>25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sai</td>
<td>細</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>younger in age; used in comparison sentences to indicate 'younger than'</td>
<td>21.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailouhnêu (go)</td>
<td>материалка</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailáu (go)</td>
<td>長女</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sailougō (go)</td>
<td>長子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saisáng</td>
<td>細聲</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sàiyành (go)</td>
<td>四年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáí</td>
<td>洗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáidákohit</td>
<td>洗得切</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàn làih ge yành</td>
<td>新來人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sànfánjing (jùngh)</td>
<td>新近人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sàngsāi</td>
<td>新界</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sànséui</td>
<td>新薪水</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáp</td>
<td>湿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sahpgéi</td>
<td>潮</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahyàntyuht</td>
<td>十一月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahyànyuht</td>
<td>十二月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sahyuyuht</td>
<td>十月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sànumōi</td>
<td>最後</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàuyāngói (go, ga)</td>
<td>收音機</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáu</td>
<td>收</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáu seun</td>
<td>收信</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáujungh</td>
<td>手續</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sè jih</td>
<td>寫字</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèráăn</td>
<td>寫信和</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saíyuht</td>
<td>四月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāng</td>
<td>声</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèmng</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāng</td>
<td>醒</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèui</td>
<td>年</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>souihfông (go)</td>
<td>睡房</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>souiyhnm</td>
<td>瘋癲</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>souiyhnm...daahnhsīh</td>
<td>雖然...但係</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōulfai</td>
<td>水費</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōulhāu (go) [tiuh]</td>
<td>水喉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seun [sung]</td>
<td>信</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehngfung</td>
<td>傷風</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehng go láihbaai</td>
<td>上個禮拜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehng go ruht</td>
<td>上個月</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sehng gung</td>
<td>上工</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sihjai [go]</td>
<td>侍仔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sihtau [go]</td>
<td>事頭</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sihgaan [di]</td>
<td>時間</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sihsin</td>
<td>時時</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sin)ji</td>
<td>(不至)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singkeih [go]</td>
<td>星期</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siu</td>
<td>少</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siusam</td>
<td>小心</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>só</td>
<td>樁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sómàaigh</td>
<td>鎖理</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sólhih [tiuh]</td>
<td>鎖鈴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ohau]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[chyun]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sóyih</td>
<td>所以</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>song</td>
<td>熱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suhk</td>
<td>熟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syútōi [jáwng]</td>
<td>書枱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syun</td>
<td>算</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syun la(ak)!</td>
<td>酸嘞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syún</td>
<td>酸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syunluh tông [go][wün]</td>
<td>酸辣湯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syùm [jek] [ga]</td>
<td>船</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syutgwaih [go]</td>
<td>雪櫃</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**T**

tai | 太太 | too, excessively | 22 |
| Taaitáai | 太太 | 'Ma'am,' 'Missy.' (term used by servant in foreign household to address mistress of the house) | 24 |

406
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cantonese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Phrasal Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tāi dīmśih</td>
<td>tāi dīmśih</td>
<td>watch television</td>
<td>16.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāi hei</td>
<td>tāi hei</td>
<td>see a movie</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāu hāi</td>
<td>tāu hāi</td>
<td>just a while ago</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāu hāin</td>
<td>tāu hāin</td>
<td>have a headache; headache</td>
<td>29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēnggin</td>
<td>tēnggin</td>
<td>hear tell, I hear...</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīhm</td>
<td>tīhm</td>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīn</td>
<td>tīn</td>
<td>weather</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng jīlu</td>
<td>tīng jīlu</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng máhnm</td>
<td>tīng máhnm</td>
<td>tomorrow night</td>
<td>23.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng yāh</td>
<td>tīng yāh</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng yāh hah jau</td>
<td>tīng yāh hah jau</td>
<td>tomorrow afternoon</td>
<td>23.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng yāh (ng)an jau</td>
<td>tīng yāh (ng)an jau</td>
<td>tomorrow morning around noon</td>
<td>23.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōihbāk</td>
<td>Tōihbāk</td>
<td>Taipei</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōihwān or Tōihwān</td>
<td>Tōihwān or Tōihwān</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōihwān yāhnm [go]</td>
<td>Tōihwān yāhnm [go]</td>
<td>Taiwanese person</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tokpūn [go]</td>
<td>tokpūn [go]</td>
<td>tray</td>
<td>24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tong</td>
<td>tong</td>
<td>to iron, press</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tong wōngjō</td>
<td>tong wōngjō</td>
<td>scorched [iron-yellowed]</td>
<td>29.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tou</td>
<td>tou</td>
<td>set, M for set of furniture, set of dishes, etc.</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōuhjēung [go]</td>
<td>tōuhjēung [go]</td>
<td>chop, seal</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōumngōh</td>
<td>tōumngōh</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūngjī</td>
<td>tūngjī</td>
<td>communicate with</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūngsēuhng</td>
<td>tūngsēuhng</td>
<td>ordinarily, usually</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūung per. yāchāih y</td>
<td>tūung per. yāchāih y</td>
<td>together with person</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūung X yāt yēuhng</td>
<td>tūung X yāt yēuhng</td>
<td>the same as X</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūungmāih</td>
<td>tūungmāih</td>
<td>and, with</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tyūhn</td>
<td>tyūhn</td>
<td>to break (of bones and stick-like objects)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīhm sūn yū [tīlhu] [dihp]</td>
<td>tīhm sūn yū [tīlhu] [dihp]</td>
<td>sweet and sour fish</td>
<td>28.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ū | ū | see: ngūk jōu | 19.1 |

407
Wahl
Wah ñuhdihm.,
Wáhsihngdeuhm
wasihjô
vân yihn jouch
vândôu
wônh
wuh
wûh seun
wûih
wûm-diyp [tou]

Exclamation of awe
Can't say for sure; uncertain
Washington
out of order, broken down
look for a job
find [search-succeed]
yellow
pot, container
Measure
answer a letter
likely to, going to (indicates
strong possibility)
a set of china

Yânhung
yât v¹, jsuh v²
yât go yân
yâtchâih
yâtdihng
yâtjân
yâtyuht
yâht
yâhtyaht
yâuh X. dou X. jîgân
yâuhchâi [go]
yâuhjingûk (or -guhk)
yâuhhâak [di]
yâuhseâui

wages (of servants, day laborers)
as soon as v¹, then v².
onely, by oneself
together
surely, definitely
in a little while, in just a little
while
January
day
every day
between X and Y
postman
post office
tourist
swim; swimming

408
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yāuh beɪŋ</td>
<td>be sick, have an illness</td>
<td>29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāuh cheuimeih</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāuh dī</td>
<td>some, a few</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāuhdī... yāuhdī...</td>
<td>some..., others...</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāuhseih</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>21.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāuh yīk</td>
<td>beneficial</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeh</td>
<td>late (in the evening)</td>
<td>23.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yialmāsn</td>
<td>at night</td>
<td>25.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeuk</td>
<td>make an appointment</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeukhōu</td>
<td>agree on the time and/or place for an appointment</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeuhk</td>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeuhkseui [jiu] [dihk]</td>
<td>(liquid) medicine [bottle][drop] drop</td>
<td>29.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yeuhkyūn [lāp] [jiu]</td>
<td>medicine in pill form [M for pill][bottle]</td>
<td>29.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yehngyeuuhng</td>
<td>everything, every kind of thing</td>
<td>28.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīluun [gān]</td>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīh</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīhyuht</td>
<td>February</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīhoché</td>
<td>furthermore</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī [jiu]</td>
<td>chair</td>
<td>19.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnhokhnm</td>
<td>previously, formerly, before</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnhing</td>
<td>already</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnhauh</td>
<td>afterwards</td>
<td>18.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīh ngoiūn</td>
<td>outside of, aside from, with the exception of</td>
<td>26N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x yīhsuēhng</td>
<td>x above, more than... (follows number expression)</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīnwāih</td>
<td>think, have the impression (sometimes this proves to be mistaken: had the impression)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīk</td>
<td>benefit, profit</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīng bōng</td>
<td>British pounds sterling [English pound]</td>
<td>19.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīght</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>21.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yiht</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yiuh length of time</td>
<td>takes length of time</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yiu</td>
<td>cause, make (someone do something)</td>
<td>20.1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuengwo</td>
<td>if, on condition that</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuengwo mhhaih</td>
<td>otherwise, if not</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yuann</td>
<td>verb suf.: finish</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yunlouih</td>
<td>basically, originally; basis, origin</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yunlouih haih gans ge.</td>
<td>Oh, that's why. So that's the reason!</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuunn</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuht [go]</td>
<td>month</td>
<td>17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuht...yuht...</td>
<td>the more... the more...</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuht laih yuht Adj</td>
<td>getting more and more Adj</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>